Manual No.'14•PAC-SM-215

MHI

SERVICE MANUAL

MICRO INVERTER PACKAGED AIR-CONDITIONERS

(Split system, air to air heat pump type)

CEILING CASSETTE-4WAY TYPE

Twin type
FDT200VSAPVF1
250VSAPVF

Triple type
FDT200VSATVF1

Double twin type
FDT200VSADVF
250VSADVF

CEILING SUSPENDED TYPE

Twin type
FDEN200VSAPVF1
250VSAPVF

Triple type
FDEN200VSATVF1

Double twin type
FDEN200VSADVF
250VSADVF

CEILING CASSETTE-4WAY COMPACT TYPE

Double twin type
FDTC200VSADVF
250VSADVF

DUCT CONNECTED-HIGT STATIC PRESSURE TYPE

Single type
FDU200VSAVG
250VSAVG

DUCT CONNECTED-LOW/MIDDLE STATIC PRESSURE TYPE

Twin type
FDUM200VSAPVF1
250VSAPVF

Triple type
FDUM200VSATVF1

FLOOR STANDING TYPE

Twin type
FDF200VSAPVD1
250VSAPVD

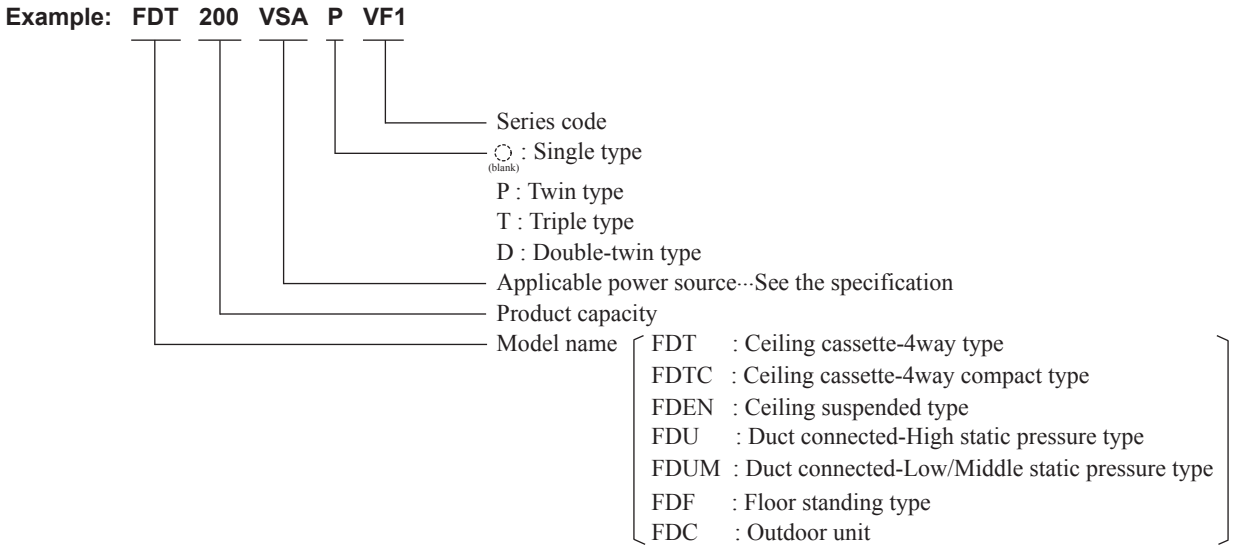
V Multi System

(OUTDOOR UNIT)	(INDOOR UNIT)	
FDC200VSA	FDT50VF	FDEN50VF
250VSA	60VF	60VF
	71VF1	71VF1
	100VF1	100VF1
	125VF	125VF

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.

CONTENTS

How to read the model name



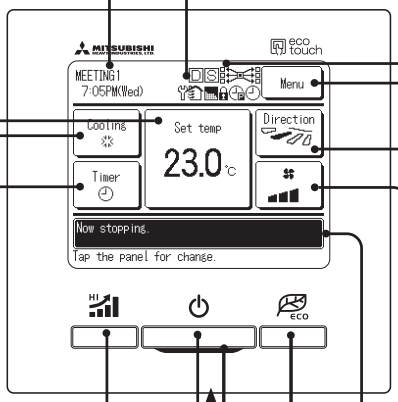
1. OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

1.1 Remote control

(1) Wired remote control

Model RC-EX1A

All icons are shown for the sake of explanation.



⑦ **Clock, R/C name display**
Displays the current time and the name of R/C

⑪ **Change set temp button**
Displays the temperature which is set currently.Tap this button to change the set temperature.

⑩ **Change operation mode button**
Displays the operation mode which is selected currently. Tap this button to change the operation mode.

⑭ **Timer button**
Displays simplified contents of the timer which is set currently.
(When two or more timers are set, contents of the timer which will be operated immediately after is displayed.)
Tap this button to set the timer.

② **HI switch (High Power switch)**
Pushing this button starts the high power operation.

① **⏻ switch (Run/Stop switch)**
One push on the button starts operation and another push stops operation.

⑥ **USB port (mini-B)**
USB connector (mini-B) allows connecting to a personal computer.
For operating methods, refer to the instruction manual attached to the software for personal computer (eco-touch remote control RC-EX1, utility software).

⑤ **LCD display (With backlight)**
A tap on the LCD lights the backlight.
The backlight turns off automatically if there is no operation for certain period of time.
Lighting period of the backlight lighting can be changed.
If the backlight is ON setting, when the screen is tapped while the backlight is turned off, the backlight only is turned on.(Operations with switches ①,② and ③ are excluded.)

⑧ **Icon display**
Each icon is displayed when one of following settings is going on.(It is referring to the following figure for details.)

⑨ **Menu button**
When setting or changing other than the following ⑩-⑭, tap the menu button.When menu items are displayed, select one and set.

⑫ **Flap direction button**
Displays the flap direction which is selected currently.
Tap this button to change the flap direction.

⑬ **Fan speed change button**
Displays the fan speed which is selected currently.
Tap this button to change the fan speed.

⑮ **Message display**
Status of air-conditioner operation and messages of the R/C operations etc.are displayed.

③ **eco switch (Energy Saving switch)**
Pushing this button starts the energy-saving operation.

④ **Operation lamp**
This lamp lights in green (yellow-green) during operation. It changes to red if any error occurs.

Touch panel system, which is operated by tapping the LCD screen with a finger, is employed for any operations other than the ① Run/Stop, ② High power and ③ Energy-saving switches.

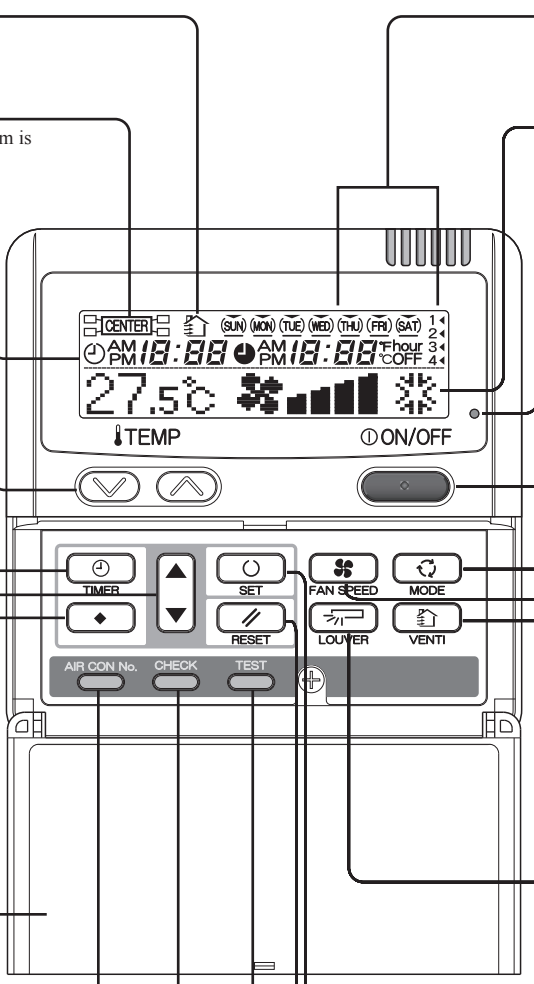
⑧ Icon display
Each icon is displayed when one of following settings is going on.

When the demand control is effective.	When setting is made from the sub R/C.	When the central control (Option) is running.
When the periodical inspection is necessary.	During the ventilation operation	When "filter sign" is up.
When the Permission/ Prohibition setting is made.	When the weekly timer is set.	When the peak-cut timer is set

(1) Wired remote control
Model RC-E5

The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened. Note that all the items that may be displayed in the liquid crystal display area are shown in the figure for the sake of explanation
Characters displayed with dots in the liquid crystal display area are abbreviated.

The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened.



Ventilaion display
Displayed during ventilation operation

Central control display
Displayed when the air-conditioning system is controlled by centralized remote control.

Timer operation display
Displays the timer operation setting.

Temperature setting buttons
These buttons are used to set the temperature of the room.

Timer button
This button is used to set the timer mode.

Timer setting buttons
These buttons are used to set the timer mode and the time.

ESP button
This button is used to select the auto static pressure adjustment mode.

Cover

AIR CON No. button
Display the indoor unit number connected to this remote control.

CHECK button
This button is used at servicing.

TEST button
This button is used during test operation.

Weekly timer display
Displays the settings of the weekly timer.

Operation setting display area
Displays setting temperature, airflow volume, operation mode and oparation message.

Operation/check indicator light
During operation : Lit in green
In case of error: Flashing in red

Operation/stop button
This button is used to operate and stop the air-conditioning system.
Press the button once to operate the system and press it once again to stop the system.

MODE button
This button is used to change the operation mode.

FAN SPEED button
This button is used to set the airflow volume.

VENT button
This button is used to operate external ventilator.

LOUVER button
This button is used to operate/stop the swing louver.

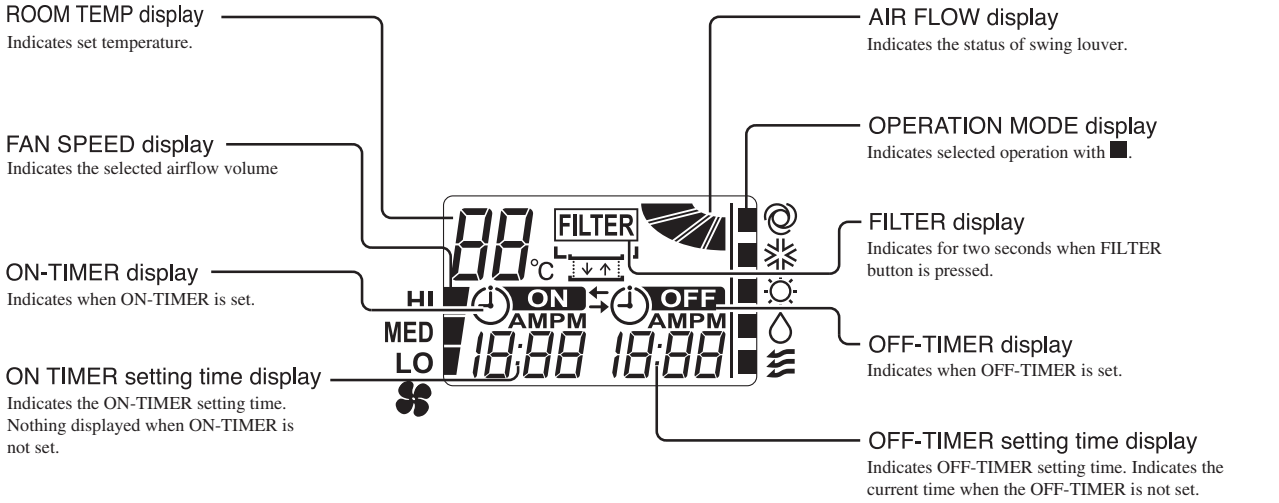
SET button
•This button is used to fix the setting.
•This button is used to set the silent mode.

RESET button
•If you press this button while making settings, you can go back to the previous operation.
•This button is also used to reset the "**FILTER CLEANING**" display. (Press it after cleaning the air filter)

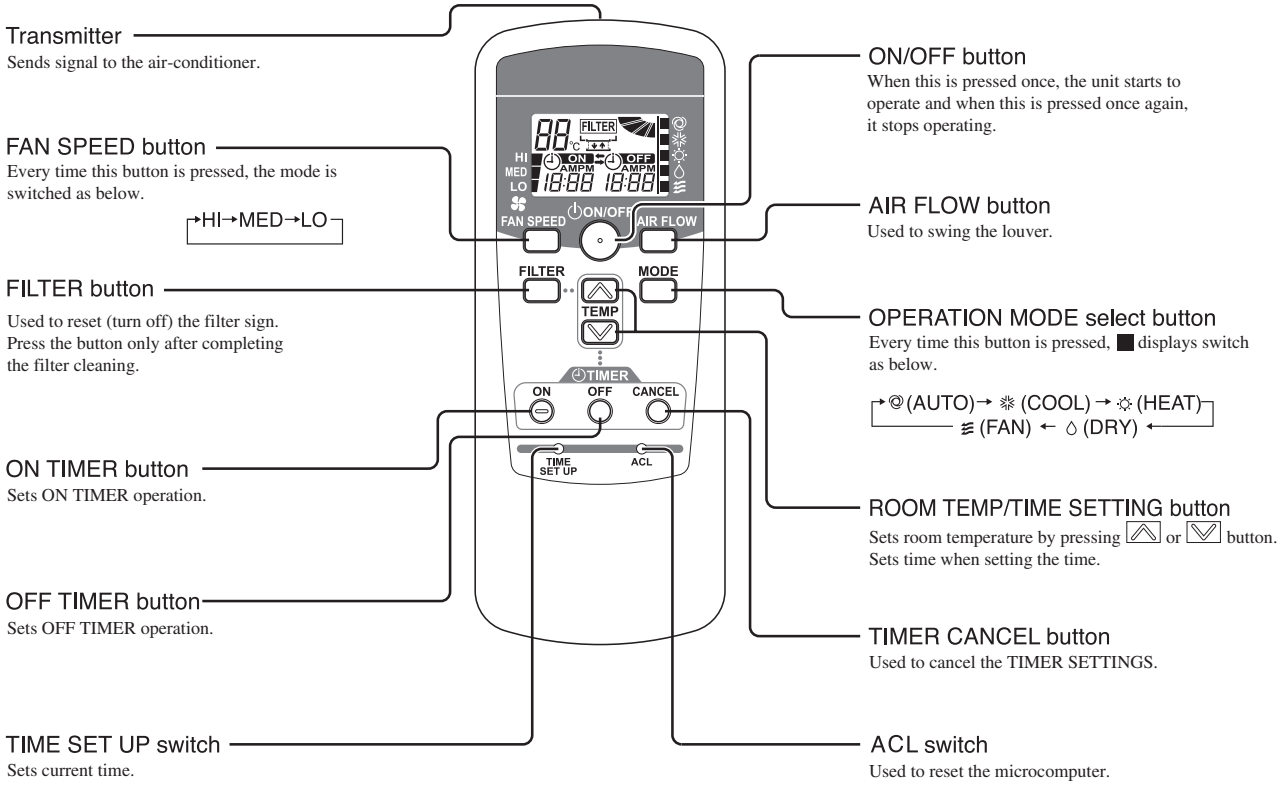
∗ All displays are described in the liquid crystal display for explanation.

(2) Wireless remote control

Indication section



Operation section



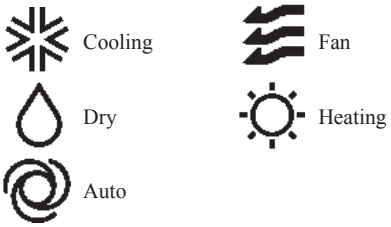
* All displays are described in the liquid crystal display for explanation

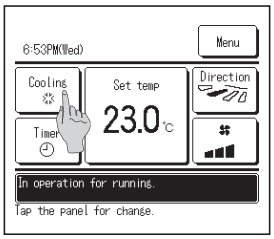
1.2 Operation control function by the wired remote control

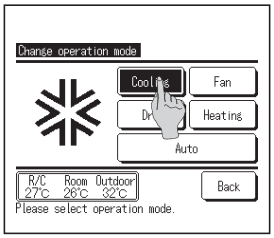
Model RC-EX1A

(1) Switching sequence of the operation mode switches of remote control

(a) Tap the change operation mode button on the TOP screen.
(b) When the change operation mode screen is displayed, tap the button of desired mode.
(c) When the operation mode is selected, the display returns to the TOP screen.
Icons displayed have the following meanings.



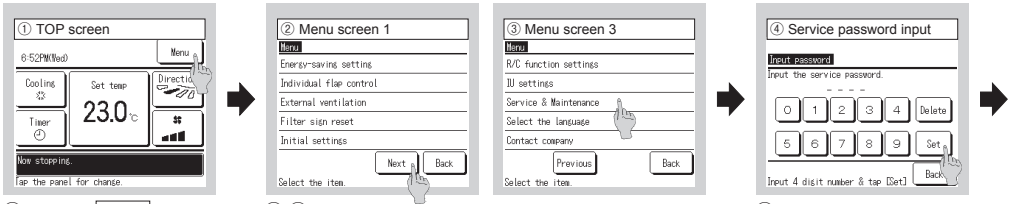




Notes(1) Operation modes which cannot be selected depending on combinations of indoor unit and outdoor unit are not displayed.
(2) When the Auto is selected, the cooling and heating switching operation is performed automatically according to indoor and outdoor temperatures.

(2) CPU reset

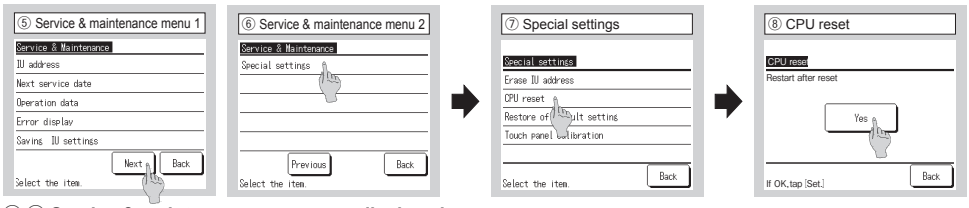
Reset CPU from the remote control as follows.



①Tap the Menu button on the TOP screen.

②,③ Main menu screen is displayed.
Tap the "Service & Maintenance" on the menu screen.

④Display the service password input screen.
Enter the service password (4-digit number).



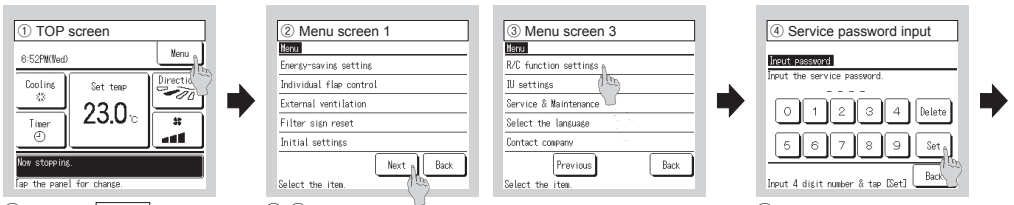
⑤,⑥ Service & maintenance menus are displayed.

⑦ Special settings
CPU reset : Microcomputers of IU and OU connected are reset (State of restoration after power failure).

⑧ CPU reset
All microcomputers on the R/C operated, other R/Cs, IUs and OUs are reset (State of restoration after power failure).
Tap [Yes] to reset CPU

(3) Power failure compensation function (Electric power source failure)

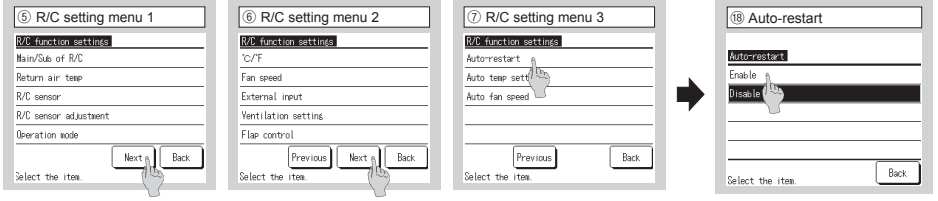
Enable the Auto-restart function from the remote control as follows.



①Tap the Menu button on the TOP screen.

②,③ Main menu screen is displayed.
Tap the "Service & Maintenance" on the menu screen.

④Display the service password input screen.
Enter the service password (4-digit number).



⑤,⑥,⑦ Display the R/C setting menu screens.

Enable : It returns to the state be fore the power source failure as soon as the power is restored (After the end of the primary control at the power on).
Disable : It stops after the restoration of power source, regardless the state of operation before the power failure.

⑱ Auto-restart
Set the state of operation to be started when the power source is restored after a power failure.

- Since it memorizes always the condition of remote control, it starts operation according to the contents of memory no sooner than normal state is recovered after the power failure. Although the auto swing stop position and the timer mode are cancelled, the weekly timer setting is restored with the holiday setting for all weekdays.
  After recovering from the power failure, it readjusts the clock and resets the holiday setting for each weekday so that the setting of weekly timer becomes effective.
- Content memorized with the power failure compensation are as follows.

  Note (1) Items (f), (g) and (h) are memorized regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not while the setting of silent mode is cancelled regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not.

  (a) At power failure – Operating/stopped
  If it had been operating under the off timer mode, sleep timer mode, the state of stop is memorized. (Although the timer mode is cancelled at the recovery from power failure, the setting of weekly timer is changed to the holiday setting for all weekdays.)

  (b) Operation mode

  (c) Airflow volume mode

  (d) Room temperature setting

  (e) Louver auto swing/stop
  However, the stop position (4-position) is cancelled so that it returns to Position (1).

  (f) "Remote control function items" which have been set with the remote control function setting ("Indoor function items" are saved in the memory of indoor unit.)

  (g) Upper limit value and lower limit value which have been set with the temperature setting control

  (h) Sleep timer and weekly timer settings (Other timer settings are not memorized.)

Model RC-E5

(1) Switching sequence of the operation mode switches of remote control

(2) CPU reset

This functions when "CHECK" and "ESP" buttons on the remote control are pressed simultaneously. Operation is same as that of the power source reset.

(3) Power failure compensation function (Electric power source failure)

- This becomes effective if "Power failure compensation effective" is selected with the setting of remote control function.
- Since it memorizes always the condition of remote control, it starts operation according to the contents of memory no sooner than normal state is recovered after the power failure. Although the auto swing stop position and the timer mode are cancelled, the weekly timer setting is restored with the holiday setting for all weekdays.
  After recovering from the power failure, it readjusts the clock and resets the holiday setting for each weekday so that the setting of weekly timer becomes effective.
- Content memorized with the power failure compensation are as follows.

Note (1) Items (f), (g) and (h) are memorized regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not while the setting of silent mode is cancelled regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not.

(a) At power failure – Operating/stopped
If it had been operating under the off timer mode, sleep timer mode, the state of stop is memorized. (Although the timer mode is cancelled at the recovery from power failure, the setting of weekly timer is changed to the holiday setting for all weekdays.)

(b) Operation mode

(c) Airflow volume mode

(d) Room temperature setting

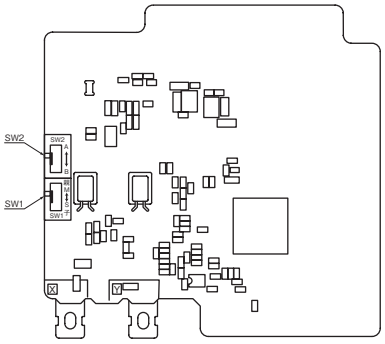
(e) Louver auto swing/stop
However, the stop position (4-position) is cancelled so that it returns to Position (1).

(f) "Remote control function items" which have been set with the remote control function setting ("Indoor function items" are saved in the memory of indoor unit.)

(g) Upper limit value and lower limit value which have been set with the temperature setting control

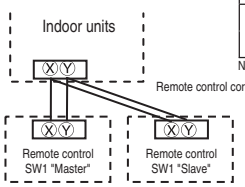
(h) Sleep timer and weekly timer settings (Other timer settings are not memorized.)

[Parts layout on remote control PCB]



Master/ slave setting when more than one remote controls are used

A maximum of two remote controls can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)



Switch	Setting	Contents
SW1	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control

Note (1) Don't change SW2 because it is not used normally.

Caution

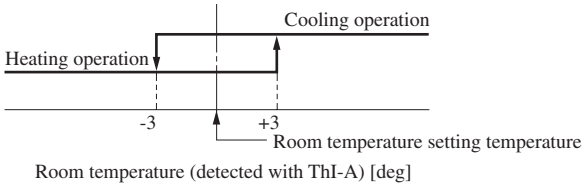
When using multiple remote controls, the following dispiays or settings cannot be done with the slave remote control. It is available only with the master remote control.

①Louver position setting (set upper or lower limit of swinging range)
②Setting indoor unit functions
③Setting temperature range
④Operation data display
⑤Error data display
⑥Silent mode setting
⑦Test operation of drain pump
⑧Remote control sensor setting

1.3 Operation control function by the indoor control

(1) Auto operation

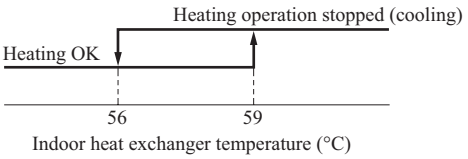
(a) If "Auto" mode is selected by the remote control, the heating and the cooling are automatically switched according to the difference between outdoor air temperature and setting temperature and the difference between setting temperature and return air temperature. (When the switching of cooling mode ↔ heating mode takes place within 3 minutes, the compressor does not operate for 3 minutes by the control of 3-minute timer.) This will facilitate the cooling/heating switching operation in intermediate seasons and the adaptation to unmanned operation at stores, etc (ATM corner of bank).



Notes (1) Temperature range of switching cooling/heating mode can be changed by RC-EX1A from ±1.0 ～ ±4.0.

(2) Room temperature control during auto cooling/auto heating is performed according to the room temperature setting temperature. (DIFF: ±1 deg)

(3) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature rises to 59°C or higher during heating operation, it is switched automatically to cooling operation. In addition, for 1 hour after this switching, the heating operation is not performed, regardless of the temperature shown at right.



(b) The following automatic controls are performed other than (a) above.

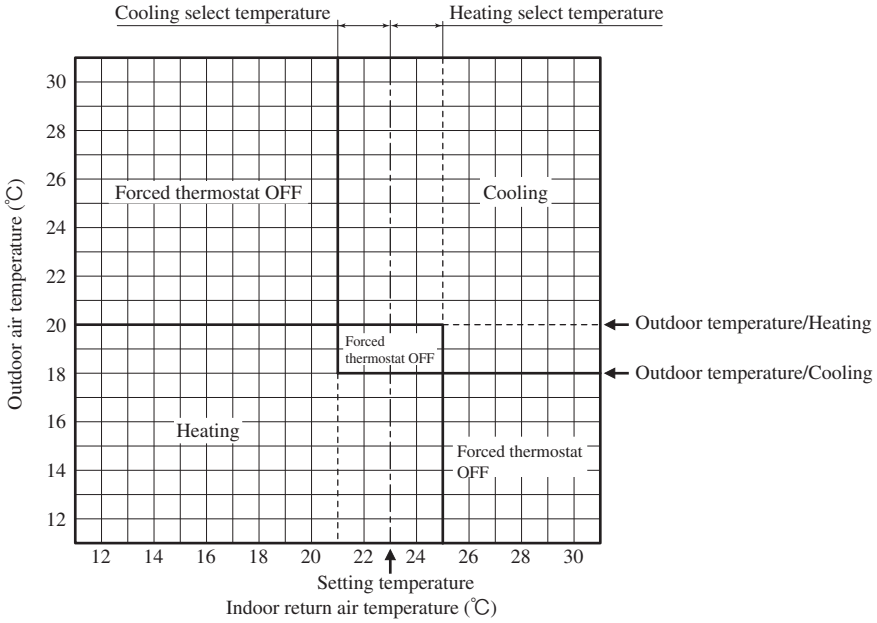
(i) Cooling or heating operation mode is judged according to the conditions of the "Judgment based on Setting temperature + Cooling select temperature and Indoor return air temperature" and the "Judgment based on Outdoor temperature".

1) In "Setting temperature - Cooling select temperature < Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Cooling < Outdoor return air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Cooling

2) "Setting temperature + Heating select temperature > Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Heating > Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Heating

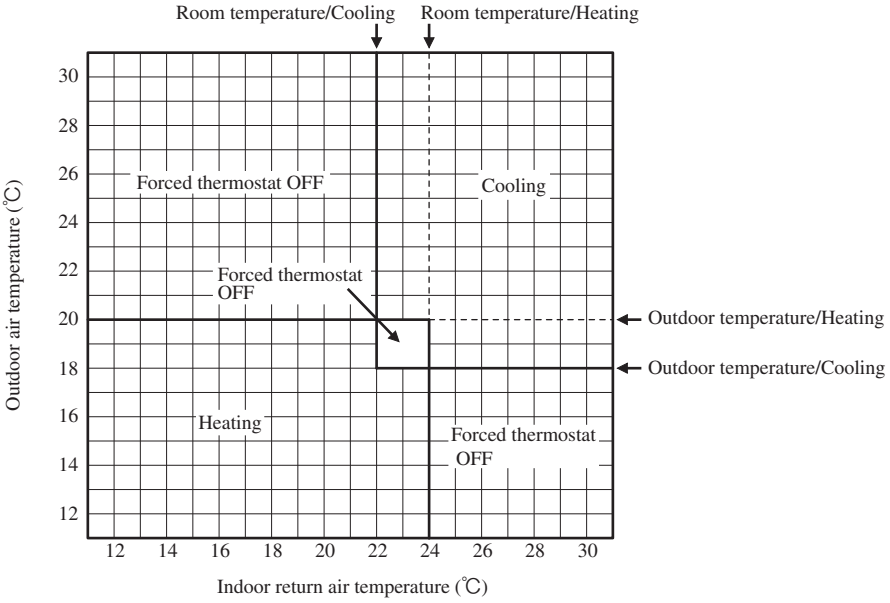
3) The outdoor air temperature of the above judgment conditions is sampled at every 10 minutes.

4) In the range where the above cooling and heating zones are overlapped ⇒ Forced thermostat OFF



(ii) Regardless of the setting temperature, the cooling or heating operation mode is judged according to the "Judgment based on Room temperature/Cooling or Heating and Outdoor temperature/Cooling or Heating".

1) In case of "Room temperature/Cooling < Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Cooling < Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Cooling
2) In case of "Room temperature/Heating > Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature /Heating > Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Heating
3) The outdoor air temperature of the above judgment conditions is sampled at every 10 minutes.
4) In the range where the above cooling and heating zones are overlapped ⇒ Forced thermostat OFF



(2) Operations of functional items during cooling/heating

Operation / Functional item	Cooling		Fan	Heating			Dehumidifying
	Thermostat ON	Thermostat OFF		Thermostat ON	Thermostat OFF	Hot start (Defrost)	
Compressor	○	×	×	○	×	○	○/×
4-way valve	×	×	×	○	○	○(×)	×
Outdoor unit fan	○	×	×	○	×	○(×)	○/×
Indoor unit fan	○	○	○	○/×	○/×	○/×	○/×
Drain pump (3)	○	×(2)	×(2)	○/×(2)			Thermostat ON: ○ Thermostat OFF: ×(2)

Note(1) ○: Operation ×: Stop ○/×: Turned ON/OFF by the control other than the room temperature control.
(2) ON during the drain motor delay control.
(3) Drain pump ON setting may be selected with the indoor unit function setting of the wired remote control.

(3) Dehumidifying operation

Return air temperature thermistor [ThI-A (by the remote control when the remote control thermistor is enabled)] controls the indoor temperature environment simultaneously.

(a) Operation is started in the cooling mode. When the difference between the return air temperature and the setting temperature is 2°C or less, the indoor unit fan tap is brought down by one tap. That tap is retained for 3 minutes after changing the indoor unit fan tap.

(b) If the return air temperature exceeds the setting temperature by 3°C during dehumidifying operation, the indoor unit fan tap is raised. That tap is retained for 3 minutes after changing the indoor unit fan tap.

(c) If the thermostat OFF is established during the above control, the indoor unit fan tap at the thermostat ON is retained so far as the thermostat is turned OFF.

(4) Timer operation

(a) RC-EX1A

(i) Sleep timer

Set the time from the start to stop of operation. The time can be selected in the range from 30 to 240 minutes (in the unit of 10-minute).

Note (1) Enable the "Sleep timer" setting from the remote control. If the setting is enabled, the timer operates at every time.

(ii) Set OFF timer by hour

Set the time to stop the unit after operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour).

(iii) Set ON timer by hour

Set the time to start the unit after the stop of operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour). It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

(iv) Set ON timer by clock

Set the time to start operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be activated only once or at every time. It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(v) Set OFF timer by clock

Set the time to stop operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be activated only once or at every time.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(vi) Weekly timer

Set the ON or OFF timer for a week. Up to 8 patterns can be set for a day. The day-off setting is provided for holidays and non-business days.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use the weekly timer.

(vii) **Combination of patterns which can be set for the timer operations**

	Sleep time	Set OFF timer by hour	Set ON timer by hour	Set OFF timer by clock	Set ON timer by clock	Weekly timer
Sleep time		×	×	○	○	○
Set OFF timer by hour	×		×	×	×	×
Set ON timer by hour	×	×		×	×	×
Set OFF timer by clock	○	×	×		○	×
Set ON timer by clock	○	×	×	○		×
Weekly timer	○	×	×	×	×	

Note (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(b) RC-E5

(i) Sleep timer

Set the duration of time from the present to the time to turn off the air-conditioner.

It can be selected from 10 steps in the range from "OFF 1 hour later" to "OFF 10 hours later". After the sleep timer setting, the remaining time is displayed with progress of time in the unit of hour.

(ii) OFF timer

Time to turn OFF the air-conditioner can be set in the unit of 10 minutes.

(iii) ON timer

Time to turn ON the air-conditioner can be set. Indoor temperature can be set simultaneously.

(iv) Weekly timer

Timer operation (ON timer, OFF timer) can be set up to 4 times a day for each weekday.

(v) Timer operations which can be set in combination

Item / Item	Timer	OFF timer	ON timer	Weekly timer
Timer		×	○	×
OFF timer	×		○	×
ON timer	○	○		×
Weekly timer	×	×	×	

Note (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(2) Since the ON timer, sleep timer and OFF timer are set in parallel, when the times to turn ON and OFF the air-conditioner are duplicated, the setting of the OFF timer has priority.

(5) Remote control display during the operation stop

When the operation is stopped (the power source is turned ON), it displays preferentially the "Room temperature", "Center/ Remote", "Filter sign", "Inspection" and "Timer operation".

(6) Hot start (Cold draft prevention at heating)

(a) Operating conditions

When either one of following conditions is met, the hot start control is performed.

(i) From stop to heating operation
(ii) From cooling to heating operation
(iii) From heating thermostat OFF to ON
(iv) After completing the defrost control (only on units with thermostat ON)

(b) Contents of operation

(i) Indoor fan motor control at hot start

1) Within 7 minutes after starting heating operation, the fan mode is determined depending on the condition of thermostat (fan control with heating thermostat OFF).

a) Thermostat OFF
i) Operates according to the fan control setting at heating thermostat OFF.
ii) Even if it changes from thermostat OFF to ON, the fan continues to operate with the fan control at thermostat OFF till the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher.
iii) When the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher, the fan operates with the set airflow volume.

b) Thermostat ON
i) When the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 25°C or lower, the fan is turned OFF and does not operate.
ii) When the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 25°C or higher, the fan operates with the fan control at heating thermostat OFF.
iii) When the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher, the fan operates with the set airflow volume.

c) If the fan control at heating thermostat OFF is set at the "Set airflow volume" (from the remote control), the fan operates with the set airflow volume regardless of the thermostat ON/OFF.

2) Once the fan motor is changed from OFF to ON during the thermostat ON, the indoor fan motor is not turned OFF even if the heat exchanger thermistor detects lower than 25°C.

Note (1) When the defrost control signal is received, it complies with the fan control during defrosting.

3) Once the hot start is completed, it will not restart even if the temperature on the heat exchanger thermistor drops.

(ii) During the hot start, the louver is kept at the horizontal position.

(iii) When the fan motor is turned OFF for 7 minutes continuously after defrosting, the fan motor is turned ON regardless of the temperatures detected with the indoor heat exchanger thermistors (ThI-R1, R2).

(c) Ending condition

(i) If one of following conditions is met during the hot start control, this control is terminated, and the fan is operated with the set airflow volume.

1) Heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher.
2) It has elapsed 7 minutes after starting the hot start control.

(7) Hot keep

Hot keep control is performed at the start of the defrost control.

(a) Control

(i) When the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R1 or R2) drops to 35°C or lower, the speed of indoor fan is changed to the lower tap at each setting.
(ii) During the hot keep, the louver is kept at the horizontal position.

(b) Ending condition

When the indoor fan is at the lower tap at each setting, it returns to the set airflow volume as the indoor heat exchanger temperature rises to 45°C or higher.

(8) Auto swing control

(a) RC-EX1A

(i) Louver control

1) To operate the swing louver when the air conditioner is operating, press the "Direction" button on the TOP screen of remote control. The wind direction select screen will be displayed.

2) To swing the louver, touch the "Auto swing" button. The lover will move up and down. To fix the swing louver at a position, touch one of [1] - [4] buttons. The swing lover will stop at the selected position.

3) Louver operation at the power on with a unit having the louver 4-position control function
The louver swings one time automatically (without operating the remote control) at the power on.
This allows the microcomputer recognizing and inputting the louver motor (LM) position.

(ii) Automatic louver level setting during heating

At the hot start and the heating thermostat OFF, regardless whether the auto swing switch is operated or not (auto swing or louver stop), the louver takes the level position (in order to prevent blowing of cool wind). The louver position display LCD continues to show the display which has been shown before entering this control.

(iii) Louver free stop control

If you touch the "Menu" → "Next" → "R/C settings" buttons one after another on the TOP screen of remote control, the "Flap control" screen is displayed. If the free stop is selected on this screen, the louver motor stops upon receipt of the stop signal from the remote control. If the auto swing signal is received from the remote control, the auto swing will start from the position before the stop.

(b) RC-E5

(i) Louver control

1) Press the "LOUVER" button to operate the swing louver when the air-conditioner is operating.
"SWING ⇆" is displayed for 3 seconds and then the swing louver moves up and down continuously.

2) To fix the swing louver at a position, press one time the "LOUVER" button while the swing louver is moving so that four stop positions are displayed one after another per second.
When a desired stop position is displayed, press the "LOUVER" button again. The display stops, changes to show the "STOP 1 ⌐" for 5 seconds and then the swing louver stops.

3) Louver operation at the power on with a unit having the louver 4-position control function
The louver swings one time automatically (without operating the remote control) at the power on.
This allows inputting the louver motor (LM) position, which is necessary for the microcomputer to recognize the louver position.

Note (1) If you press the "LOUVER" button, the swing motion is displayed on the louver position LCD for 10 second. The display changes to the "SWING ⇆" display 3 seconds later.

(ii) Automatic louver level setting during heating

At the hot start with the heating thermostat OFF, regardless whether the auto swing switch is operated or not (auto swing or louver stop), the louver takes the level position (In order to prevent the cold start). The louver position display LCD continues to show the display which has been shown before entering this control.

(iii) Louver-free stop control

When the louver-free stop has been selected with the indoor function of wired remote control "⇆ POSITION", the louver motor stops when it receives the stop signal from the remote control. If the auto swing signal is received from the remote control, the auto swing will start from the position where it was before the stop.

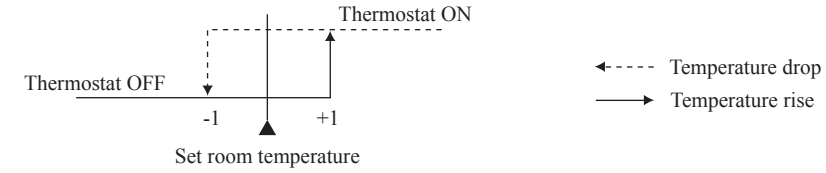
Note (1) When the indoor function of wired remote control "⇆ POSITION" has been switched, switch also the remote control function "⇆ POSITION" in the same way.

(9) Thermostat operation

(a) Cooling

(i) Thermostat is operated with the room temperature control.

(ii) Thermostat is turned ON or OFF relative to the set room temperature as shown below.

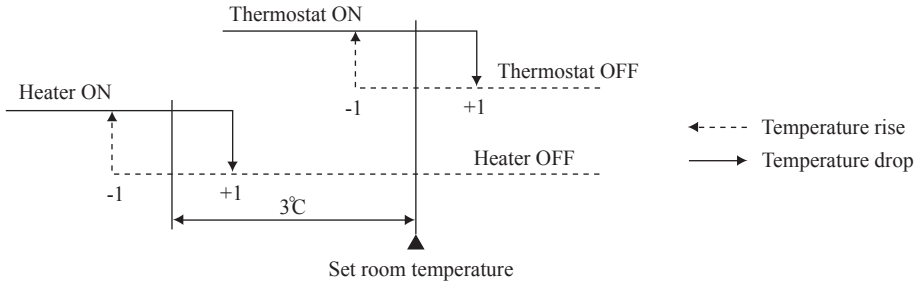


(iii) Thermostat is turned ON when the room temperature is in the range of -1 < Set temperature < +1 at the start of cooling operation (including from heating to cooling).

(b) Heating

(i) Thermostat is operated with the room temperature control.

(ii) Thermostat is turned ON or OFF relative to the set room temperature as shown below.



(iii) Thermostat is turned ON when the room temperature is in the range of -1 < Set point < +1 at the start of cooling operation (including from cooling to heating).

(c) Fan control during heating thermostat OFF

(i) Following fan controls during the heating thermostat OFF can be selected with the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

① Low fan speed (Factory default), ② Set fan speed, ③ Intermittence, ④ Fan OFF

(ii) When the "Low fan speed (Factory default)" is selected, the following taps are used for the indoor fans.

- For AC motor : Lo tap
- For DC motor : ULo tap

(iii) When the "Set fan speed" is selected, it is operated with the set fan speed also in the thermostat OFF condition.

(iv) If the "Intermittence" is selected, following controls are performed:

1) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the heating operation, the indoor unit fan motor stops.
2) Indoor fan OFF is fixed for 5 minutes. After the 5 minutes, the indoor fan is operated at Lo or ULo for 2 minutes. In the meantime the louver is controlled at level.
3) After operating at Lo or ULo for 2 minutes, the indoor fan moves to the state of 1) above.
4) If the thermostat is turned ON, it moves to the hot start control.
5) When the heating thermostat is turned OFF, the remote control displays the temperature detected at the fan stop and revises the temperature later when the indoor fan changes from Lo or ULo to stop.
   The remote control uses the operation data display function to display temperatures and updates values of temperature even when the indoor fan is turned OFF.
6) When the defrosting starts while the heating thermostat is turned OFF or the thermostat is turned OFF during defrosting, the indoor fan is turned OFF. (Hot keep or hot start control takes priority.) However, the suction temperature is updated at every 7-minute.
7) When the heating thermostat is turned ON or the operation is changed to another mode (including stop), this control is stopped immediately, and the operating condition is restored.

(v) When the "Fan OFF" is selected, the fan on the indoor unit of which the thermostat has been turned OFF, is turned OFF. The same occurs also when the remote control sensor is effective.

(d) Fan control during cooling thermostat OFF

(i) Following fan controls during the cooling thermostat OFF can be selected with the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

① Low fan speed, ② Set fan speed (Factory default), ③ Intermittence, ④ Fan OFF

(ii) When the "Low fan speed" is selected, the following taps are used for the indoor fans.

- For AC motor : Lo tap
- For DC motor : ULo tap

(iii) When the "Set fan speed" is selected, it is operated with the set fan speed also in the thermostat OFF condition.

(iv) If the "Intermittence" is selected, following controls are performed:

1) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the cooling operation, the indoor unit fan motor stops.
2) Indoor fan OFF is fixed for 5 minutes. After the 5 minutes, the indoor fan is operated at Lo or ULo for 2 minutes.
3) After operating at Lo or ULo for 2 minutes, the indoor fan moves to the state of 1) above.
4) If the thermostat is turned ON, the fan starts operation at set fan speed.
5) When the cooling thermostat is turned OFF, the remote control displays the temperature detected at the fan stop and revises the temperature later when the indoor fan changes from Lo or ULo to stop.

   By using operation data display function at wireless remote control, the temperature as displayad and the value is updated including the fan stops.
6) When the cooling thermostat is turned ON or the operation is changed to another mode (including stop), this control is stopped immediately, and the operating condition is restored.

(v) When the "Fan OFF" is selected, the fan on the indoor unit of which the thermostat has been turned OFF, is turned OFF. The same occurs also when the remote control sensor is effective.

(10) Filter sign

As the operation time (Total ON time of ON/OFF switch) accumulates to 180 hours (1), "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed on the remote control. (This is displayed when the unit is in trouble and under the centralized control, regardless of ON/OFF)

Note (1) Time setting for the filter sign can be made as shown below using the indoor function of wired remote control "FILTER SIGN SET". (It is set at TYPE 1 at the shipping from factory.)

Filter sign setting	Function
TYPE 1	Setting time: 180 hrs (Factory default)
TYPE 2	Setting time: 600 hrs
TYPE 3	Setting time: 1,000 hrs
TYPE 4	Setting time: 1,000 hrs (Unit stop) (2)

(2) After the setting time has elapsed, the "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed and, after operating for 24 hours further (counted also during the stop), the unit stops.

(11) Compressor inching prevention control

(a) 3-minute timer

When the compressor has been stopped by the thermostat, remote control operation switch or anomalous condition, its restart will be inhibited for 3 minutes. However, the 3-minute timer is invalidated at the power on the electric power source for the unit.

(b) 3-minute forced operation timer

(i) Compressor will not stop for 3 minutes after the compressor ON. However, it stops immediately when the unit is stopped by means of the ON/OFF switch or by when the thermister turned OFF the change of operation mode.

(ii) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the forced operation control of heating compressor, the louver position (with the auto swing) is returned to the level position.

Note (1) The compressor stops when it has entered the protective control.

(12) Drain pump control

(a) This control is operated when the inverter frequency is other than 0 Hz during the cooling operation and automatic cooling and dehumidifying operations.

(b) Drain pump ON condition continues for 5 minutes even when it enters the OFF range according to (i) above after turning the drain pump ON, and then stops. The 5-minute delay continues also in the event of anomalous stop.

(c) The drain pump is operated with the 5-minute delay operation when the compressor is changed from ON to OFF.

(d) Even in conditions other than the above (such as heating, fan, stop, cooling thermostat OFF), the drain pump control is performed by the drain detection.

(e) Following settings can be made using the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

(i) ❄ 〔Standard (in cooling & dry)〕 : Drain pump is run during cooling and dry.

(ii) ❄ AND ☼ 〔Operate in standard & heating〕 : Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and heating.

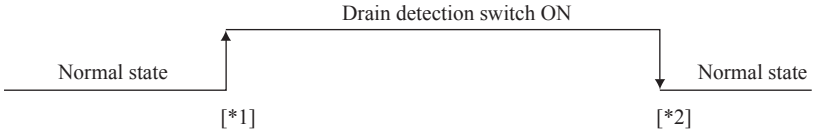
(iii) ❄ AND ☼ AND ≡ 〔Operate in heating & fan〕 : Drain pump is run during cooling, dry, heating and fan.

(iv) ❄ AND ≡ 〔Operate in standard & fan〕 : Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and fan.

Note (1) Values in 〔 〕 are for the RC-EX1A model.

(13) Drain pump abnormalities detection

(a) Drain detection switch is turned ON or OFF with the float switch (FS) and the timer.



[＊1] Drain detection switch is turned “ON” when the float switch “Open” is detected for 3 seconds continuously in the drain detectable space.

[＊2] Drain detection switch is turned “OFF” when the float switch “Close” is detected for 10 seconds continuously.

(i) It detects always from 30 seconds after turning the power ON.

1) There is no detection of anomalous draining for 10 seconds after turning the drain pump OFF.

2) Turning the drain detection switch “ON” causes to turn ON the drain pump forcibly.

3) Turning the drain detection switch “OFF” releases the forced drain pump ON condition.

(b) Indoor unit performs the control A or B depending on each operating condition.

	Indoor unit operation mode				
	Stop (1)	Cooling	Dry	Fan (2)	Heating
Compressor ON		Control A			
Compressor OFF	Control B				

Note (1) Including the stop from the cooling, dehumidifying, fan and heating, and the anomalous stop
(2) Including the “Fan” operation according to the mismatch of operation modes

(i) Control A

1) If the float switch detects any anomalous draining condition, the unit stops with the anomalous stop (displays E9) and the drain pump starts. After detecting the anomalous condition, the drain motor continues to be ON.

2) It keeps operating while the float switch is detecting the anomalous condition.

(ii) Control B

If the float switch detects any anomalous drain condition, the drain motor is turned ON for 5 minutes, and at 10 seconds after the drain motor OFF it checks the float switch. If it is normal, the unit is stopped under the normal mode or, if there is any anomalous condition, E9 is displayed and the drain motor is turned ON. (The ON condition is maintained during the drain detection.)

(14) Operation check/drain pump test run operation mode

(a) If the power is turned on by the dip switch (SW7-1) on the indoor PCB when electric power source is supplied, it enters the mode of operation check/drain pump test run. It is ineffective (prohibited) to change the switch after turning power on.

(b) When the communication with the remote control has been established within 60 seconds after turning power on by the dip switch (SW7-1) ON, it enters the operation check mode. Unless the remote control communication is established, it enters the drain pump test run mode.

Note (1) To select the drain pump test run mode, disconnect the remote control connector (CNB) on the indoor PCB to shut down the remote control communication.

(c) Operation check mode

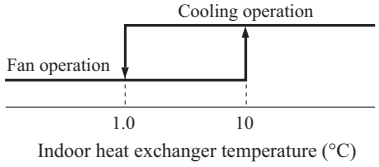
There is no communication with the outdoor unit but it allows performing operation in respective modes by operating the remote control.

(d) Drain pump test run mode

As the drain pump test run is established, the drain pump only operates and during the operation protective functions by the microcomputer of indoor unit become ineffective.

(15) Cooling, dehumidifying frost protection

(a) To prevent frosting during cooling mode or dehumidifying mode operation, the of compressor speed is reduced if the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R) drops to 1.0 °C or lower at 4 minutes after the start of compressor operation. If the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature is 1.0 °C or lower after 1 minutes, the compressor speed is reduced further. If it becomes 2.5 °C or higher, the control terminates. When the indoor heat exchanger temperature has become as show below after reducing the compressor speed, it is switched to the fan operation. For the selection of indoor fan speed, refer to item 2).



(b) Selection of indoor fan speed

If it enters the frost prevention control during cooling operation (excluding dehumidifying), the indoor unit fan speed is switched.

(i) In the case of FDT, FDU, FDUM only.

1) When the indoor return air detection temperature (detected with ThI-A) is 23°C or higher and the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R) detects the compressor frequency drop start temperature A°C+1°C, of indoor unit fan speed is increased by 20min^{-1}.

2) If the phenomenon of 1) above is detected again after the acceleration of indoor unit fan, indoor unit fan speed is increased further by 20min^{-1}.

Note (1) Indoor unit fan speed can be increased by up to 2 taps.

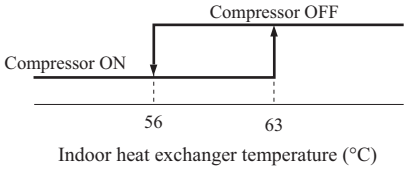
• Compressor frequency drop start temperature

Item \ Symbol	A
Temperature - Low (Factory default)	1.0
Temperature - High	2.5

Note (1) Frost prevention temperature setting can be selected with the indoor unit function setting of the wired remote control.

(16) Heating overload protection

(a) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R) at 63°C or higher is detected for 2 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted after a 3-minute delay, if a temperature at 63°C or higher is detected for 2 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection and if this is detected 5 times consecutively, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop (E8). Anomalous stop occurs also when the indoor heat exchanger temperature at 63°C or higher is detected for 6 minutes continuously.



(b) Indoor unit fan speed selection

If, after second detection of heating overload protection up to fourth, the indoor fan is set at Me and Lo taps when the compressor is turned ON, the indoor fan speed is increased by 1 tap.

(17) Anomalous DC fan motor

(a) After starting the fan motor, if the fan motor speed is 200min^{-1} or less is detected for 30 seconds continuously and 4 times within 60 minutes, then fan motor stops with the anomalous stop (E16).

(b) If the fan motor fails to reach at -50(FDU: -500) min^{-1} less than the required speed, it stops with the anomalous stop (E20).

(18) Plural unit control – Control of 16 units group by one remote control

(a) Function

One remote control switch can control a group of multiple number of unit (Max. 16 indoor units). "Operation mode" which is set by the remote control switch can operate or stop all units in the group one after another in the order of unit No.(1). Thermostat and protective function of each unit function independently.

Note (1) Unit No. is set by SW2 on the indoor unit control PCB. Unit No. setting by SW2 is necessary for the indoor unit only. In cases of the twin and triple specification, it is necessary set for the master and the slave units. This can be selected by SW5. (All are set for the master unit at the shipping from factory.)

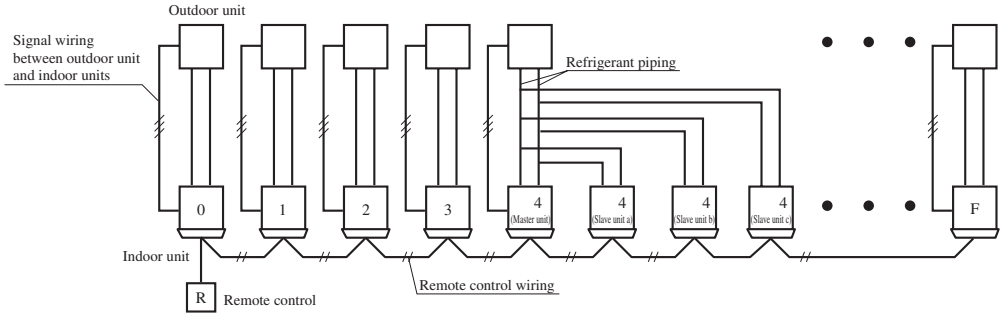
SW2: For setting of 0 – 9, A – F

SW5: For setting of master and slave units

(See table shown at right.)

SW5 setting

Unit \ Switch	SW5-1	SW5-2
Master unit	OFF	OFF
Slave unit a	OFF	ON
Slave unit b	ON	OFF
Slave unit c	ON	ON



(2) Unit No. may be set at random unless duplicated, it should be better to set orderly like 0, 1, 2…, F to avoid mistake.

(b) Display to the remote control

(i) Center or each remote control basis, heating preparation: the youngest unit No. among the operating units in the remote mode (or the center mode unless the remote mode is available) is displayed.

(ii) Inspection display, filter sign: Any of unit that starts initially is displayed.

(iii) Confirmation of connected units

1) In case of RC-EX1A remote control

If you touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Next" → "Service & Maintenance" → "IU address" on the TOP screen of remote control, the indoor units which are connected are displayed.

2) In case of RC-E5 remote control

Pressing "AIR CON No." button on the remote control displays the indoor unit address. If "▲" "▼" button is pressed at the next, it is displayed orderly starting from the unit of youngest No.

(iv) In case of anomaly

1) If any anomaly occurs on a unit in a group (a protective function operates), that unit stops with the anomalous stop but any other normal units continue to run as they are.

2) Signal wiring procedure

Signal wiring between indoor and outdoor units should be made on each unit same as the normal wiring. For the group control, lay connect with sires wiring between rooms using terminal blocks (X, Y) of remote control.

Connect the remote control communication wire separately from the power source wire or wires of other electric devices (AC220V or higher).

(19) High ceiling control

When sufficient air flow rate cannot be obtained from the indoor unit which is installed at a room with high ceiling, the air flow rate can be increased by changing the fan tap. To change the fan tap, use the indoor unit function "FAN SPEED SET" on the wired remote control.

Fan tap		Indoor unit airflow setting				Series
		▮▮▮ - ▮▮ - ▮ - ▯	▮▮ - ▮ - ▯	▮▮ - ▮	▮▮ - ▮	
FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	PHi1 - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	Except FDT
		PHi2 - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	Only FDT
	HIGH SPEED1	PHi1 - PHi1 - Hi - Me	PHi1 - Hi - Me	PHi1 - Me	PHi1 - Hi	Except FDT
		PHi2 - PHi1 - Hi - Me	PHi1 - Hi - Me	PHi1 - Me	PHi1 - Hi	Only FDT
	HIGH SPEED2	PHi2 - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - M	Only FDT

Notes (1) Factory default is STANDARD.

(2) At the hot-start and heating thermostat OFF, or other, the indoor unit fan is operated at the low speed tap of each setting.

(3) This function is not able to be set with wireless remote controls or simple remote control (RCH-E3)

(20) Abnormal temperature thermistor (return air/indoor heat exchanger) wire/short-circuit detection

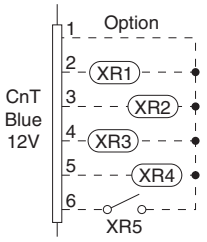
(a) Broken wire detection
When the return air temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower or the heat exchanger temperature thermistor detect -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After a 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts but, if it is detected again within 60 minutes after the initial detection for 6 minutes continuously, stops again (the return air temperature thermistor: E7, the heat exchanger temperature thermistor: E6).

(b) Short-circuit detection
If the heat exchanger temperature thermistor detects 70°C or higher for 5 seconds continuously at 2 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON during cooling operation, the compressor stops (E6).

(21) External input/output control (CnT or CnTA)

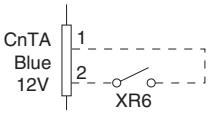
Be sure to connect the wired remote control to the indoor unit. Without wired remote control remote operation by CnT is not possible to perform.

・CnT



①Operation output (CnT-2: XR1)
②Heating output (CnT-3: XR2)
③Thermostat ON output (CnT-4: XR3)
④Error output (CnT-5: XR4)
⑤Remote operation input (CnT-6: Volt-free contact)

・CnTA



Note (1) CnTA function can be changed by RC-EX1A.

■ Priority order for combinations of CnT and CnTA input.

		CnTA					
		① Operation stop level	② Operation stop pulse	③ Operation permission/prohibition	④ Operation permission/prohibition pulse	⑤ Cooling/heating selection level	⑥ Cooling/heating selection pulse
CnT	① Operation stop level	CnT ①	CnT ①	CnT ① +CnTA ②	CnT ①	CnT ① /CnTA ⑤	CnT ① /CnTA ⑥
	② Operation stop pulse	CnT ②	CnT ②	CnT ② +CnTA ③	CnT ②	CnT ② /CnTA ⑤	CnT ② /CnTA ⑥
	③ Operation permission/prohibition level	CnT ③ >CnTA ①	CnT ③ >CnTA ②	CnT ③ +CnTA ③	CnT ③	CnT ③ /CnTA ⑤	CnT ③ /CnTA ⑥
	④ Operation permission/prohibition pulse	CnT ④	CnT ④	CnT ④ +CnTA ③※	CnT ④	CnT ④ /CnTA ⑤	CnT ④ /CnTA ⑥
	⑤ Cooling/heating selection level	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ①	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ②	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ③※	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ④	CnT ⑤	CnT ⑤
	⑥ Cooling/heating selection pulse	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ①	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ②	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ③	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ④	CnT ⑥	CnT ⑥

Note (1) Following operation commands are accepted when the operation prohibition is set with CnTA as indicated with *.
Individual operation command from remote control, test run command from outdoor unit and operation command from option device, CNT input.

Reference: Explanation on the codes and the combinations of codes in the table above
1. In case of CnT “Number”, the CnT “Number” is adopted and CnTA is invalidated.
2. In case of CnTA “Number”, the CnTA “Number” is adopted and CnT is invalidated.
3. In case of CnT “Number”/CnTA “Number”, the CnT “Number” and the CnTA “Number” become independent functions each other.
4. In case of CnT “Number” + CnTA “Number”, the CnT “Number” and the CnTA “Number” become competing functions each other.
5. In case of CnT “Number” > CnTA “Number”, the function of CnT “Number” supersedes that of CnTA “Number”.
6. In case of CnT “Number” < CnTA “Number”, the function of CnTA “Number” supersedes that of CnT “Number”.

(The “Number” above means ① - ⑥ in the table.)

(a) Output for external control (remote display)

Following output connectors (CnT) are provided on the indoor control PCB for monitoring operation status.

① **Operation output:** Outputs DC12V signal for driving relay during operation
② **Heating output:** Outputs DC12V signal for driving relay during heating operation
③ **Thermostat ON output:** Outputs DC12V signal for driving relay when compressor is operating.
④ **Error output:** Outputs DC12V signal for driving relay when anomalous condition occurs.

(b) Remote operation input

Remote operation input connector (CnT-6 or CnTA) is provided on the indoor control PCB.

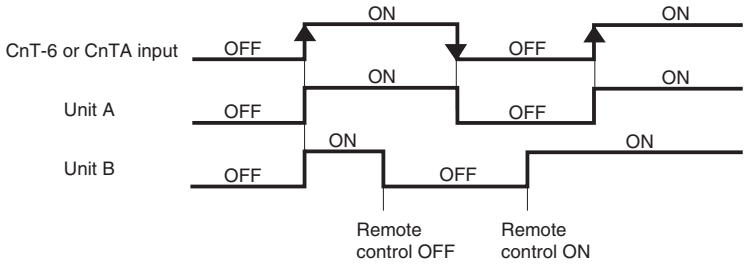
However remote operation by CnT-6 or CnTA is not effective, when “Center mode” is selected by central control.

In case of plural unit (twin, triple, double twin), remote operation input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the slave indoor unit is invalid.

Only the “LEVEL INPUT” is acceptable for external input, however when the indoor function setting of “Level input (Factory default)” or “Pulse input” is selected by the function for “External input” of the wired remote control, operation status will be changed as follows.

(i) In case of "Level input" setting (Factory default)

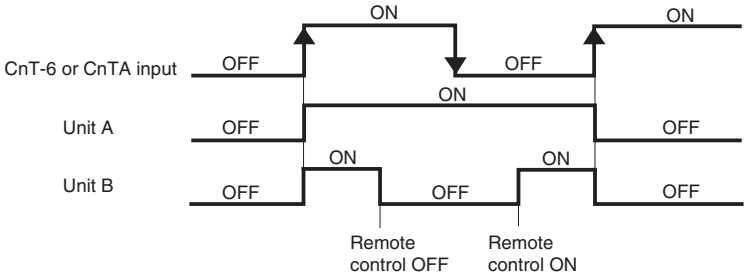
Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is OFF→ON …… unit ON
Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is ON→OFF …… unit OFF
Operation is not inverted.



Note: The latest operation has priority
It is available to operate/stop by remote control or central control

(ii) In case of "Pulse input" setting (Local setting)

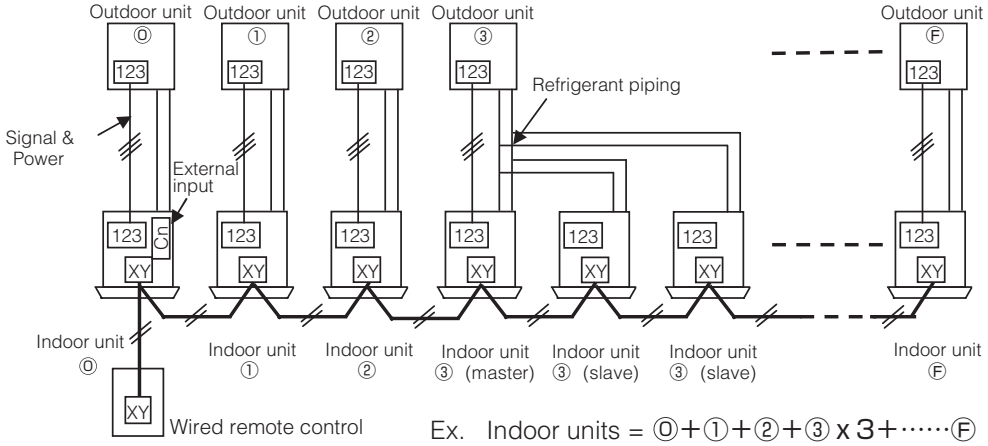
It is effective only when the input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is changed OFF→ON, and at that time unit operation [ON/OFF] is inverted.



(c) Remote operation

(i) In case of multiple units (Max. 16 indoor units group) are connected to one wired remote control

When the indoor function setting of wired remote control for "External control set" is changed from "Individual (Factory default)" to " For all units", all units connected in one wired remote control system can be controlled by external operation input.



	Individual operation (Factory default)		All units operation (Local setting)	
CnT-6 or CnTA	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Only the unit directly connected to the remote control can be operated.	Only the unit directly connected to the remote control can be stopped opeartion.	All units in one remote control system can be operated.	All units in one remote control system can be stopped operation.
	Unit ① only	Unit ① only	Units ① – Ⓝ	Units ① – Ⓝ

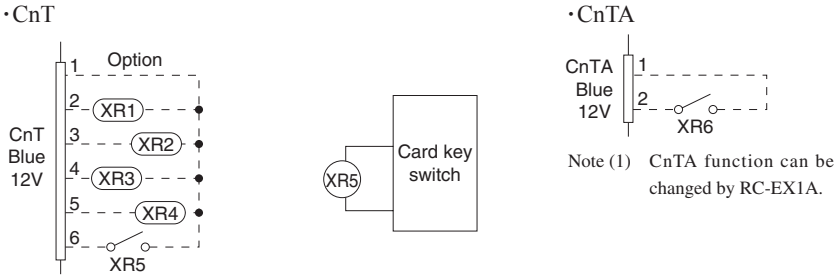
When more than one indoor unit (Max. 16 indoor units) are connected in one wired remote control system:

(1) With the factory default, external input to CnT-6 or CnTA is effective for only the unit ①.
(2) When setting "For all unit" (Local setting), all units in one remote control system can be controlled by external input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the indoor unit ①.
(3) External input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the other indoor unit than the unit ① is not effective.

(22) Operation permission/prohibition

(In case of adopting card key switches or commercially available timers)

When the indoor function setting of wired remote control for "Operation permission/prohibition" is changed from "Invalid (Factory default)" to " Valid", following control becomes effective.



	Normal operation (Factory default)		Operation permission/prohibition mode "Valid" (Local setting)	
CnT-6 or CnTA	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Operation	Stop	Operation permission*1	Operation prohibition (Unit stops)

*1 **Only the "LEVEL INPUT" is acceptable for external input**, however when the indoor function setting of "Level input (Factory default)" or "Pulse input" is selected by the function for "External input" of the wired remote control, operation status will be changed as follows.

In case of "Level input" setting	In case of "Pulse input" setting
Unit operation from the wired remote control becomes available*(1)	Unit starts operation *(2)

*(1) In case that "Operation permission/prohibition mode" setting is "Valid" and "External input" setting is "Level input (Factory default)";

① When card key switch is ON (CnT-6 or CnTA ON: Operation permission), start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes available.

② When card key switch is OFF (CnT-6 or CnTA OFF: Operation prohibition), the unit stops operation in conjunction with OFF signal, and start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes not available.

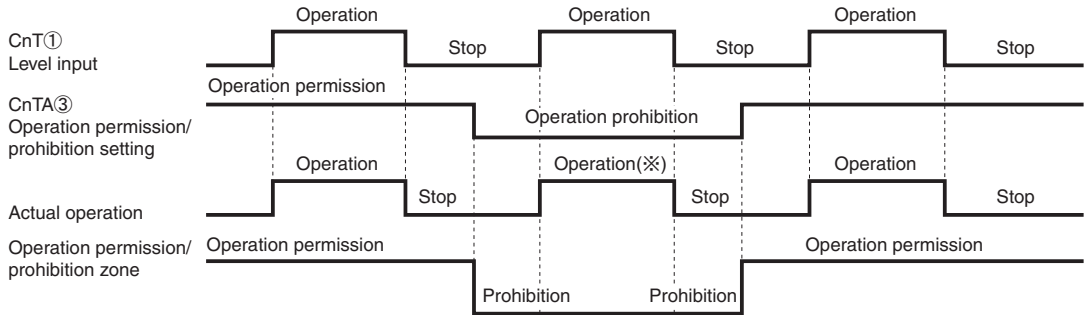
*(2) In case that "Operation permission/prohibition mode" setting is "Valid" and "External input" setting is "Pulse input (Local setting)";

① When card key switch is ON (Operation permission), the unit starts operation in conjunction with ON signal. and also start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes available.

② When card key switch is OFF (Operation prohibition), the unit stops operation in conjunction with OFF signal, and start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes not available.

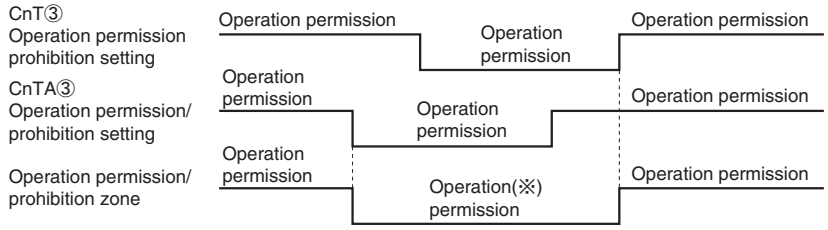
(3) This function is invalid only at "Center mode" setting done by central control.

(a) In case of CnT ① Operation stop level > CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



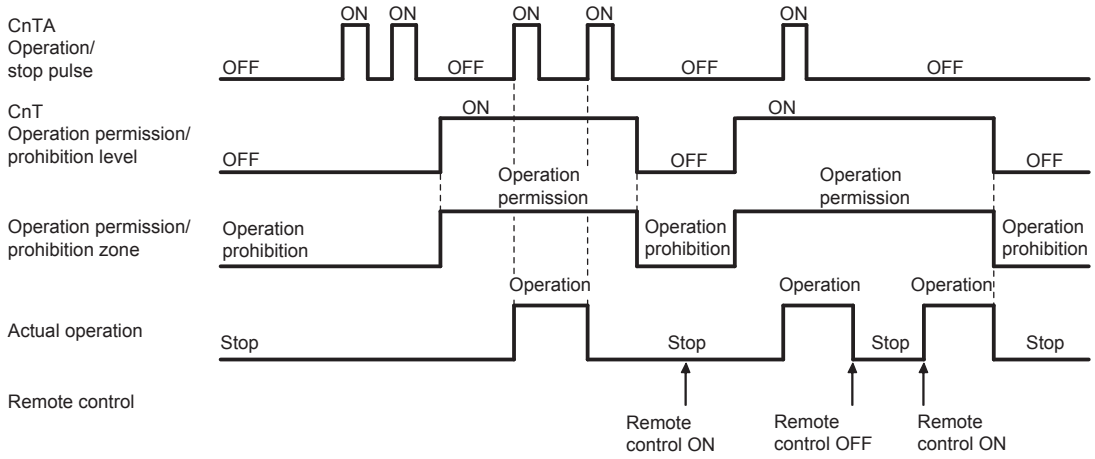
(※) CnT level input supersedes CnTA operation prohibition.

(b) In case of CnT ③ Operation permission/prohibition level + CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



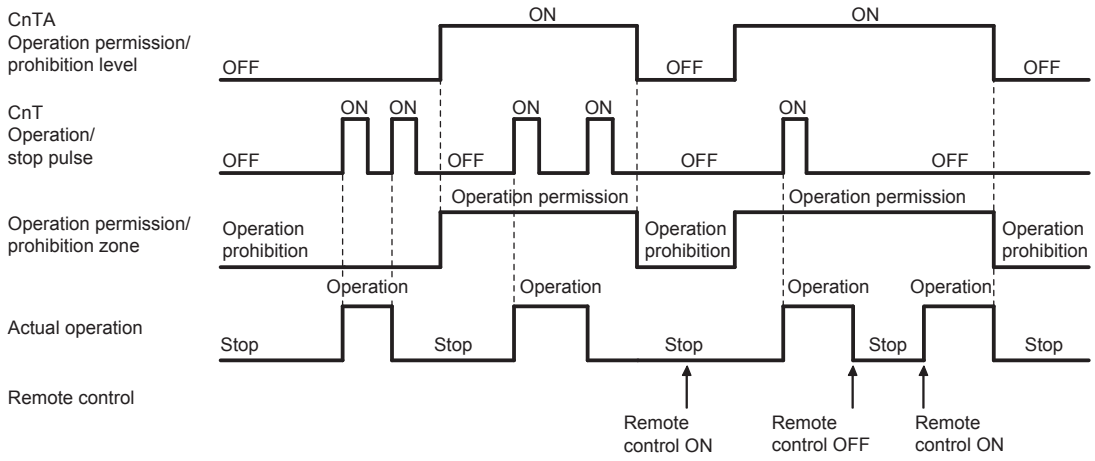
(※) Operation prohibition zone is determined by the OR judgment between CnT Operation prohibition zone and CnTA Operation prohibition zone.

(c) In case of CnT ③ Operation permission/prohibition level > CnTA ② Operation/stop pulse



Note (1) If it is prohibited by CnT, all "Operation" and "Stop" commands are not accepted.

(d) In case of CnT ② Operation/stop pulse + CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



(23) Selection of cooling/heating external input function

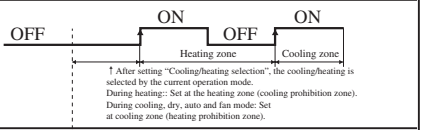
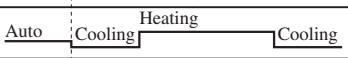
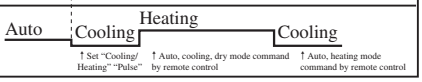
(a) When "External input 1 setting: Cooling/heating" is set for the indoor unit function from remote control, the cooling or heating is selected with CnT-6 or CnTA.

(b) When the External input 1 method selection: Level input is set for the indoor unit function:
- CnT-6 or CnTA: OPEN → Cooling operation mode
- CnT-6 or CnTA: CLOSE → Heating operation mode

(c) When the External input 1 method selection: Pulse input is set for the indoor unit function:
If the external input is changed OPEN → CLOSE, operation modes are inverted (Cooling → Heating or Heating → Cooling).

(d) If the cooling/heating selection signal is given by the external input, the operation mode is transmitted to the remote control.

■ Selection of cooling/heating external input function

External input selection	External input method	Operation	
External input selection Cooling/heating selection	⑤ Level	External terminal input (CnT or CnTA)	
		Cooling/heating	
		Cooling/heating (Competitive)	
	⑥ Pulse	External terminal input (CnT or CnTA)	
		Cooling/heating	
		Cooling/heating (Competitive)	

Notes (1) Regarding the priority order for combinations of CnT and CnTA, refer to Page 20.

(24) Fan control at heating startup

(a) Start conditions

At the start of heating operation, if the difference of setting temperature and return air temperature is 5°C or higher after the end of hot start control, this control is performed.

(b) Contents of control

(i) Sampling is made at each minute and, when the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R) is 37°C or higher, present number of revolutions of indoor unit fan speed is increased by $10min^{-1}$.

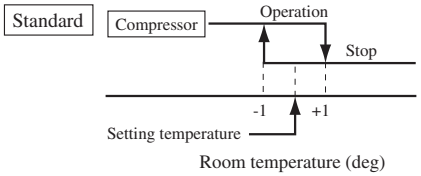
(ii) If the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature drops below 37°C at next sampling, present number of revolutions of indoor unit fan speed is reduced by $10min^{-1}$.

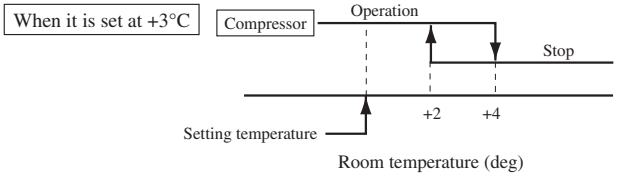
(c) End conditions

Indoor fan speed is reduced to the setting airflow volume when the compressor OFF is established and at 30 minutes after the start of heating operation.

(25) Room temperature detection temperature compensation during heating

With the standard specification, the compressor is turned ON/OFF with the thermostat setting temperature. When the thermostat is likely to turn OFF earlier because the unit is installed at the ceiling where warm air tends to accumulate, the setting can be changed with the wired remote control indoor unit function "☼SP OFFSET". The compressor and the heater are turned ON/OFF at one of the setting temperature +3, +2 or +1°C in order to improve the feeling of heating. The setting temperature, however, has the upper limit of 30°C.





(26) Return air temperature compensation

This is the function to compensate the deviation between the detection temperature by the return air temperature thermistor and the measured temperature after installing the unit.

(a) It is adjustable in the unit of 0.5°C with the wired remote control indoor unit function "RETURN AIR TEMP".

• +1.0°C, +1.5°C, +2.0°C • -1.0°C, -1.5°C, -2.0°C

(b) Compensated temperature is transmitted to the remote control and the compressor to control them.

Note (1) The detection temperature compensation is effective on the indoor unit thermistor only.

(27) High power operation (RC-EX1A only)

It operates at with the set temp. fixed at 16°C for cooling, 30°C for heating and maximum indoor fan speed for 15 minutes maximum.

(28) Energy-saving operation (RC-EX1A only)

It operates with the setting temperature fixed at 28°C for cooling, 22°C for heating or 25°C for auto. (Maximum capacity is restricted at 80%.)

(29) Warm-up control (RC-EX1A only)

Operation will be started 5 to 60 minutes before use according to the forecast made by the microcomputer which calculates when the operation should be started in order to warm up the indoor temperature near the setting temperature at the setting time of operation start.

(30) Home leave mode (RC-EX1A only)

When the unit is not used for a long period of time, the room temperature is maintained at a moderate leval, avoiding extremely hot or cool temperature.

(a) Cooling or heating is operated according to the outdoor temperature (factory setting 35°C for cooling, 0°C for heating) and the set temp. (factory setting 33°C for cooling, 10°C for heating)

(b) Set temp and indoor fan speed can be set by RC-EX1A.

(31) Auto temp. setting (RC-EX1A only)

Setting temperature is adjusted automatically at the adequate temperature the center set temp. is 24°C by correcting the outdoor air temperature.

(32) Fan circulator operation (RC-EX1A only)

When the fan is used for circulation, the unit is operated as follows depending on the setting with the remote control.

(a) If the invalid is selected with the remote control, the fan is operated continuously during the fan operation. (mormal fan mode)

(b) If the valid is selected with the remote control, the fan is operated or stopped when on the difference of the remote control temperature sensor and the indoor unit return air temperature sensor becomes bigger than 3°C.

(33) The operation judgment is executed every 5 minutes (RC-EX1A only)

Setting temperature Ts is changed according to outdoor temperature

This control is valid with cooling and heating mode. (NOT auto mode)

(a) Operate 5 minutes forcedly.

(b) Setting temperature is adjusted every 10 minutes.

(i) Cooling mode.
Ts = outdoor temperature − offset value

(ii) Heating mode.
Ts = outdoor temperature − offset value

(c) If the return air temperature lower than 18°C or return air temperature becomes lower than 25°C, unit goes thermo OFF.

(34) Auto fan speed control (RC-EX1A only)

In order to reach the room temperature to the set temperature as quickly as possible, the airflow rate is increased when the set temperature of thermostat differs largely from the return air temperature. According to temperature difference be tureen set temperature and return air temperature, indoor fan tap are controlled automalically.

・ Auto 1: Changes the indoor unit fan tap within the range of Hi ↔ Me ↔ Lo.
・ Auto 2: Changes the indoor unit fan tap within the range of PHi ↔ Hi ↔ Me ↔ Lo.

(35) Indoor unit overload alarm (RC-EX1A only)

If the following condition is satisfied at 30 minutes after starting operation, RC-EX1A shows maintenance code "M07" and the signal is transmitted to the external output (CnT-5).

(a) Receipt of the signal by the external output is indicated by lighting an LED or other prepared on site.

・Cooling, Dry, Auto(Cooling) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature by remote control + Alarm temperature difference
・Heating, Auto(Heating) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature by remote control - Alarm temperature difference

Alarm temperature difference is selectable between 5 to 10°C.

(b) If the following condition is satisfied or unit is stopped, the signal is disappeared.

・Cooling, Dry, Auto(Cooling) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature + Alarm temperature difference -2°C
・Heating, Auto(Heating) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature - Alarm temperature difference +2°C

1.4 Operation control function by the oudoor control

(1) Determination of compressor speed (frequency)

Required frequency

(a) Cooling/dehumidifying operation. Unit: rps

Model		200	250
Max. required frequency	Usual operation	120	120
	Outdoor air temperature ≦ 15°C or indoor return air temperature ≦ 20°C	100	100
	Silent mode	80 (100)	70 (100)
Min. required frequency		15	20

Note(1) Value in ( ) are for the SW7-3 OFF.

(b) Heating operation. Unit: rps

Model		200	250
Max. required frequency	Usual operation	120	120
	Silent mode	80 (100)	70 (100)
Min. required frequency		15	20

Note(1) Value in ( ) are for the SW7-3 OFF.

(c) If the indoor unit fan speed becomes “Me” or “Lo”, Max required frequency goes down accordingly depending on indoor unit model.

(d) Max. required frequency under high outdoor air temperature in cooling mode.
Maximum required frequency is selected according to the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Unit: rps

Model		200	250
Max. required frequency	Outdoor air temperature is 40°C or higher	100	120

(e) Max. required frequency under outdoor air temperature in heating mode.
Maximum required frequency is selected according to the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Unit: rps

Model		200	250
Max. required frequency	Outdoor air temperature is 10°C or higher	120	120
	Outdoor air temperature is 18°C or higher	100	120

(f) Selection of max. required frequency by heat exchanger temperature.

(i) Maximum required frequency is selected according to the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) during cooling/dehumidifying or according to the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) during heating mode.

(ii) When there are 3 indoor unit heat exchanger temperatures (ThI-R), whichever the highest applies,

Unit: rps

Model			200	250
Max. required frequency	Cooling/ dehumidifying	Outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature is 56°C or higher	110	120
	Heating	Indoor unit heat exchanger temperature is 56°C or higher	120	120

(g) When any of the controls from (a) to (f) above may duplicate, whichever the smallest value among duplicated controls is taken as the maximum required frequency.

(h) During heating, it is operated with the maximum required frequency until the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature becomes 40°C or higher.

(2) Compressor start control

(a) Compressor starts upon receipt of the thermostat ON signal from the indoor unit.

(b) However, at initial start after turning the power source breaker, it may enter the standby state for maximum 30 minutes (“ PREPARATION” is displayed on the remote control) in order to prevent the oil loss in the compressor.
If the cooling/dehumidifying/heating operation is selected from the remote control when the outdoor unit is in the standby state, “ PREPARATION” is displayed for 3 seconds on the remote control.

(3) Compressor soft start control

(a) Compressor protection start I

[Control condition] Normally, the compressor operation frequency is raised in this start pattern.

[Control contents] 1) Starts with the compressor's target frequency at **A** rps.
However, when the ambient air temperature (Tho-A) is 35°C or higher during cooling/dehumidifying or the indoor return air temperature (ThI-A) is 25°C or higher during heating, it starts at **C** rps.

2) At 30 seconds after the start of compressor, its target frequency changes to **B** rps and the compressor is operated for 2 - 4 minutes with its operation frequency fixed at **B** rps.

Model	Operation mode	**A** rps	**B** rps	**C** rps
200	Cooling/Dehumidifying	45	45	25
	Heating	45	45	25
250	Cooling/Dehumidifying	55	55	30
	Heating	55	55	30

(b) Compressor protection start III

[Control condition] Number of compressor starts is only 1 counted after the power source breaker ON.

[Control contents] Operates by selecting one of following start patterns according to the operation mode and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

(i) Low frequency operation control during cooling/dehumidifying.

[Control condition] Upon establishing the conditions of compressor protection start III, the low frequency operation control is performed during cooling/dehumidifying.

[Control contents] a) Starts with the compressor's target frequency at **A** rps. When the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is 35°C or higher, it starts at **C** rps.

b) At 30 seconds after the compressor start, the compressor's target frequency is changed to **B** rps and the compressor's operation frequency is fixed for 10 minutes.

Model	Operation mode	**A** rps	**B** rps	**C** rps
200	Cooling/Dehumidifying	45	45	25
250	Cooling/Dehumidifying	55	55	30

(ii) Low frequency operation control during heating.

[Control condition] When the conditions of compressor protection start III are established and one of following conditions.
a) is satisfied, the low frequncy operation control is performed during heating.
a) At 30 minutes or more after turning the power source breaker on.

[Control contents] a) If the compressor stats with 6 hours after the power source breaker turns on, and outdoor air temperature is lower than -2°C, unit starts by cooling mode for 3 minutes to prevent the liquid refrigerant from returning to compressor. (model 200 only)

b) Starts the compressor with its target frequency at **A** rps. However, when the indoor unit return air temperature (ThI-A) is 25°C or higher, it start at **C** rps.

c) At 30 seconds after the start of compressor, the compressor's target frequency is changed to **B** rps and the compressor's operation frequency is fixed for 6-10 minutes.

Model	Operation mode	**A** rps	**B** rps	**C** rps
200	Heating	45	30	25
250	Heating	55	30	30

(4) Outdoor unit fan control

(a) Outdoor unit fan tap and fan motor speed

Unit: min^{-1}

Model	Mode	Fan motor tap						
200		① speed	② speed	③ speed	④ speed	⑤ speed	⑥ speed	⑦ speed
	Cooling/Dehumidifying	200	390	560	830	870	910	950
	Heating	200	390	560	830	870	910	950
250		① speed	② speed	③ speed	④ speed	⑤ speed	⑥ speed	⑦ speed
	Cooling/Dehumidifying	200	370	600	750	850	900	950
	Heating	200	370	600	820	850	910	950

(b) Fan tap control during Cooling/Defumidifying operation

Fan taps are selected depending on the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, R2) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Note (1) It is detected by Tho-R1 or R2, whichever the higher.

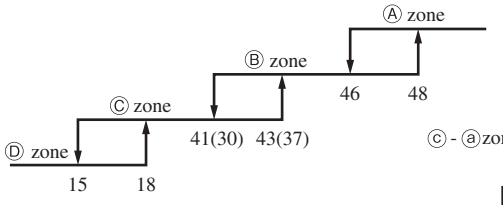
	Ⓐ zone	Ⓑ zone	Ⓒ zone	Ⓓ zone
ⓐ zone	Tap 5(6)	Tap 5(6)	Tap 6(5/6)	Tap 4
ⓑ zone	Tap 5	Tap 5	Tap 4	Tap 3
ⓒ zone	Tap 4	Tap 4	Tap 3	Tap 2
ⓓ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 2	Tap 1

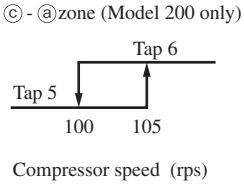
Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model 200.

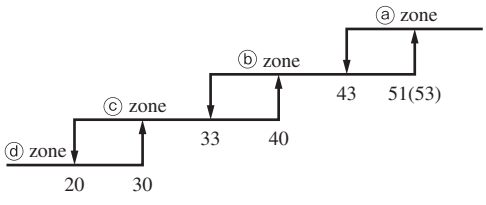
• Silent mode only

	Ⓐ zone	Ⓑ zone	Ⓒ zone	Ⓓ zone
ⓐ zone	Tap 5	Tap 5	Tap 4(5)	Tap 4
ⓑ zone	Tap 4	Tap 4	Tap 3	Tap 3
ⓒ zone	Tap 4	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 2
ⓓ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 2	Tap 1

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for the model 200.







Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model 200.

(c) Fan tap control during heating operation

Fan taps are selected depending on the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, R2) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Note (1) It is detected by Tho-R1 or R2, whichever the lower.

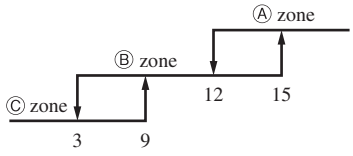
	Ⓐ zone	Ⓑ zone	Ⓒ zone
ⓐ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 4
ⓑ zone	Tap 3	Tap 4	Tap 5
ⓒ zone	Tap 4	Tap 7(5)	Tap 7(6)

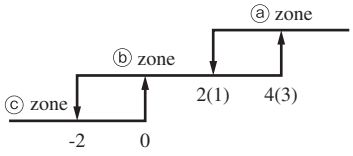
Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model 200.

• Silent mode only

	Ⓐ zone	Ⓑ zone	Ⓒ zone
ⓐ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 3
ⓑ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 4
ⓒ zone	Tap 3(4)	Tap 5(4)	Tap 6(5)

Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model 200.



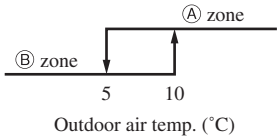


Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model 200.

(d) Outdoor unit fan control at cooling low outdoor air

(i) When all the following conditions are established after the start of compressor, the following control is implemented. If the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is in the zone Ⓑ in the cooling/dehumidifying mode, it has elapsed 20 seconds from the start of outdoor unit fan and the outdoor unit fan is at the tap 1 speed, the outdoor unit fan speed is controlled according to the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, R2).

Note (1) It is detected with Tho-R1 or R2, whichever the higher.



(ii) The outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature is detected always and, when the number of revolutions of the outdoor fan speed has been increased or decreased, there is no change of fan speed for 20 seconds.

(iii) Rage of the outdoor unit fan speed under this control is as follows.

1) Lower limit: 130min^{-1}
2) Upper limit: 500min^{-1}

(iv) As any of the following conditions is established, this control terminates.

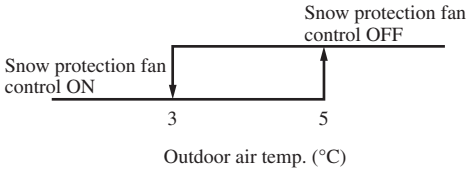
1) When the outdoor air temperature is in the zone Ⓐ and the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature at 30°C or higher is established for 40 seconds or more continuously.
2) When the outdoor fan speed is 500min^{-1} and the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature at 30°C or higher is established for 40 seconds or more continuously.
3) When the outdoor unit heat changer temperature at 45°C (model 250:50°C) or higher is established for 40 seconds or more.

(e) Caution at the outdoor unit fan start control

When the outdoor unit fan is running at 400min^{-1} before operating the compressor, it may operate with the compressor only, without starting up the outdoor fan. This is normal.

(f) Snow protection fan control

If the dip switch (SW3-2) on the outdoor unit control PCB is turned ON, the outdoor unit fan is operated for 30 seconds at 4 tap speed once in every 10 minutes depending on the outdoor air temperature (detected with Tho-A) in the stop mode or anomalous stop mode.



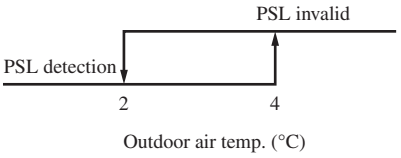
(5) Defrosting

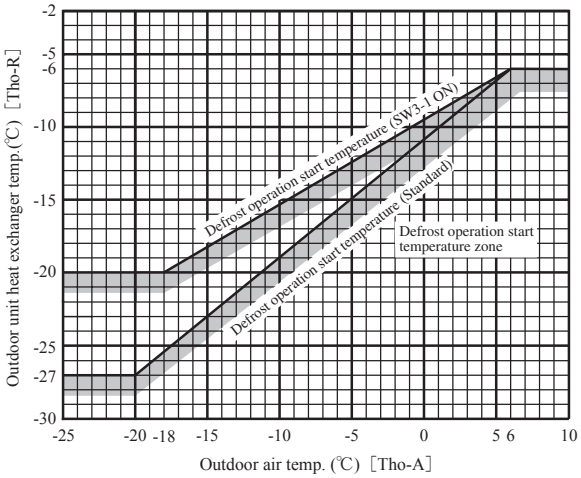
(a) Defrosting start conditions

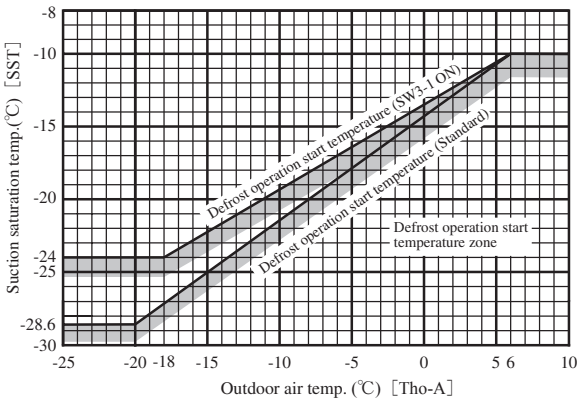
If all of the following defrosting conditions A or conditions B are met, the defrosting operation starts.

(i) Defrosting conditions A

1) Cumulative compressor operation time after the end of defrosting has elapsed 37 minutes, and the cumulative compressor operation time after the start of heating operation (remote control ON) has elapsed 30 minutes.
2) After 5 minutes from the compressor ON
3) After 5 minutes from the start of outdoor unit fan
4) After satisfying all above conditions, if temperatures of the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature thermistor (Tho-R1, R2) and the outdoor air temperature thermistor (Tho-A) become lower than the defrosting start temperature as shown by the right figure for 15 seconds continuously, or the suction gas saturation temperature (SST) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A), which are obtained from the value detected by the low pressure sensor (PSL) stay for 3 minutes within the range below the defrosting operation start temperature as shown by the right figure. However, it excludes for 10 minutes after the start of compressor and the outdoor air temperature is as shown by the lower figure.







(ii) Defrosting conditions B

1) When previous defrosting end condition is the time out of defrosting operation and it is in the heating operation after the cumulative compressor operation time after the end of defrosting has become 30 minutes.
2) After 5 minutes from the start of compressor.
3) After 5 minutes from the start of outdoor unit fan.

(b) Defrosting end conditions

When any of the following conditions is satisfied, the defrosting end operation starts.

(i) When it has elapsed 8 minutes and 20 seconds after the start of defrosting. (After 10 minutes and 20 seconds for 250 model)

(ii) When the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperatures (Tho-R1, R2), whichever the lower, becomes 16 (250:12)°C or higher for 10 seconds continuously.

(c) Switching of defrosting control with SW3-1

(i) If SW3-1 on the outdoor unit control PCB is turned to ON, it becomes easier to enter the defrosting operation. Use this when installing a unit at snowing regions.

(ii) Control contents

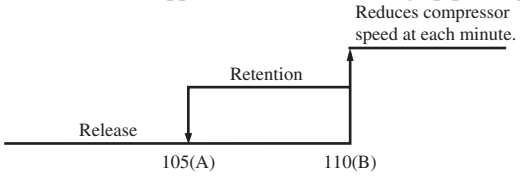
1) It allows entering the defrosting operation under the defrosting condition A when the cumulative heating operation time becomes 30 minutes. It is 37 minutes at SW3-1 OFF (Factory default).
2) It allows entering the defrosting operation under the defrosting condition B when the cumulative heating operation time becomes 25 minutes. It is 30 minutes at SW3-1 OFF (Factory default).
3) It allows the defrosting operation with the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) and suction pressure saturation temperature (SST) being higher than normal.

(6) Protective control/anomalous stop control by compressor's number of revolutions

(a) Compressor discharge pipe temperature protection

(i) Protective control

As the discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to suppress the rise of discharge pipe temperature.

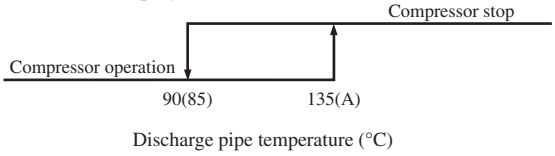


Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model 200.

Super heat	A	B
25°C or more	95	100
20°C or less	100	105

(ii) Anomalous stop control

1) If the discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.
2) When it is detected 2 times within 60 minutes or after continuous 60 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E36 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.



Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model 200.

Super heat	A
25°C or more	110
20°C or less	115

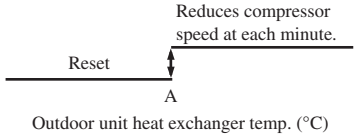
(iii) Reset of anomalous stop mode

As it drops to the reset value of 90 (85)°C or lower for 45 minutes continuously, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(b) Cooling high pressure protection

(i) Protective control

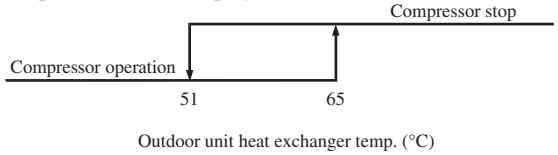
1) Outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds the setting value A.
2) When the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is 40°C or higher and the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds certain value (depends on compressor frequency).
3) Control value A is updated to an optimum value automatically according to the operating conditions.



Control value A
54-60°C

(ii) Anomalous stop control

1) As the outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.
2) If it is detected 5 times within 60 minutes or 65°C or higher continues for 60 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E35 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.



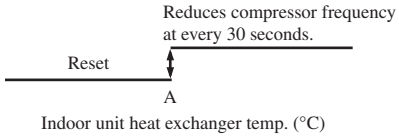
(iii) Reset of anomalous stop mode

As it reaches the reset value of 51°C or lower, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(c) Heating high pressure protection

(i) Protective control

1) As the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to suppress the rise of high pressure.
2) Control value A is updated to an optimum value automatically according to the operating conditions.



Model	Existing piping adaptation switch: SW5-1	
	OFF (Shipping)	ON
	Control value A (°C)	
200	48-54	46-52
250	52-58	

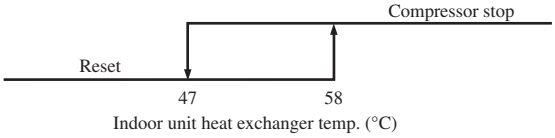
Note (1) Adaptation to existing piping is at ON.

(ii) Anomalous stop control

Operation control function by the indoor unit control - See the heating overload protection, page 18.

(iii) Adaptation to existing piping, stop control

If the existing piping adaptation switch, SW5-1, is turned ON, the compressor stops to protect existing piping when the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) exceeds the setting value.



(d) Anomaly detection control by the high pressure switch (63H1)

(i) If the pressure rises and operates the high pressure switch (opens at 4.15MPa/closes at 3.15MPa), the compressor stops.

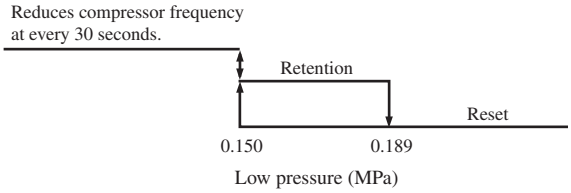
(ii) Under any of the following conditions, E40 is displayed and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

1) When it occurs 5 times within 60 minutes that pressure rises and the compressor is stopped by 63H1.
2) When 63H1 has been in the open state for 60 minutes continuously, including the stop of compressor.

(e) Low pressure control

(i) Protective control

If the value detected by the low pressure sensor (PSL) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to restrain the drop of pressure.



(ii) Anomalous stop control

1) When a value detected by the low pressure sensor (PSL) satisfies any of the following conditions, the compressor stops for its protection.
   a) When the low pressure drops to 0.079MPa or under for 15 seconds continuously.
   b) At 10 minutes after the start of compressor, the suction overheat becomes 30°C and the low pressure becomes 0.15MPa or under for 60 seconds continuously.
2) E49 is displayed under any of the following conditions and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
   a) When the low pressure drops 5 times within 60 minutes and the compressor stops under any of the above conditions.
   b) When a value detected with the low pressure sensor becomes 0.079MPa or under for 5 minutes, including the stop of compressor.
3) However, when the control condition 1). a) is established during the compressor protection start III, E49 is displayed at initial stop and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

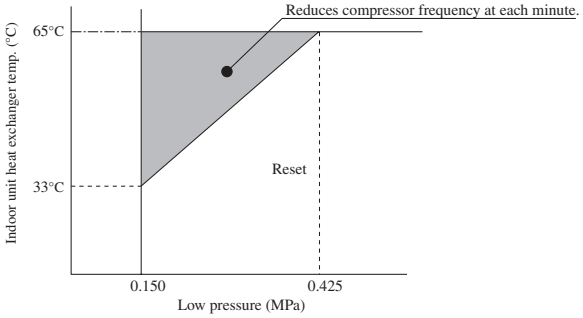
(f) Compressor pressure ratio protection control

(i) During heating operation, if the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) and low pressure sensor (PSL) exceed the setting values at 10 minutes after the start of compressor, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to protect the compressor.

(ii) This control is not performed during the outdoor fan ON and for 10 minutes from the start of outdoor unit fan.

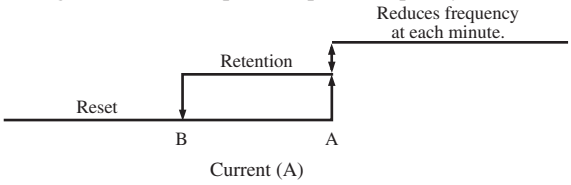
(iii) This control is not performed during defrosting operation and at 10 minutes after the reset of defrosting operation.

(iv) When there are 3 indoor unit heat exchanger temperatures (ThI-R), the highest temperature is detected.



(g) Over-current protection current safe controls I, II

Detecting the outdoor unit inverter input (primary) current and the output (secondary) current, if the current values exceed setting values, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to protect the inverter.

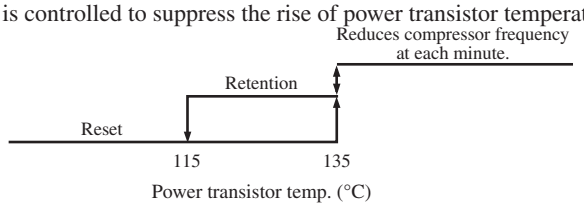


Model		Cooling		Heating	
		Control value A	Reset value B	Control value A	Reset value B
Primary current side	200	16.0	15.0	16.0	15.0
	250	18.0	17.0	18.0	17.0
Secandary current side	200	15.5	14.5	15.5	14.5
	250	17.0	16.0	17.0	16.0

(h) Power transistor temperature protection (model 250 only)

(i) Protective control

If the power transistor temperature (detected with TIP) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to suppress the rise of power transistor temperature.



(ii) Anomalous stop control

1) If the power transistor temperature increases further, the protective switch in the power transistor trips and stops the compressor to protect the power transistor.
2) It enters the anomalous stop mode depending on one of the following conditions.
   a) When the protective switch in the power transistor trips and stops the compressor 5 times within 60 minutes (Displays E41.)
   b) When the protective switch in the power transistor trips and the state continues for 15 minutes, including the stop of compressor (Displays E51.)

(iii) Anomalous inverter PCB

1) If the power transistor detects anomaly 5 times within 60 minutes with compressor stop, E41 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
2) If the power transistor detects any anomaly for 15 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E51 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

(i) Anomalous power transistor current

(i) Prevents over-current on the inverter. If the current value in the power transistor exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.

(ii) If the current value in the power transistor exceeds the specified value and the compressor stops 4 times within 30 minutes, E42 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

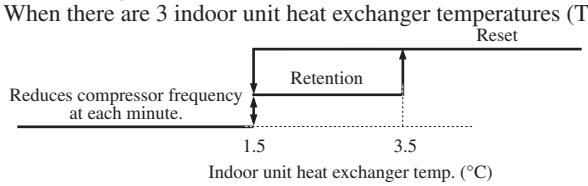
(j) Anomalous inverter communication

If the power transistor detects anomalies 4 times within 15 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E45 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

(k) Anti-frost control by the compressor frequency control

(i) If the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R) exceeds the setting value at 4 minutes after the start of compressor, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to initiate the anti-frost control of indoor unit heat exchanger.

(ii) When there are 3 indoor unit heat exchanger temperatures (ThI-R), the lowest temperature is detected.



(iii) Regarding the anti-frost control by the operation stop, refer to the operation control function by the indoor unit controller and the cooling, dehumidifying frost prevention of page 18.

(l) Dewing prevention control

[Control condition] During cooling and dehumidifying operation, if all the following conditions are established, the compressor speed (frequency) is reduced to prevent dewing and water splash.

1) Cooling electronic expansion valve aperture (EEVC) is 500 pulses.
2) Suction overheat is 10°C or higher.
3) Compressor speed (frequency) is **A** rps or higher.

[Control contents] 1) When the suction overheat is 10°C or higher, the compressor speed (frequency) is reduced at each 1 minute.

2) Compressor speed (frequency) does not rise till the cooling expansion valve becomes 460 pulses.

3) This control takes **A** rps as its lower limit so that compressor speed is not controlled when it is less than **A** rps.

Model	**A** rps
200	60
250	60

(m) Refrigerant quantity shortage protection

Under the compressor protection start III control during cooling and dehumidifying operations, the following control is performed by detecting the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) and the indoor unit return air temperature (ThI-A).

[Control condition] When the state that the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) does not become lower than the indoor unit return air temperature (ThI-A) by 4°C or more continues for 1 minute.

[Control contents] It judges that the flowing of refrigerant in to the indoor unit is insufficient so that the compressor is stopped and E57 is displayed on the remote control.

(n) Broken wire detection on temperature thermistor and low pressure sensor

(i) Outdoor unit heat exchanger thermistor, outdoor air thermistor and low pressure sensor

If the following is detected for 5 second continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, it restarts but, if the same is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop.

Note (1) During defrosting and for 3 minutes after the end of defrosting, it is not detected.

- Outdoor unit heat exchanger thermistor: -50°C or lower
- Outdoor air temperature thermistor: -45°C or lower
- Low pressure sensor: 0V or under or 4.0V or over

(ii) Discharge pipe temperature thermistor, suction pipe temperature thermistor, compressor under dome temperature thermistor

If the following is detected for 5 second continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, it restarts but, if the same is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop.

Note (1) During defrosting and for 3 minutes after the end of defrosting, it is not detected.

- Discharge pipe temperature thermistor: -10°C or lower
- Suction pipe temperature thermistor: -50°C or lower
- Compressor under dome temperature thermistor : -50°C or lower

(o) Fan motor error

(i) If the fan speed of 100min^{-1} or under is detected for 30 second continuously under the outdoor unit fan control (with the operation command of fan tap at ① speed or higher), the compressor stops.

(ii) When the fan motor speed drops to 100min^{-1} or under 5 times within 60 minutes and the compressor stops, it enters the anomalous stop mode with E48 displayed on the remote control.

(p) Anomalous stop by the compressor start stop

(i) When it fails to shift to the compressor DC motor's rotor position defection operation at 5 seconds after establishing the compressor start condition, the compressor stops temporarily and restarts 3 minutes later.

(ii) If it fails to shift to the position detection operation again 20 times, it judges the anomalous compressor start and stops the compressor by the anomalous stop (E59).

(7) Silent mode

(a) As "Silent mode start" signal is received from the remote control, it operates by dropping the outdoor unit fan tap and the compressor speed (frequency).

(b) For details, refer to items (1) and (4) above.

(8) Test run

(a) It is possible to operate from the outdoor unit using the dip switch on the outdoor unit control PCB.

SW3-3	ON	SW3-4	OFF	Cooling test run
			ON	Heating test run
	OFF	Normal and end of test run		

Make sure to turn SW3-3 to OFF after the end of operation.

(b) Test run control

(i) Operation is performed at the maximum compressor speed (frequency), which is determined for each model.

(ii) Each protective control and error detection control are effective.

(iii) If SW3-4 is switched during test run, the compressor is stoped once by the stop control and the cooling/heating operation is switched.

(iv) Setting and display of remote control during test run

Item / Mode	Contents of remote control setting/display
Cooling test run	Setting temperature of cooling is 5°C.
Heating test run	Setting temperature of heating (preparation) is 30°C.

(9) Pump-down control

Turning ON the pump-down switch SW1 for 2 seconds during the operation stop or anomalous stop (excluding the thermostat OFF), the pump-down operation is performed. (This is invalid when the indoor unit is operating. This is effective even when the indoor unit is stopped by the anomalous stop or the power source is turned OFF.)

(a) Control contents

(i) Close the service valve at the liquid side. (It is left open at the gas side.)

(ii) Compressor is started with the target speed (frequency) at 200:45, 250:55 rps in the cooling mode.

(iii) Red and green lamps (LED) keeps flashing on the outdoor unit control PCB.

(iv) Each of protection and error detection controls, excluding the low pressure control, anti-frost control and dewing prevention control, is effective.

(v) Outdoor unit fan is controlled as usual.

(vi) Electronic expansion valve is fully opened.

(b) Control ending conditions

Stop control is initiated depending on any of the following conditions.

(i) Low pressure of 0.087MPa or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously.
  1) Red LED: Light, Green LED: keeps flashing, Remote control: Displays stop.
  2) It is possible to restart when the low pressure is 0.087MPa or higher.
  3) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is kept fully open.

(ii) Stop by the error detection control
  1) Red LED: keeps flashing, Green LED: keeps flashing
  2) Restart is prohibited. To return to normal operation, reset the power source.
  3) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is left fully open.

(iii) When the cumulative operation time of compressor under the pump-down control becomes 5 minutes.
  1) Red LED: stays OFF, Green LED: keeps flashing, Remote control: Stop
  2) It is possible to pump-down again.
  3) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is left fully open.

Note (1) After the stop of compressor, close the service valve at the gas side.

Caution: Since pressing the pump-down switch cancels communications with the indoor unit, the indoor unit and the remote control display "Transmission error – E5". This is normal.

(10) Base heater ON/OFF output control (option)

(i) Base heater ON conditions

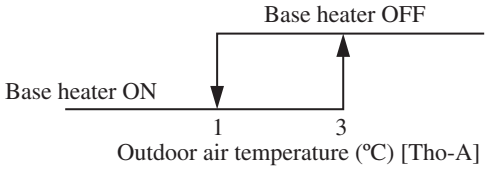
When all of following conditions are met, the base heater is turned ON.

· Outdoor air temperature (detected with Tho-A) is 1ºC or lower.
· In the heating mode
· When the compressor is turned ON

(ii) Base heater OFF conditions

When either one of following conditions is met, the base heater is turned OFF.

· Outdoor air temperature (detected with Tho-A) is 3ºC or higher.
· When the compressor stop has been detected for 30 minutes continuously
· In the cooling or dehumidifying mode



2. MAINTENANCE DATA

2.1 Diagnosing of microcomputer circuit

(1) Selfdiagnosis function

(a) Check Indicator Table

Whether a failure exists or not on the indoor unit and outdoor unit can be know by the contents of remote control error code, indoor/outdoor unit green LED (power pilot lamp and microcomputer normality pilot lamp) or red LED (check pilot lamp).

(i) Indoor unit

Remote control		Indoor control PCB		Outdoor control PCB		Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED (1)	Red LED	Green LED (1)				
No-indication	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	—	• **Normal operation**	—	—
		Stays OFF	Stays OFF	2-time flash	Stays OFF	Indoor unit power source	• Power OFF, broken wire/blown fuse, broken transformer wire	Repair	69
		* 3-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control wires	• Poor connection, breakage of remote control wire * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF.	Repair	70
						Remote control	• Defective remote control PCB	Replacement of remote control	
WAIT or INSPECT I/U		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	• Poor connection, breakage of indoor-outdoor units connection wire	Repair	71-74
						Remote control	• Improper setting of master and slave by remote control		
E 1		Stays OFF	* Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control wires (Noise)	• **Poor connection of remote control signal wire (White)** * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF • **Intrusion of noise in remote control wire**	Repair	76
						Remote control indoor control PCB	*• Defective remote control or indoor control PCB (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of remote control or PCB	
E 5		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	• **Poor connection of wire between indoor-outdoor units during operation (disconnection, loose connection)** • **Anomalous communication between indoor-outdoor units by noise, etc.**	Repair	77
		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	(Noise)	• **CPU-runaway on outdoor control PCB**	Power reset or Repair	
						Outdoor control PCB	*• Occurrence of defective outdoor control PCB on the way of power source (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Outdoor control PCB	• **Defective outdoor control PCB on the way of power source**	Replacement	
						Fuse	• **Blown fuse**		
E 6		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor	• **Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor** (defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature thermistor connector	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	78
						Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
E 7		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor return air temperature thermistor	• **Defective indoor return air temperature thermistor** (defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature thermistor connector	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	79
						Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
E 8	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Installation or operating condition	• **Heating over-load** (Anomalously high indoor heat exchanger temperature)	Repair	80
						Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor	• **Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor (short-circuit)**	Replacement of temperature thermistor	
						Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB** (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E 9		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Drain trouble	• **Defective drain pump (DM), broken drain pump wire**, disconnected connector	Replacement, repair of DM	81
						Float switch	• **Anomalous float switch operation** (malfunction)	Repair	
						Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB** (Defective float switch input circuit) *• **Defective indoor control PCB** (Defective DM drive output circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
						Option	• **Defective optional parts** (At optional anomalous input setting)	Repair	
E 10		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Number of connected indoor units	• **When multi-unit control by remote control is performed, the number of units is over**	Repair	82
E 11		Keeps flshing	Keeps flshing	Stays OFF	Keeps flshing	Address setting error	• Address setting error of indoor units	Repair	83
E 14		3-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor unit No. setting	•No master is assigned to slaves.	Repair	84
						Rcmote control wires	•Anomalous remote control wire connection, broken wire between master and slave units		
E 16		1(2)-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Fan motor	• **Defective DC fan motor**	Replacement, repair	85
						Indoor power PCB	• **Defective indoor power PCB**	Replacement	
E 18		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Address setting error	• Address setting error of master and slave indoor units	Repair	86
E 19		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor control PCB	• **Improper operation mode setting**	Repair	87
E20		1(2)-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Fan motor	• Indoor DC fan motor rotation speed anomaly	Replacement, repair	88
						Indoor power PCB	• Defective indoor power PCB	Replacement	
E21		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Panel switch detection	• Defective panel switch operation (FDT only)	Repair	89
E28		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control temperature thermistor	• Broken wire of remote control temperature thermistor	Repair	90

Note (1) **Normal indicator lamp (Indoor, outdoor units: Green) extinguishes (or lights continuously) only when CPU is anomalous. It keeps flashing in any trouble other than anomalous CPU.**

(2) * mark in the description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

(ii) Outdoor unit

Remote control		Indoor control PCB		Outdoor control PCB		Outdoor inventer PCB	Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED (1)	Red LED	Green LED (1)	Yellow LED				
E35		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Installation or operating condition	• Higher outdoor heat exchanger temperature	Repair	91
							Outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor	Replacement of temperature thermistor	
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E36		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Higher discharge temperature	Repair	92
							Discharge pipe temperature thermistor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature thermistor	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E37		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	93
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E38		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor air temperature thermistor	• Defective outdoor air temperature thermistor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	94
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E39		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Discharge pipe temperature thermistor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature thermistor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	95
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E40		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Rising high pressure (Operation of 63H1) • Service valve closing operation	Repair	96
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective 63H input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E41		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	2-time or 8-time flash	Inverter PCB or radiator fin	• Power transistor overheat	Replacement of PCB or Repair	97
E42		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	1-time or 9-time flash	Outdoor control PCB compressor	• Current cut (Anomalous compressor over-current)	Replacement of PCB	98・99
							Installation or operating condition	• Service valve closing operation	Repair	
E45		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Outdoor control PCB	• Anomalous outdoor control PCB communication	Service valve opening check	100
							Inverter PCB	• Anomalous inverter PCB communication	Replacement of PCB	
E48		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor fan motor	• Anomalous outdoor fan motor	Replacement, repair	101
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective motor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E49		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Low pressure error • Service valve closing operation	Repair	102・103
							Low pressure sensor	• Anomalous low pressure, broken wire of low pressure sensor or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of sensor	
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E51		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	2-time or 8-time flash	Inverter PCB	• Anomalous inverter PCB	Replacement of PCB	104
E53		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Suction pipe temperature thermistor	• Defective suction pipe temperature thermistor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	105
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor PCB (Defective thermistor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E54		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Low pressure sensor	• Defective low pressure sensor	Replacement of sensor	106
							Outdoor control PCB	• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E55		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Compressor under dome temperature thermistor	• Defective compressor under dome temperature thermistor (Model FDC 250 only)	Replacement of temperature thermistor	107
							Outdoor control PCB	• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective thermistor input circuit)? (Model FDC 250 only)	Replacement of control PCB	
E57		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Operation status	• Shortage in refrigerant quantity	Repair	108
							Installation status	• Service valve closing operation	Service valve opening check	
E59		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	5-time flash	Keeps flashing	4-time flash	Compressor inverter PCB	• Anomalous compressor startup	Replacement	109・110

Note (1) * mark in the description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

(iii) Option control in-use

		Indoor unit control PCB		Outdoor unit control PCB		Description of trouble	Repair method
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED	Red LED	Green LED		
E75	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	• Communication error (Defective communication circuit on the main unit of SC-SL2N-E or SC-SL4-E) ete.	Replacement

(iv) Display sequence of error codes or inspection indicator lamps

■ Occurrence of one kind of error

Displays are shown respectively according to errors.

■ Occurrence of plural kinds of error

Section	Category of display
Error code on remote control Red LED on indoor control PCB Red LED on outdoor control PCB	• Displays the error of higher priority (When plural errors are persisting) E1>E5>·····>E10>E35>·····E59 • Displays the present errors. (When a new error has occurred after the former error was reset.)

■ Error detecting timing

Section	Error description	Error code	Error detecting timing
Indoor	Drain trouble (Float switch activated)	E9	Whenever float switch is activated after 30 second had past since power ON.
	Communication error at initial operation	"WAIT"	No communication between indoor and outdoor units is established at initial operation.
	Remote control communication circuit error	E1	Communication between indoor unit and remote control is interrupted for mote than 2 minutes continuously after initial communication was established.
	Communication error during operation	E5	Communication between indoor and outdoor units is interrupted for mote than 2 minutes continuously after initial communication was established.
	Excessive number of connected indoor units by controlling with one remote control	E10	Whenever excessively connected indoor units is detected after power ON.
	Return air temperature thermistor anomaly	E7	-50 °C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly	E6	-50 °C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or 70°C or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously.
Outdoor	Outdoor air temperature thermistor anomaly	E38	-45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or -45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON.
	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly	E37	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or -50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON.
	Discharge pipe temperature thermistor anomaly	E39	-10°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Suction pipe temperature thermistor anomaly	E53	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Low pressure sensor anomaly	E54	0V or lower or 4.0V or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous pressure.
	Compressor under dome temperature thermistor anomaly	E55	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.

■ **Error log and reset**

Error indicator	Memorized error log	Reset
Remote control display	• Higher priority error is memorized.	• Stop the unit by pressing the ON/OFF switch of remote control. • If the unit has recovered from anomaly, it can be operated.
Red LED on indoor control PCB	• Not memorized.	
Red LED on outdoor control PCB	• Memorizes a mode of higher priority.	

■ **Resetting the error log**

• Resetting the memorized error log in the remote control

Holding down "CHECK" button, press "TIMER" button to reset the error log memorized in the remote control.

• Resetting the memorized error log in the indoor unit

The remote control transmits error log erase command to the indoor unit when "VENTI" button is pressed while holding down "CHECK" button.

Receiving the command, the indoor unit erase the log and answer the status of no error.

(2) Troubleshooting procedure

When any trouble has occurred, inspect as follows. Details of respective inspection method will be described on later pages.

Trouble → Confirmation of power source (Indoor/ outdoor unit) → Confirmation of remote control and LEDs on the PCB of indoor unit and outdoor unit (Indoor/ outdoor unit, remote control) → Check of the anomalous operation data on the remote control → Inspection of the unit/ control → Replacement/ repair of faulty part, test run, adjustment

(3) Troubleshooting at the indoor unit

With the troubleshooting, find out any defective part by checking the voltage (AC, DC), resistance, etc. at respective connectors at around the indoor PCB, according to the inspection display or operation status of unit (the compressor does not run, fan does not run, the 4-way valve does not switch, etc.), and replace or repair in the unit of following part.

(a) Replacement part related to indoor PCB's

Control PCB, power PCB, temperature thermistor (return air, indoor heat exchanger), remote control switch, limit switch, transformer and fuse

Note (1) With regard to parts of high voltage circuits and refrigeration cycle, judge it according to ordinary inspection methods.

(b) Instruction of how to replace indoor control PCB

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the replacement in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, WARNING and CAUTION.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
  ⚠ WARNING — Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠ CAUTION — Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
- After completing the replacement, do commissioning to confirm there are no anomaly.

⚠ WARNING

- Replacement should be performed by the specialist.
  If you replace the PCB by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as electric shock or fire.
- Replace the PCB correctly according to these instructions.
  Improper replacement may cause electric shock or fire.
- Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.
  Replacement during the applying the current would cause the electric shock, unit failure or improper running.
  It would cause the damage of connected equipment such as fan motor,etc.
- Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- Check the connection of wiring to PCB correctly before turning on the power, after replacement.
  Defectiveness of replacement may cause electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- In connecting connector onto the PCB, connect not to deform the PCB. It may cause breakage or malfunction.
- Insert connecter securely, and hook stopper. It may cause fire or improper running.
- Bundle the cables together so as not to be pinched or be tensioned. It may cause malfunction or electric shock for disconnection or deformation.

PSB012D990B C

(i) Model FDT, FDU, FDUM series

1) Control PCB

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

a) Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

Select the same setting with the removed PCB.

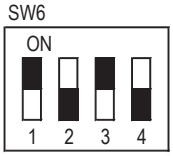
item	switch	Content of control			
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control			
Master /Slave setting		Master	Slave1	Slave2	Slave3
	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
Test run	SW7-1	OFF	Normal		
		ON	Operation check/drain motor test run		

b) Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).

Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
50V	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
60V	ON	ON	ON	OFF
71V	ON	OFF	OFF	ON

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
100V	ON	ON	OFF	ON
125V	OFF	OFF	ON	ON



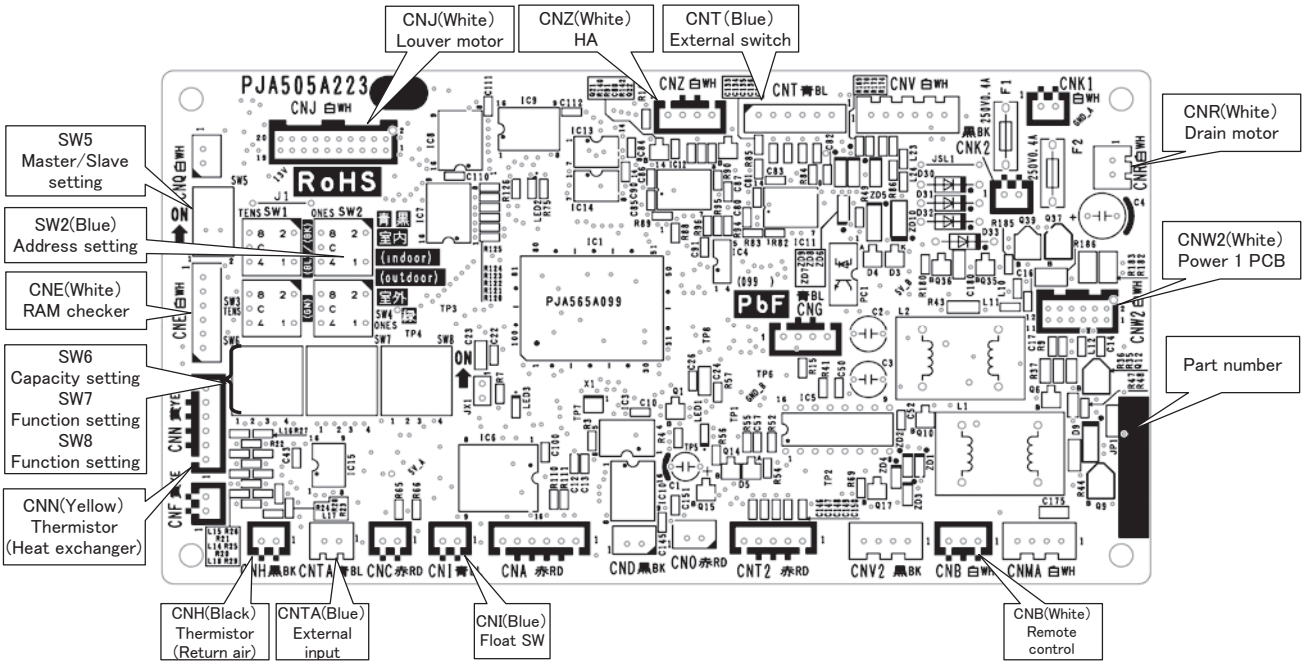
Example setting for 50V

c) Replace the PCB

1. Replace PCB after detaching all connectors connected with the PCB.
2. Fix the PCB so as not to pitch the wiring.
3. Connect connectors to the PCB. Match the wiring connector to the connector color on the PCB and connect it.

d) Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



2) Power PCB

This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

a) Replace the PCB

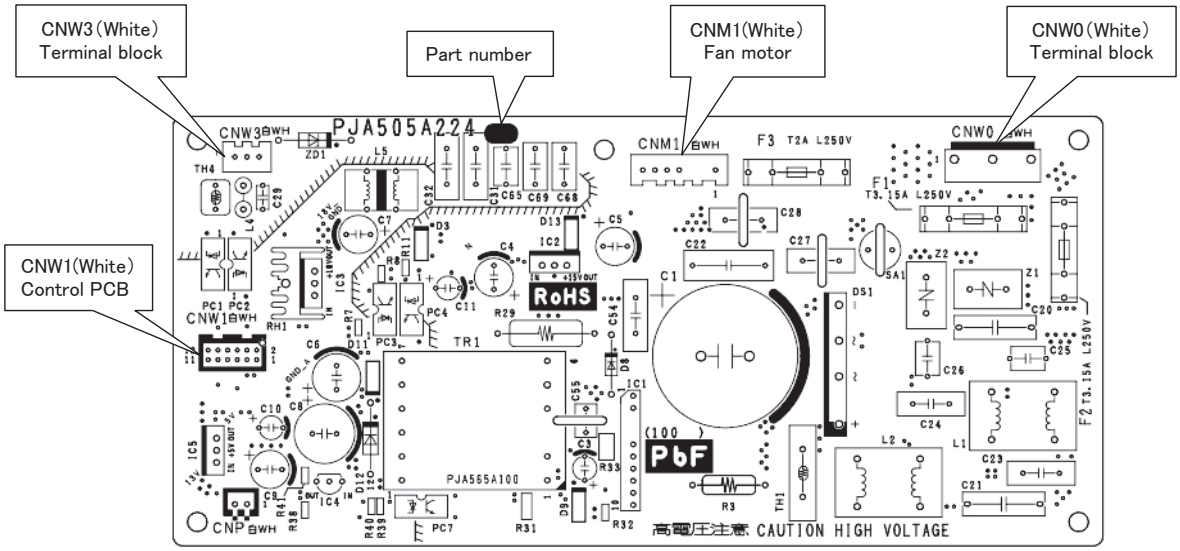
1. Unscrew terminal of the wiring(yellow/green) connected to Terminal block (CNWO) from the box.
2. Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
3. Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
4. Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
5. Screw back the terminal of wiring, that was removed in 1.

b) Power PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.

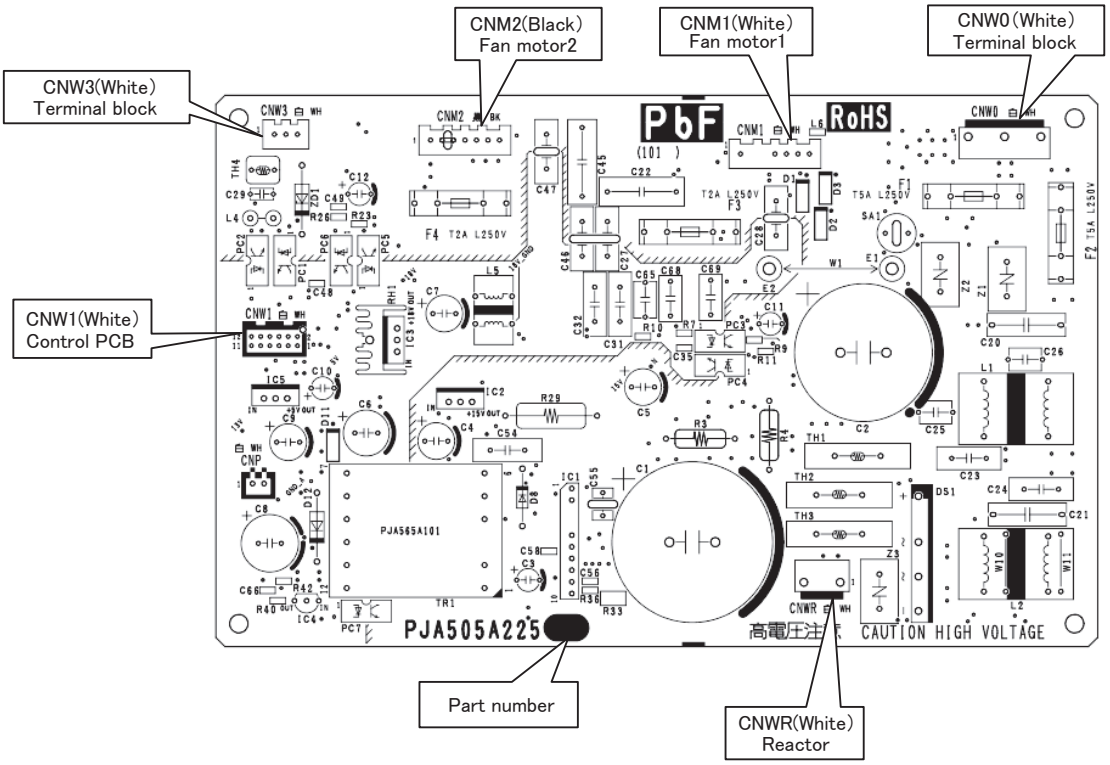
• Models FDT50-125VF

PSB012D992



• Models FDUM71-125VF

PSB012D993



• Models FDU200, 250VG

PSC012D035

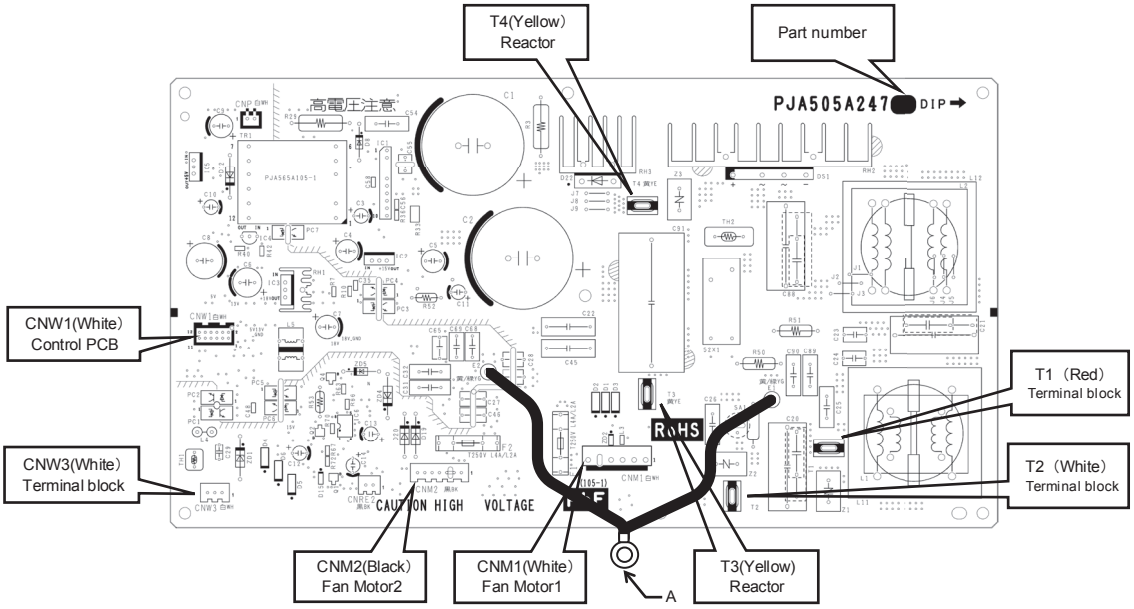
This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

① Replace the PCB

1. Unscrew terminal(Arrow A) of the "E2" wiring(yellow/green) that is connected to PCB.
2. Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
3. Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
4. Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
5. Screw back the terminal(Arrow A) of the "E2" wiring, that was removed in 1.

② Power PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



3) Motor control PCB (FDU series only)

PSC012D036

a) Replace the PCB

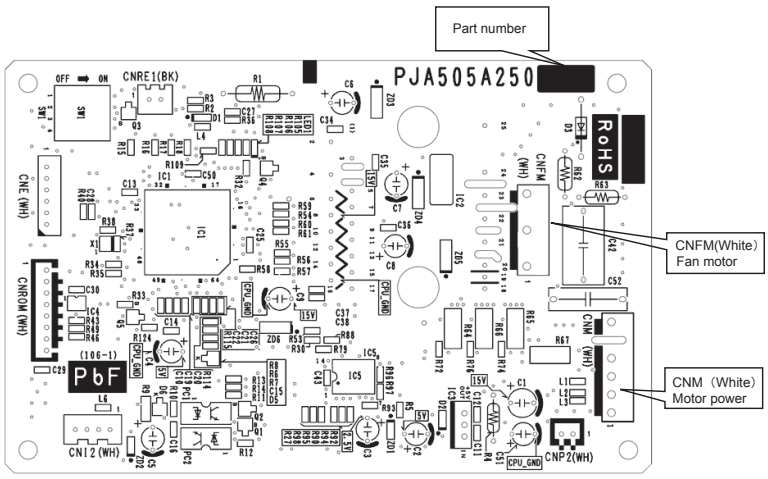
i) Take off the connection of connector and remove the screw of power transistor then remove the PCB. Wipe off the silicon grease neatly on the control's radiation heat fins.

ii) Before installing the power transistor on the new PCB, **apply uniformly a bundled of silicon grease** first on the surface of power transistor. Make sure it is applied to prevent **damage on power transistor,** and install the PCB not to pinch the wirings.

iii) Tighten the screw of power transistor and reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Confirm the connection and don't use soldering in the connection. **Tighten properly the power transistor with a screw and make sure there is no slack. Power transistor can be damage** if not properly tighten. (Recommended power transistor tightening torque:0.59-0.78N·m)

b) Fan motor control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



PSB012D976C

(ii) Model FDTC series

1) Control PCB

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

a) Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

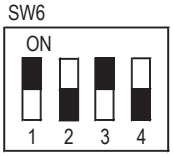
Select the same setting with the removed PCB.

item	switch	Content of control			
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control			
Master / Slave setting		Master	Slave 1	Slave 2	Slave 3
	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
Test run	SW7-1	OFF	Normal		
		ON	Operation check/drain motor test run		

b) Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).

Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
50VF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
60VF	ON	ON	ON	OFF



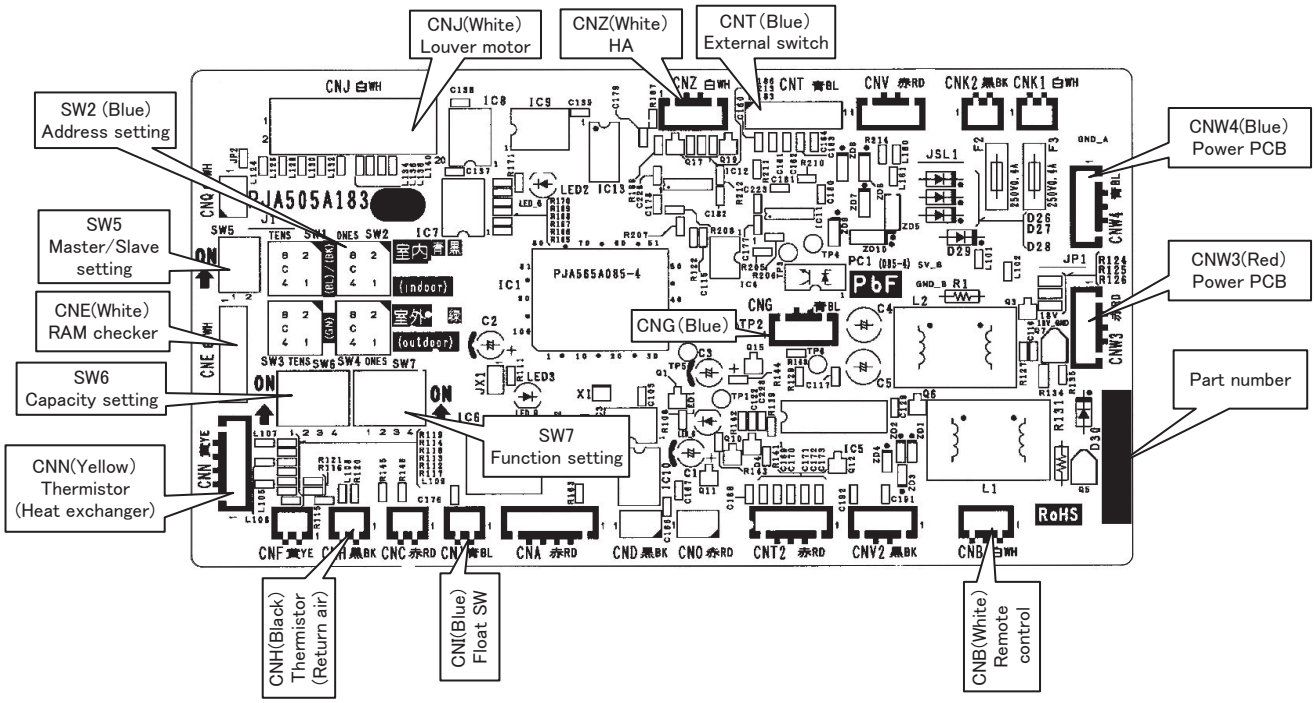
Example setting for 50VF

c) Replace the PCB

1. Fix the PCB so as not to pitch the cords.
2. Connect connectors to the PCB. Connect a cable connector with the PCB connector of the same color.
3. Do not pass CPU surrounding about wirings.

d) Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



2) Power PCB

PSB012D953A

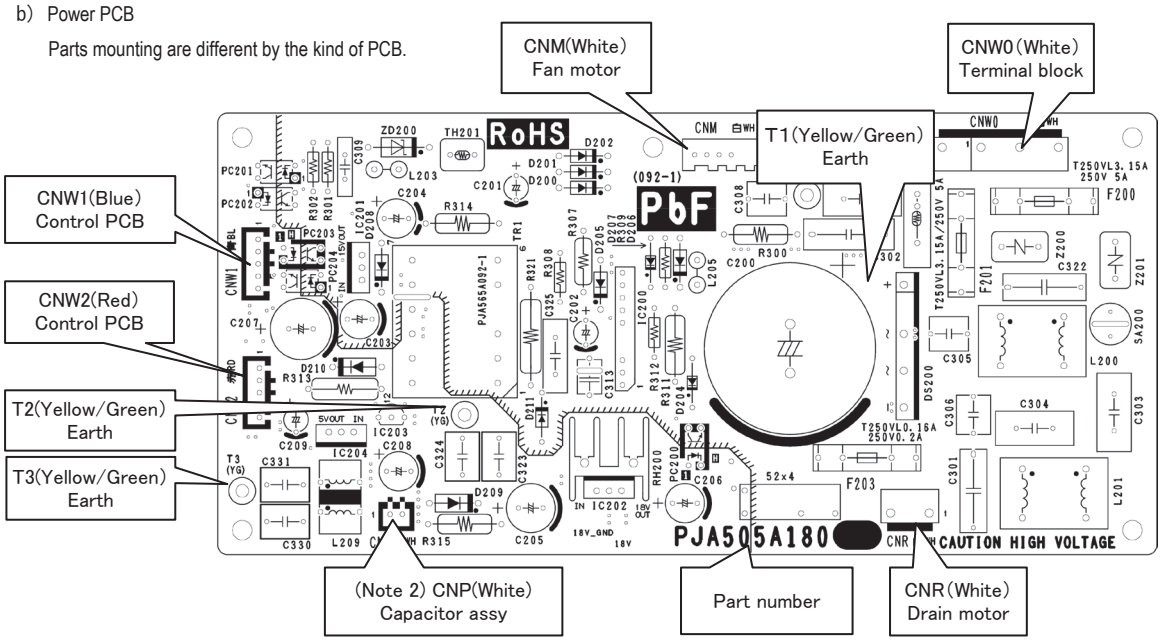
This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

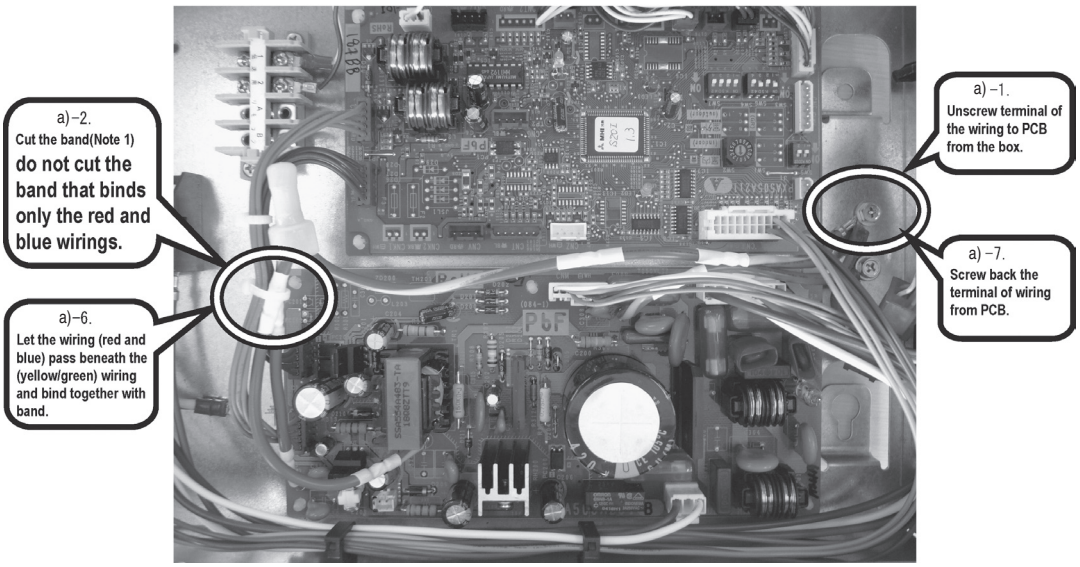
a) Replace the PCB (refer to right dwg.)

1. Unscrew terminal of the wiring(yellow/green) soldered to PCB from the box.
2. Cut the band that binds the wiring (red and blue) from connector CNW1 and CNW2, and the wiring (yellow/green) from PCB (T2/T3) . (Note 1)
   (However, do not cut the band that binds only the red and blue wirings.)
3. Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
4. Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
5. Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB. (Note 2)
6. Let the wiring (red and blue) pass beneath the (yellow/green) wiring and bind together with band.
7. Screw back the terminal of wiring (yellow/green) from PCB(T1, T2/T3), that was removed in 1.
   In that case, do not place the crimping part of the wiring under the PCB.
   (Note 1): It might not be applicable on some models.
   (Note 2): After replacing PCB, connection between capacitor assy and connector CNP is **no longer needed.**

b) Power PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.





(iii) Model FDEN series

PSB01ZD974C

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

a) Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

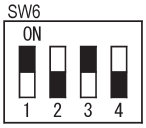
1. There is a unit having plural applicable PCB depending on a model.
2. Set the function setting corresponding the spare PCB and the applicable model.
3. Do "Setting according to the model *1" refer to "⑤ Function setting of wired remote control" after turning on the power source when using wired remote control

item	switch	Content of control			
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control			
Master /Slave setting		Master	Slave1	Slave2	Slave3
	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
Test run	SW7-1	OFF	Normal		
		ON	Operation check/drain motor test run		

b) Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).
Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
50V	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
60V	ON	ON	ON	OFF
71V	ON	OFF	OFF	ON

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
100V	ON	ON	OFF	ON
125V	OFF	OFF	ON	ON



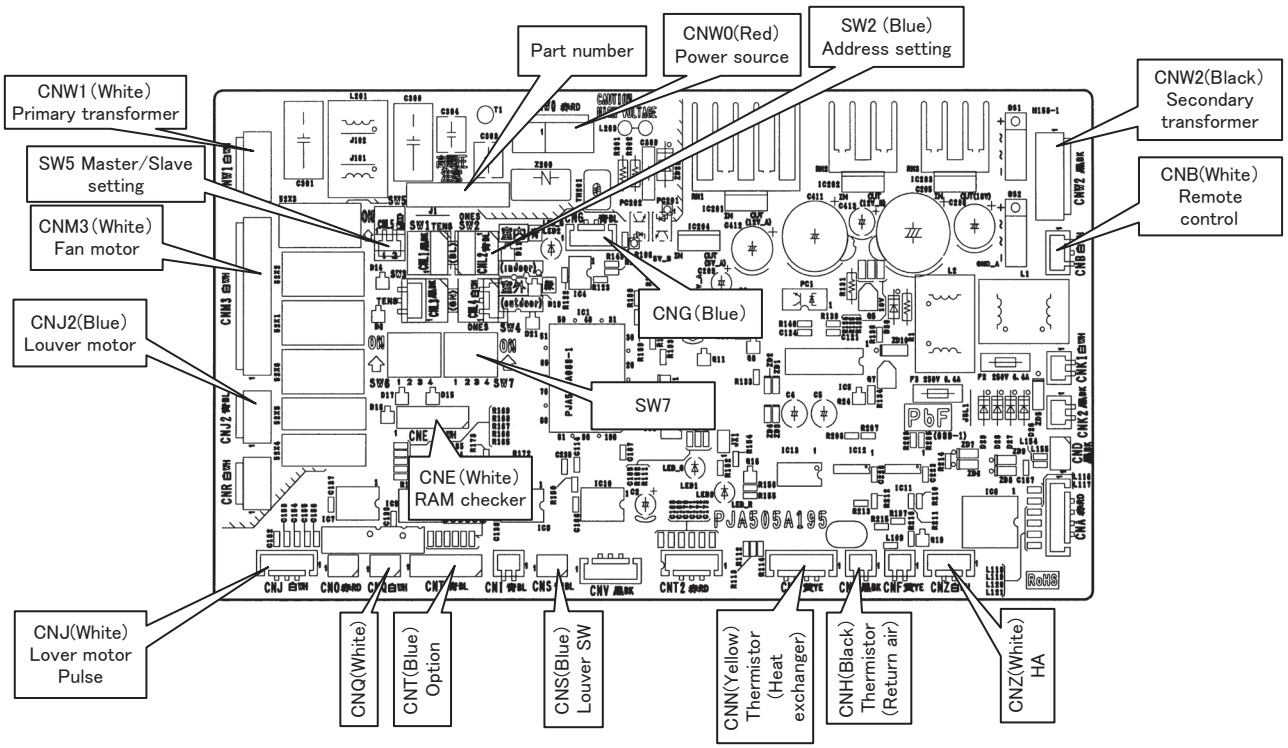
Example setting for 50V

c) Replace the PCB

1. Fix the PCB so as not to pitch the cords.
2. Connect connectors to the PCB. Connect a cable connector with the PCB connector of the same color.
3. Do not pass CPU surrounding about wirings.

d) Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



PSB012D976D

(iv) Model FDF series

1) Control PCB

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

a) Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

Select the same setting with the removed PCB.

item	switch	Content of control			
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control			
Master /Slave setting		Master	Slave1	Slave2	Slave3
	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
Test run	SW7-1	OFF	Normal		
		ON	Operation check/drain motor test run		

b) Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).

Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
100V	ON	ON	OFF	ON
125V	OFF	OFF	ON	ON

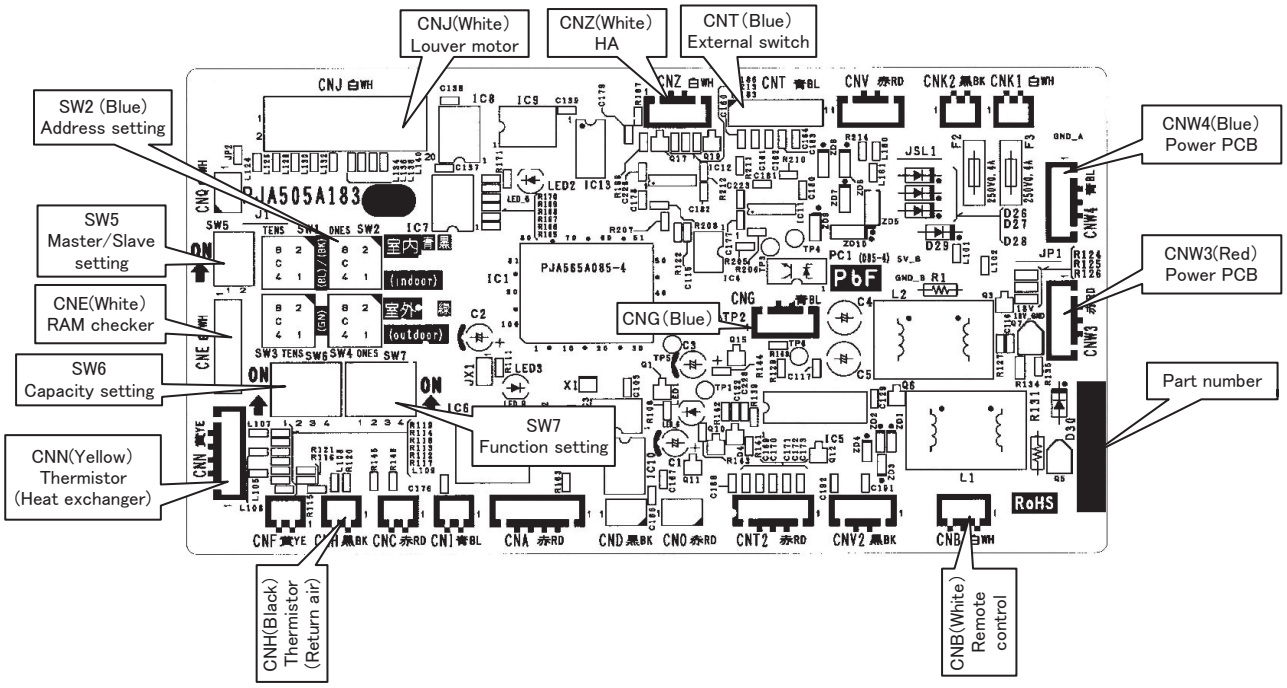
Example setting for 100V

c) Replace the PCB

1. Fix the PCB so as not to pitch the cords.
2. Connect connectors to the PCB. Connect a cable connector with the PCB connector of the same color.
3. Do not pass CPU surrounding about wirings.

d) Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



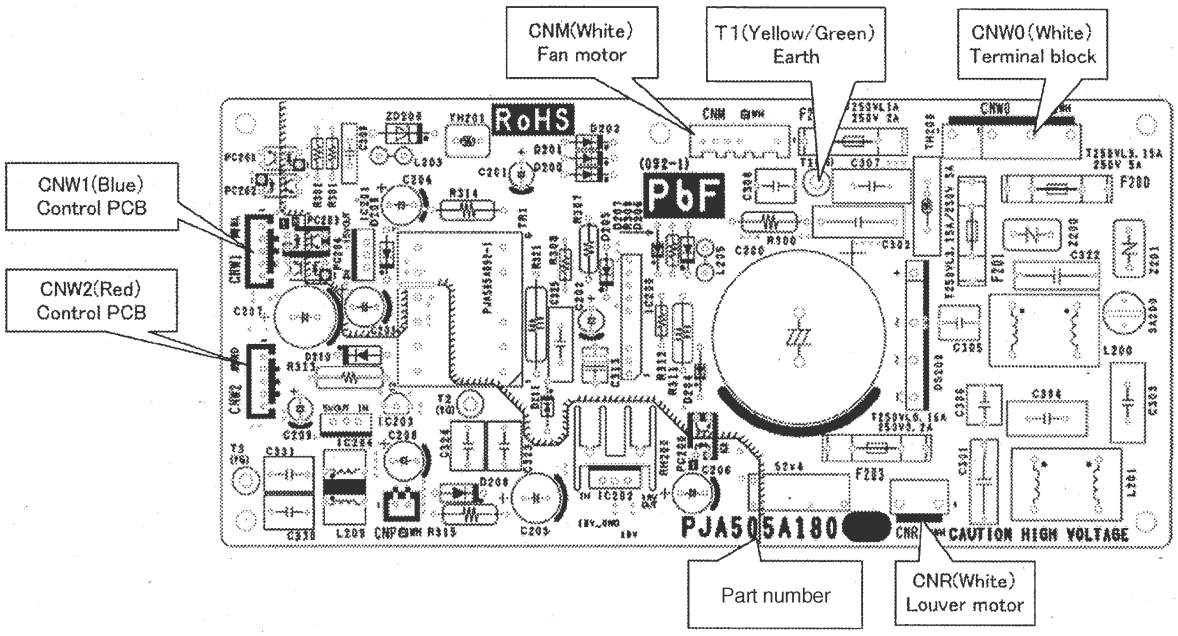
2) Power PCB

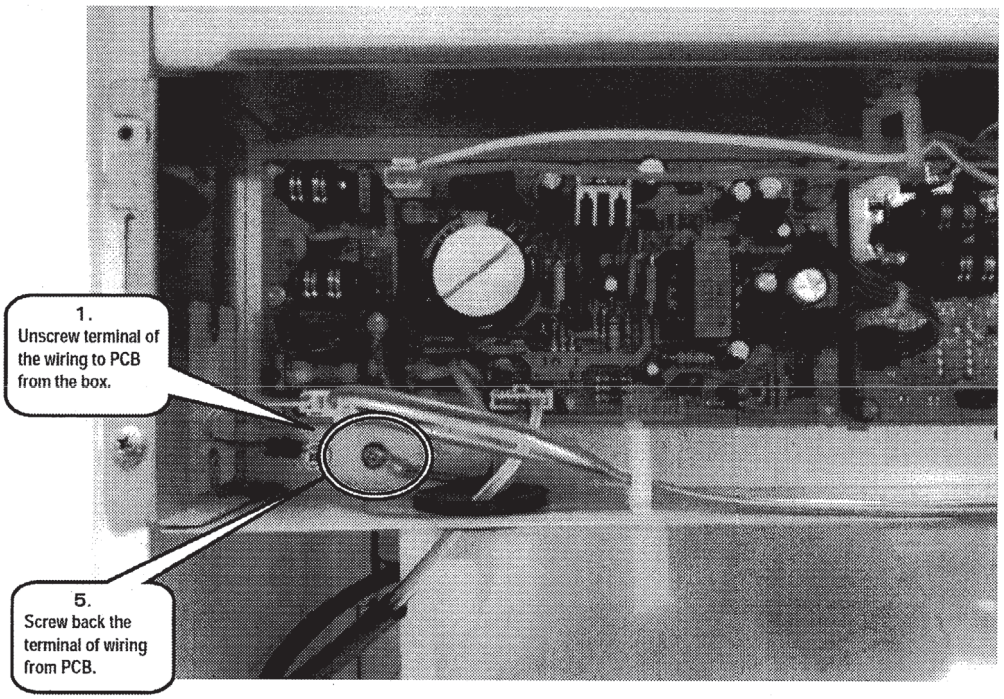
PSB012D953G

This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

Replace the PCB

1. Unscrew terminal of the wiring(yellow/green) soldered to PCB from the box.
2. Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
3. Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
4. Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
5. Screw back the terminal of wiring (yellow/green) from PCB(T1), that was removed in 1.
   In that case, do not place the crimping part of the wiring under the PCB.





●DIP switch setting list

Switches	Description		Default setting		Remarks
SW2	Address No. setting at plural indoor units control by 1 R/C		0		0-F
SW5-1	Master/Slave setting	Master*/Slave	OFF		See table 2
SW5-2			OFF		
SW6-1	Model selection		As per model		See table 1
SW6-2					
SW6-3					
SW6-4					
SW7-1	Test run, Drain motor	Normal*/Test run	OFF	Normal	
SW7-2	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW7-3	Powerful mode	Valid*/Invalid	ON	Valid	
SW7-4	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-1	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-2	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-3	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-4	Setting of the external static pressure	Normal*/Range expand	OFF	Normal	
JSL1	Superlink terminal spare	Normal*/switch to spare	With		

* Default setting

Table 1: Indoor unit model selection with SW6-1-SW6-4

	50V	60V	71V	100V	125V	200V	250V
SW6-1	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
SW6-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
SW6-3	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
SW6-4	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON

Table 2: Indoor unit Master/Slave setting with SW5-1,SW5-2

	SW5-1	SW5-2
Master	OFF	OFF
Slave1	OFF	ON
Slave2	ON	OFF
Slave3	ON	ON

(4) Troubleshooting at the outdoor unit

When troubleshooting the outdoor unit, firstly assess the overview of malfunction and try to presume the cause and the faulty part by checking the error cord dispalyed on the remote control and flashing pattern of indicator lamps (Red LED and Green LED), and then proceed further inspection and remedy it.

Self-diagnosis system by microcomputor on indoor and outdoor PCB can assist to find the cause of malfunction smoothly by making a diagnosis of not only the anomaly of microcomutor, but also the anomaly in power source system, installation space, overload resulting from improper charging amount of refrigerant and etc.

Unless the power is reset, the error log is saved in memory and the inspection indicator lamps on outdoor PCB keep flashing after automatical recovering from malfunction.

After automatical recovering from malfunction, if any another error mode which has a higher priority than the previous error saved in memory occurs, it is overwritten in memory and is displayed.

[Reset of power source]

Be sure to avoid electrical shock, when replacing or checking the outdoor control PCB, because some voltage is still retained in the electrolytic capacitor on the PCB even after shutting down the power source to the outdoor unit.

Be sure to start repairing work, after confirming that the Green LED on the PCB has been extiguished for more than 10 seconds after more than 3 minutes had been passed since power shut down, and reconfirming that voltage has been discharged sufficiently by measuring the voltage (DC) between both terminals of electrolytic capacitor (C58) (Measurment of voltage may be disturbed by the moisture-proof coating. In such case, remove the coating and measure it by taking care of avoiding electrical shock)

(a) Module of part to be replaced for outdoor unit control

Outdoor control PCB, Inverter PCB, Temperature thermistor (of outdoor heat exchanger, discharge pipe, outdoor air, IPM and suction pipe), Fuses (for power source and control PCB), Noise filter, Capacitor, Reactor and Transformer

(b) Replacement procedure of outdoor control PCB

Precautions for Safety

- Since the following precaution is the important contents for safety, be sure to observe them.
  WARNING and CAUTION are described as follows:

⚠ WARNING	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which will result in death or serious injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.
⚠ CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which may result in minor or moderate injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ WARNING

- Securely replace the PCB according to this procedure.
  If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.
- Be sure to check that the power source for the outdoor unit is turned OFF before replacing the PCB. The PCB replacement under current-carrying will cause an electric shock or fire.
- After finishing the PCB replacement, check that wiring is correctly connected with the PCB before power distribution. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- Band the wiring so as not to tense because it will cause an electric shock.

PCA012D050

Replace the control PCB according to the following procedure.

(i) Replace the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF**.

(ii) Measurement was done on both ends of connector (CNA1) during measurement, **the voltage(DC) might charged the electrolytic capacitor, be sure that the voltage is discharged sufficiently. (Refer to Fig.2)**

(iii) Disconnect the connectors from the control PCB.

(iv) Disconnect the white or blue wiring passing through CT1 on the PCB before replacing the PCB.

(v) Match the setting switches (SW3-5,7, JSW1) with the former PCB.

(vi) Tighten up a screw after passing white or blue wiring through CT1 of the changed.

(vii) Please connect the connectors with the same place. (**Confirm the connectors are not half inserted**.)

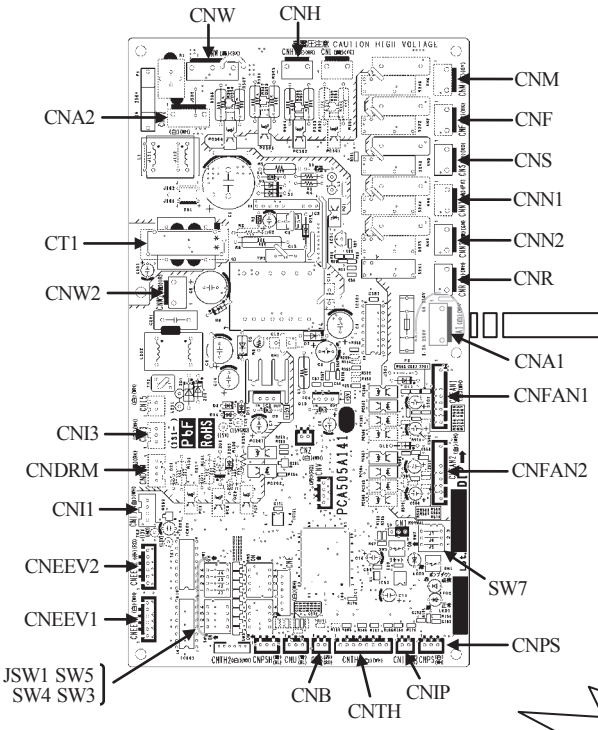


Fig.1 Parts Arrangement View

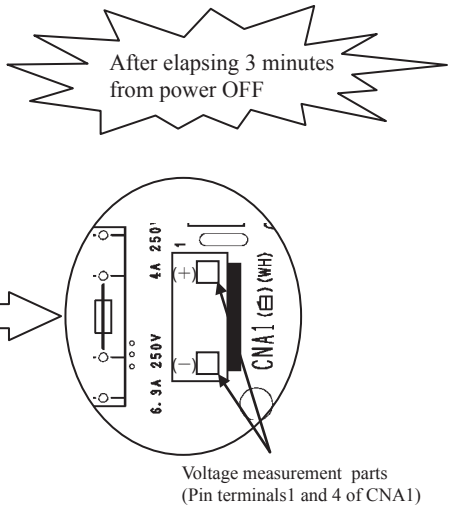
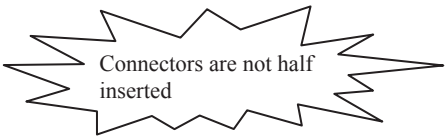


Fig.2 Enlarged figure of parts location



(c) Outdoor inverter PCB replacement procedure

Precautions for Safety

- Since the following precaution is the important contents for safety, be sure to observe them. WARNING and CAUTION are described as follows:

⚠ WARNING Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which will result in death or serious injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ CAUTION Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which may result in minor or moderate injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ WARNING

- Securely replace the PCB according to this procedure. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.
- Be sure to check that the power source for the outdoor unit is turned OFF before replacing the PCB. The PCB replacement under current-carrying will cause an electric shock or fire.
- After finishing the PCB replacement, check that wiring is correctly connected with the PCB before power distribution. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- Band the wiring so as not to tense because it will cause an electric shock.

Replace the inverter PCB according to the following procedure.

(i) Model FDC200VSA

PCA012D063

Replace the inverter PCB (Fig.1) according to the following procedure.

1) Replace the inverter PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF**.
   (Be sure to measure **voltage (DC) of two places ((A) power source for fan motor (DC), (B) power source for inverter)**, and check that **the voltage is discharged sufficiently**.(Refer to Fig.2))
2) Take off the wirings and connectors of inverter PCB, the screws of power transistor. Then remove the PCB from the control. Wipe off the silicon grease neatly on the controller's radiation fins.
3) Match the setting of switches (JSW10, 11) of new PCB with the former PCB.
4) Before installing the new PCB to the control, **apply the bundled silicon grease uniformly** on the surface of power transistor, and all use it up at that time. **The power transistor can be damaged**, if the silicon grease is not applied.
5) Tighten the screws of power transistor on inverter PCB and reconnect the wirings and connectors to inverter PCB. After connection, confirm **the screws are tightened and connectors are not half inserted**.
   However, tighten the power transistor with the screws according to recommended tightening torque after tightening the screws temporarily once.
   Power transistor can be damage if not tightened according to this procedure.
   (Temporary tightening torque:0.20～0.44N・m, Recommended tightening torque:0.98～1.47 N・m)

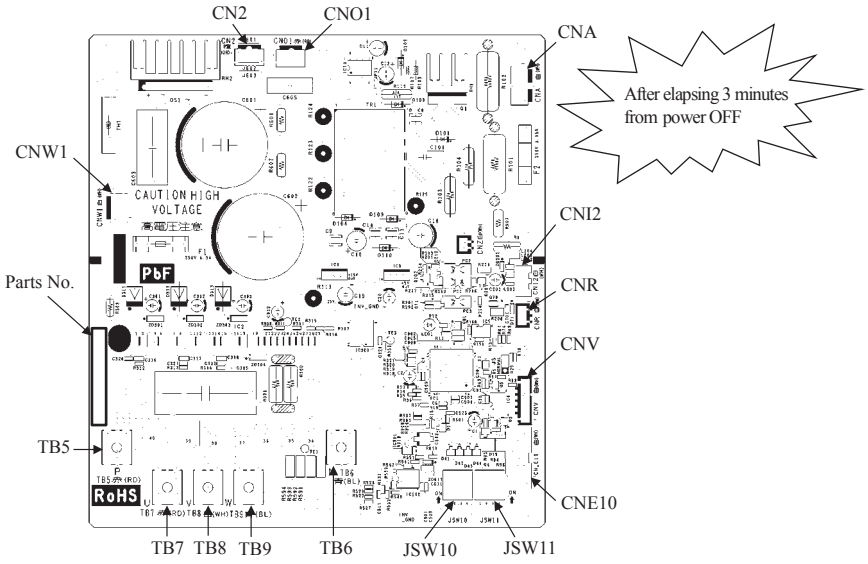


Fig.1 Parts arrangement view of inverter PCB

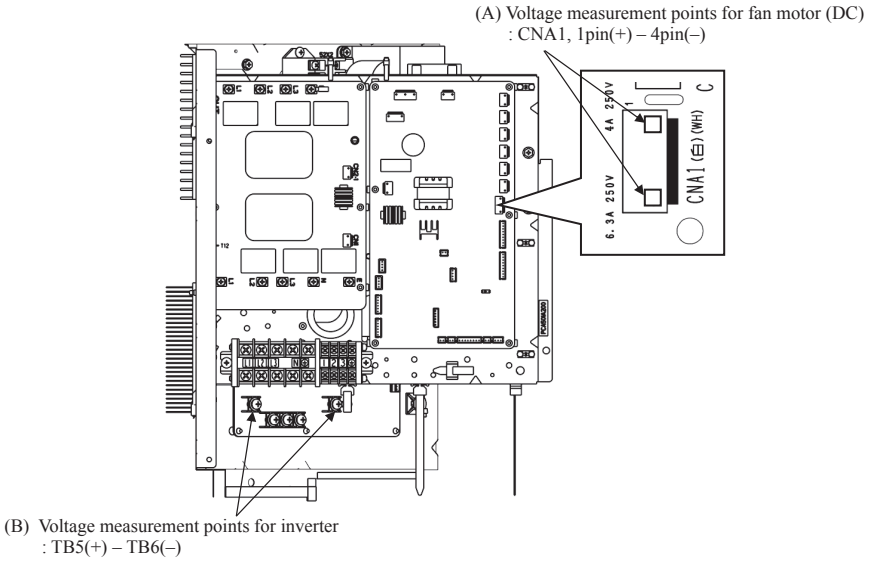


Fig.2 Voltage measurement points

(ii) Model FDC250VSA

PCB012D057A

Replace the inverter PCB (Fig.1) according to the following procedure.

1) Replace the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF**.
2) In the situation that harnesses are connected to control PCB, **be sure to measure voltage (DC) of two places ((A), (B))** and check that **the voltage is discharged sufficiently**. (Refer to Fig.2)
3) Disconnect connectors from the control PCB. (Refer to Fig.3)
4) Remove the harnesses from bands (2 places) and clips (3 places), and remove screws (4 places) of a control. (Refer to Fig.3)
5) Open main layer and **measure voltage (DC) of a place (C)** and check that **the voltage is discharged sufficiently**. (Refer to Fig.4)
6) Disconnect connectors from the inverter PCB (Refer to Fig.1), remove a snubber capacitor (Refer to Fig.4) and harnesses (”P”,”N”,”U”,”V” and ”W”), and exchange the inverter PCB then. In the situation of being opening main layer, do not press the control from above. It will cause the product deformation or injury.
7) Match the setting of switches (JSW10, 11) of new PCB with former PCB.
8) After replacing the inverter PCB, install the snubber capacitor to power transistor (Refer to Fig.5), and reconnect the connectors and the harnesses as before. (Confirm the **connectors are not half inserted**.)
Be careful not to pinch the wiring at the time of closing main layer. The wiring is damaged, and it will cause a short circuit or fire.

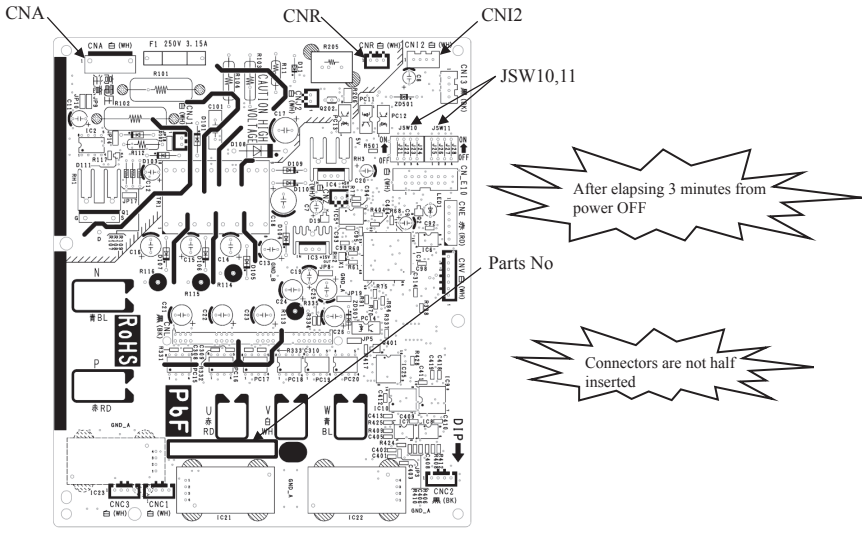


Fig.1 Parts arrangement view of inverter PCB

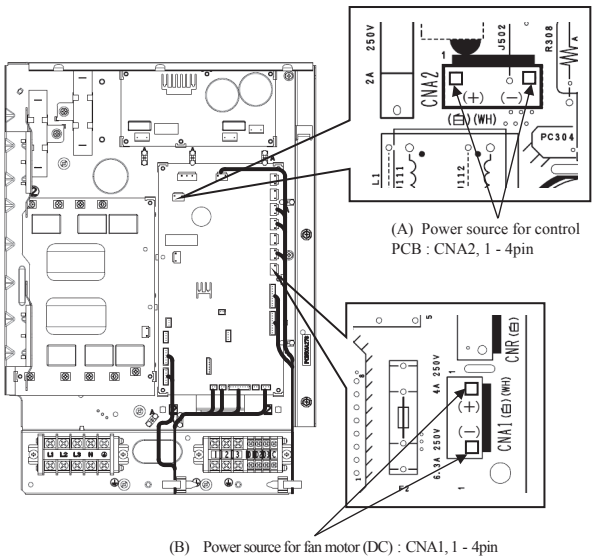


Fig.2 Voltage measurement points

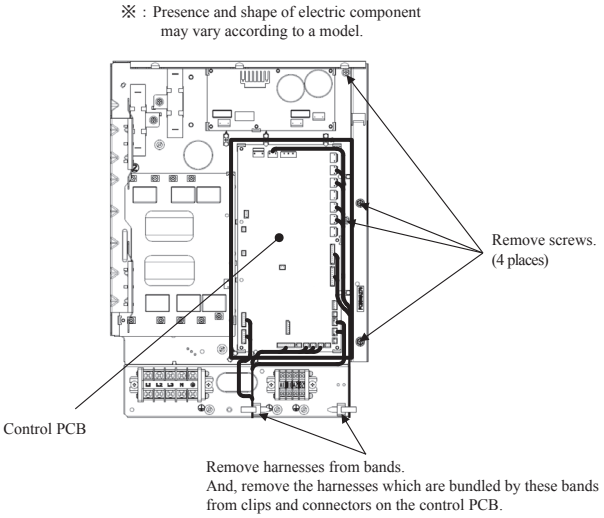


Fig.3 Target places which are removed harnesses and screws

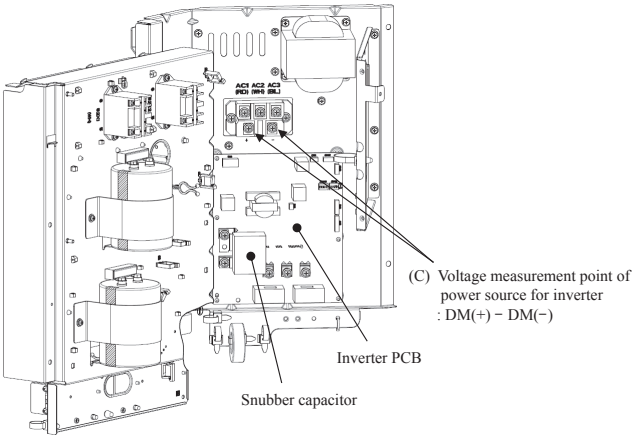
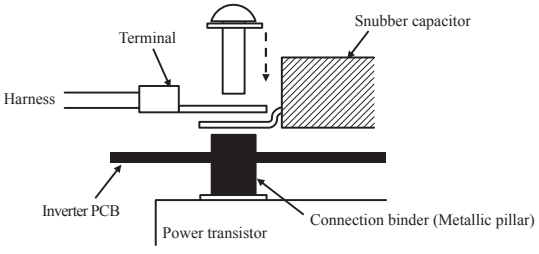


Fig.4 Installation place of inverter PCB



Procedure on tightening harness (Snubber capacitor) and power transistor with screw.
A metallic connection binder is set in each hole of the inverter PCB of "P", "N", "U", "V", and "W" beforehand.
Then tighten the harness (Snubber capacitor) and the power transistor with the screw together.
(Set the harness wires to be fixed to"U" and "W" with screws in respective holes after passing them through IC21 and 22.)
(Connect the snubber capacitor with "P" and "N".)

Fig.5 Installation method to power transistor

●DIP switch setting list (Outdoor unit)

(1) Control PCB

Switches	Description		Default setting		Remarks
SW1	Pump down operation	Normal*/Pump down	OFF	Normal	
JSW1-1	Model selection		As per model		See table 1
JSW1-2					
JSW1-3					
JSW1-4					
SW3-1	Defrost condition	Normal*/Cold region	OFF	Normal	
SW3-2	Snow protection control	Normal*/Snow protection	OFF	Normal	
SW3-3	Test run SW	Normal*/Test run	OFF	Normal	
SW3-4	Test run mode	Cooling*/Heating	OFF	Cooling	
SW4-1	Model selection	Domestic/Overseas*	ON	Overseas	See table 1
SW4-2	Model selection	3-phase/Single phase	As per model		See table 1
SW4-3	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW4-4	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-1	Utilization of existing piping control	Normal*/Existing piping control	OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-2	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-3	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-4	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW7-1	Silent mode setting	Capacity priority/Silent priority	ON	Silent priority	
SW7-2	Reserved		ON		Keep ON
SW7-3	Anti frost control	Invalid/Valid	ON	Valid	

* Default setting

Table 1: Outdoor unit model selection with JSW1-1-JSW1-4 and SW4-1-SW4-2

	200	250
JSW1-1	ON	OFF
JSW1-2	ON	OFF
JSW1-3	OFF	ON
JSW1-4	OFF	OFF
SW4-1	ON	ON
SW4-2	OFF	OFF

(2) Inverter PCB

Switches	200	250
JSW10-1	OFF	OFF
JSW10-2	OFF	ON
JSW10-3	OFF	OFF
JSW10-4	OFF ✻	OFF ✻
JSW11-1	OFF	OFF
JSW11-2	OFF	OFF

✻ When checking inverter PCB of FDC200, 250 models with inverter checker, turn JSW10-4 ON.
(Regarding the checking method of inverter PCB with inverter checker, refer to page 58 for details)

(5) Check of anomalous operation data with the remote control

(a) In case of RC-EX1A remote control

[Operating procedure]

(i) On the TOP screen, touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Next" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "Set" → "Error display" → "Error history".

(ii) When only one indoor unit is connected to the remote control, followings will be displayed.

1) When there is any anomaly: "Loading. Wait a while" is displayed, followed by the operation data at the occurrence of anomaly.Contents of display

- Error code
- Number and data item

2) When there is no anomaly: "No anomaly" is displayed, and this mode is terminated.

(iii) When two or more indoor units are connected to the remote control, followings will be displayed.

1) When there is any anomaly: If the unit having anomaly is selected on the "Select IU" screen, "Loading. Wait a while" is displayed, followed by the operation data at the occurrence of anomaly.

Contents of display

- Indoor unit No.
- Error code
- Number and data item

2) When there is no anomaly: "No anomaly" is displayed, ant this mode is terminated.

Note (1) When the number of connected units cannot be shown in a page, select "Next".

(iv) If you press [RUN/STOP] button, the display returns to the TOP screen.

◎ **If you touch "Back" button on the way of setting, the display returns to the last precious screen.**

Note (1) When two remote controls are used to control indoor units, the check of anomaly operation data can be made on the master remote control only. (It cannot be operated from the slave remote control.)

■ Anomaly operation data (Corresponding data may not be provided depending on models. Such items will not be displayed.)

Number		Data Item
01	※	(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP___℃	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR___℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR___℃	(Remote Control Thermistor Tempeature)
05	THI-R1___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Value)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN____H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
21	OUTDOOR___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
23	THO-R2___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
24	COMP___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP____MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM___℃	(Comp Bottom Temperature)
29	CT___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.__	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED___	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN____H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

●Details of Compressor protection status No. 33

No.	Contents of display	Reference page
"0"	Normal	
"1"	Discharge pipe temperature protection control	P.30, (6).(a).(i)
"2"	Discharge pipe temperature anomaly	P.30, (6).(a).(ii)
"3"	Current safe control of inverter primary current	P.32, (6).(g)
"4"	High pressure protection control	P.30, (6).(b).(i), P.31, (6).(c).(i)
"5"	High pressure anomaly	P.30, (6).(b).(ii)
"6"	Low pressure protection control	P.31, (6).(e).(i)
"7"	Low pressure anomaly	P.31, (6).(e).(ii)
"8"	Anti-frost prevention control	P.32, (6).(k)
"9"	Current cut	P.32, (6).(g)
"10"	Power transistor protection control	P.32, (6).(h)
"11"	Power transistor anomaly (Overheat)	P.32, (6).(i)
"12"	Compression ratio control	P.31, (6).(f)
"13"	Spare	
"14"	Dewing prevention control	P.33, (6).(1)
"15"	Current safe control of inverter secondary current	P.32, (6).(g)
"16"	Stop by compressor rotor lock	
"17"	Stop by compressor startup failure	P.33, (6).(p)

Note(1) Operation data display on the remote control.
・Data is dispalyed until canceling the protection control.
・In case of multiple protections controlled, only the younger No. is displayed.
Note(2) Common item.
① In heating mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "4" is displayed.
② In cooling and dehumidifying mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "8" is displayed.

(b) In case of RC-E5 remote control

Operation data can be checked with remote control unit operation.

(i) Press the CHECK button.
The display change " OPER DATA ▼"

(ii) Press the ○ (SET) button while " OPER DATA ▼" is displayed.

(iii) When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control,
" DATA LOADING " is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
Next, operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed. Skip to step ⑦.

(iv) When plural indoor units is connected, the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
[Example]:
" SELECT I/U " (blinking 1 seconds) → " I/U000 ♟ " blinking.

(v) Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.

(vi) Determine the indoor unit number with the ○ (SET) button.
(The indoor unit number changes from blinking indication to continuous indication)
" I/U000 " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
↓
" DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
Next, the operation data of the indoor unit is indicated.

(vii) Upon operation of the ▲ ▼ button, the current operation data is displayed in order from data number 01.
The items displayed are in the above table.
*Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.

Number		Data Item
01		(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP ___℃	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR ___℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR ___℃	(Remote Control Thermistor Tempeature)
05	THI-R1 ___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2 ___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3 ___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED ___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND ___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER ___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV ____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Value)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN ____H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
21	OUTDOOR ___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1 ___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
23	THO-R2 ___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
24	COMP ___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP ___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP ____MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td ___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM ___℃	(Comp Bottom Temperature)
29	CT ___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH ___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH ___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH ___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No. __	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED ___	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN ___H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1 ____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2 ____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

(viii) To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen.

(ix) Pressing the ①ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.
Pressing the // (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

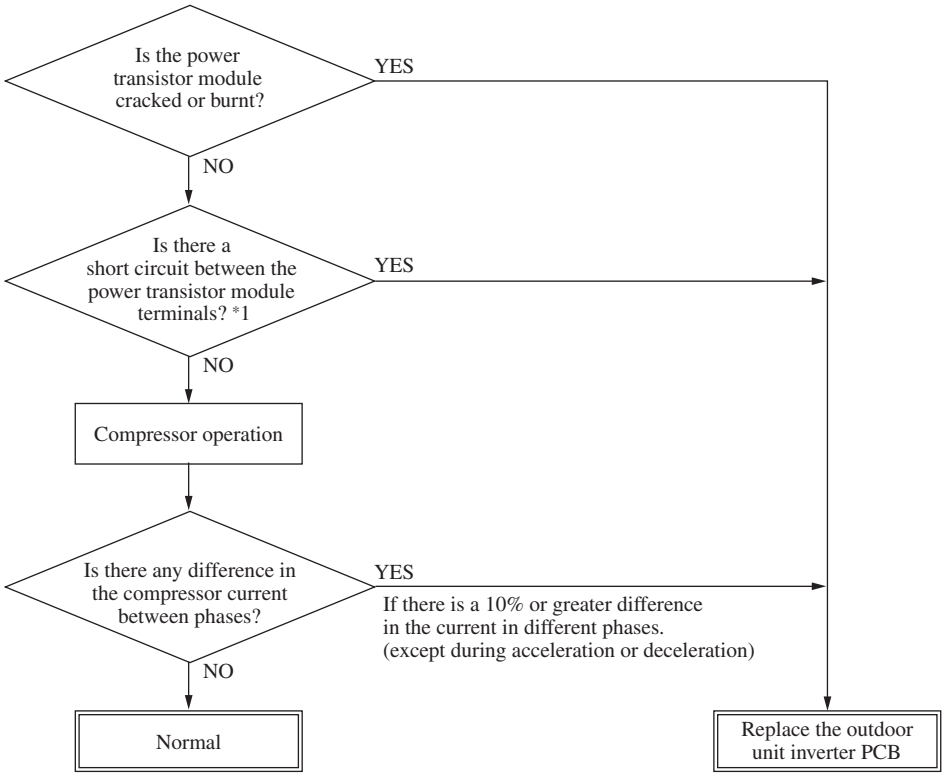
⊙If two (2) remote controls are connected to one (1) inside unit, only the master control is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

●Details of Compressor protection status No. 33

No.	Contents of display	Reference page
"0"	Normal	
"1"	Discharge pipe temperature protection control	P.30, ⑹.(a).(i)
"2"	Discharge pipe temperature anomaly	P.30, ⑹.(a).(ii)
"3"	Current safe control of inverter primary current	P.32, ⑹.(g)
"4"	High pressure protection control	P.30, ⑹.(b).(i), P.31, ⑹.(c).(i)
"5"	High pressure anomaly	P.30, ⑹.(b).(ii)
"6"	Low pressure protection control	P.31, ⑹.(e).(i)
"7"	Low pressure anomaly	P.31, ⑹.(e).(ii)
"8"	Anti-frost prevention control	P.32, ⑹.(k)
"9"	Current cut	P.32, ⑹.(g)
"10"	Power transistor protection control	P.32, ⑹.(h)
"11"	Power transistor anomaly (Overheat)	P.32, ⑹.(i)
"12"	Compression ratio control	P.31, ⑹.(f)
"13"	Spare	
"14"	Dewing prevention control	P.33, ⑹.(l)
"15"	Current safe control of inverter secondary current	P.32, ⑹.(g)
"16"	Stop by compressor rotor lock	
"17"	Stop by compressor startup failure	P.33, ⑹.(p)

Note(1) Operation data display on the remote control.
・Data is dispalyed until canceling the protection control.
・In case of multiple protections controlled, only the younger No. is displayed.
Note(2) Common item.
① In heating mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "4" is displayed.
② In cooling and dehumidifying mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "8" is displayed.

(6) Power transistor module (including the driver PCB) inspection procedure



Note(1) In all models, also replace the power transistor.

*1 Power transistor module terminal short circuit check procedure

Disconnect the compressor wiring, then conduct a short circuit check.

P-U, P-V, P-W

N-U, N-V, N-W

Check between the P-N terminals.

Bring the tester probes in contact with the following places on each te rminal.

P: Power transistor P terminal,

N: Power transistor N terminal,

U: End of red harness to compressor

V: End of white harness to compressor

W: End of black or blue harness to compressor

Check for a power transistor short circuit.

- When you do not have a diagnostic checker for judging if the inverter is defective, measure between the terminals of the power transistor parts, judge whether the power transistor is defective or not.
- Disconnect the compressor, then measure with the control incorporated.

Tester		Normal values (Ω)	
Terminal (+)	Terminal (-)	Model 200	Model 250
P	N	Scores of M	Scores of M
N	P	Approx. 4.5M	Approx. 8.9M
P	U	Scores of M	Scores of M
P	V		
P	W		
N	U	Approx. 130k	Approx. 4.6M
N	V		
N	W		
U	P	Approx. 4.5M	Approx. 4.8M
V	P		
W	P		
U	N	Approx. 6.7M	Scores of M
V	N	Approx. 6.0M	
W	N	Approx. 5.7M	

If the measured values range from 0 ~ several kW, there is a possibility that the elements are damaged, so replace the power transistor parts.

(7) Inverter checker for diagnosis of inverter output

● Checking method

(a) Setup procedure of checker.

(i) Power OFF (Turn off the breaker).

(ii) Remove the terminal cover of compressor and disconnect the wires (U, V, W) from compressor.

(iii) Connect the wires U (Red), V (White) and W (Black) of checker to the terminal of disconnected wires (U, V, W) from compressor respectively.

(b) Operation for judgment.

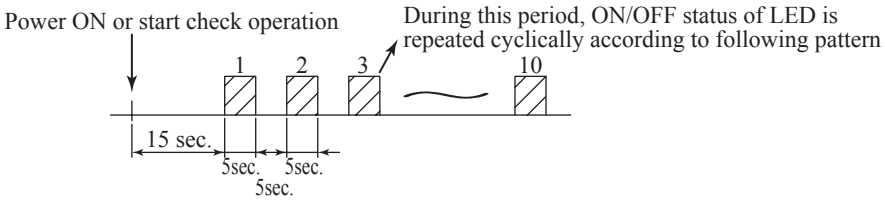
(i) Power ON after JSW10-4 on outdoor inverter PCB was turned ON.

(ii) After 15 seconds since power has turned ON, LED start ON/OFF for 5 seconds cyclically and it repeats 10 times.

(iii) Check ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.

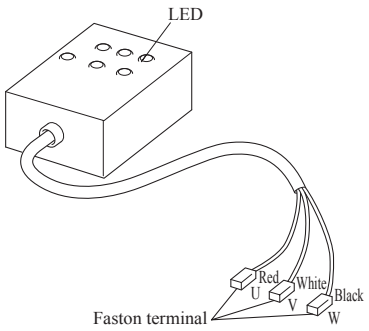
(iv) Judge the PCB by ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.

ON/OFF status of LED	If all of LED are ON/OFF according to following pattern	If all of LED stay OFF or some of LED are ON/OFF
Inverter PCB	Normal	Anomalous



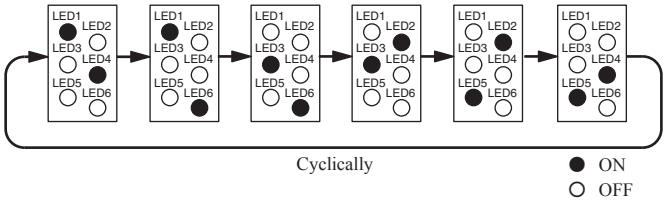
(v) Be sure to turn off JSW10-4 on outdoor inverter PCB, after finishing the check operation.

〈**Inverter Checker**〉



Connect to the terminal of the wires which are disconnected from compressor.

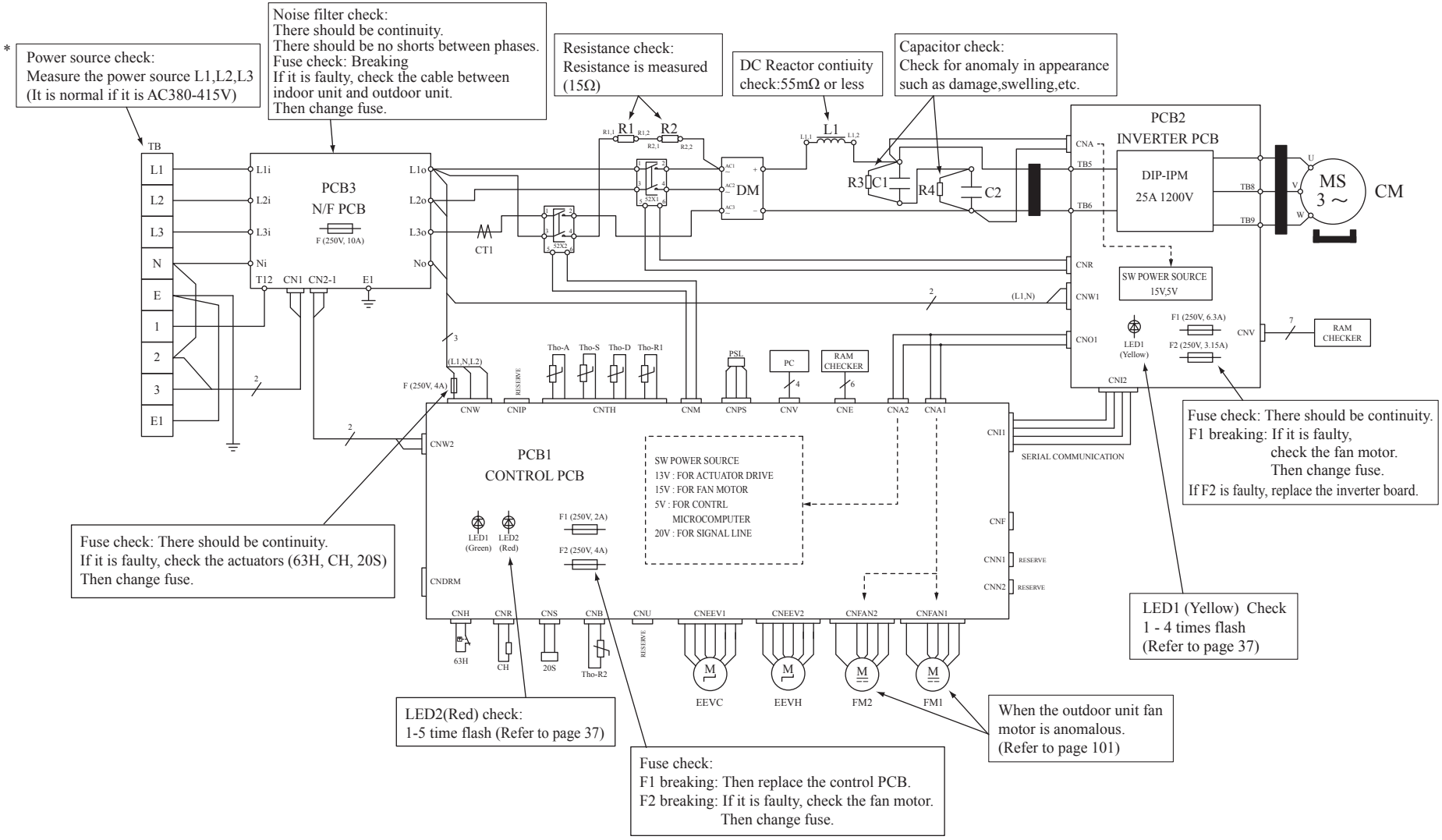
LED ON/OFF pattern



FDC200VSA

•Outdoor unit check points

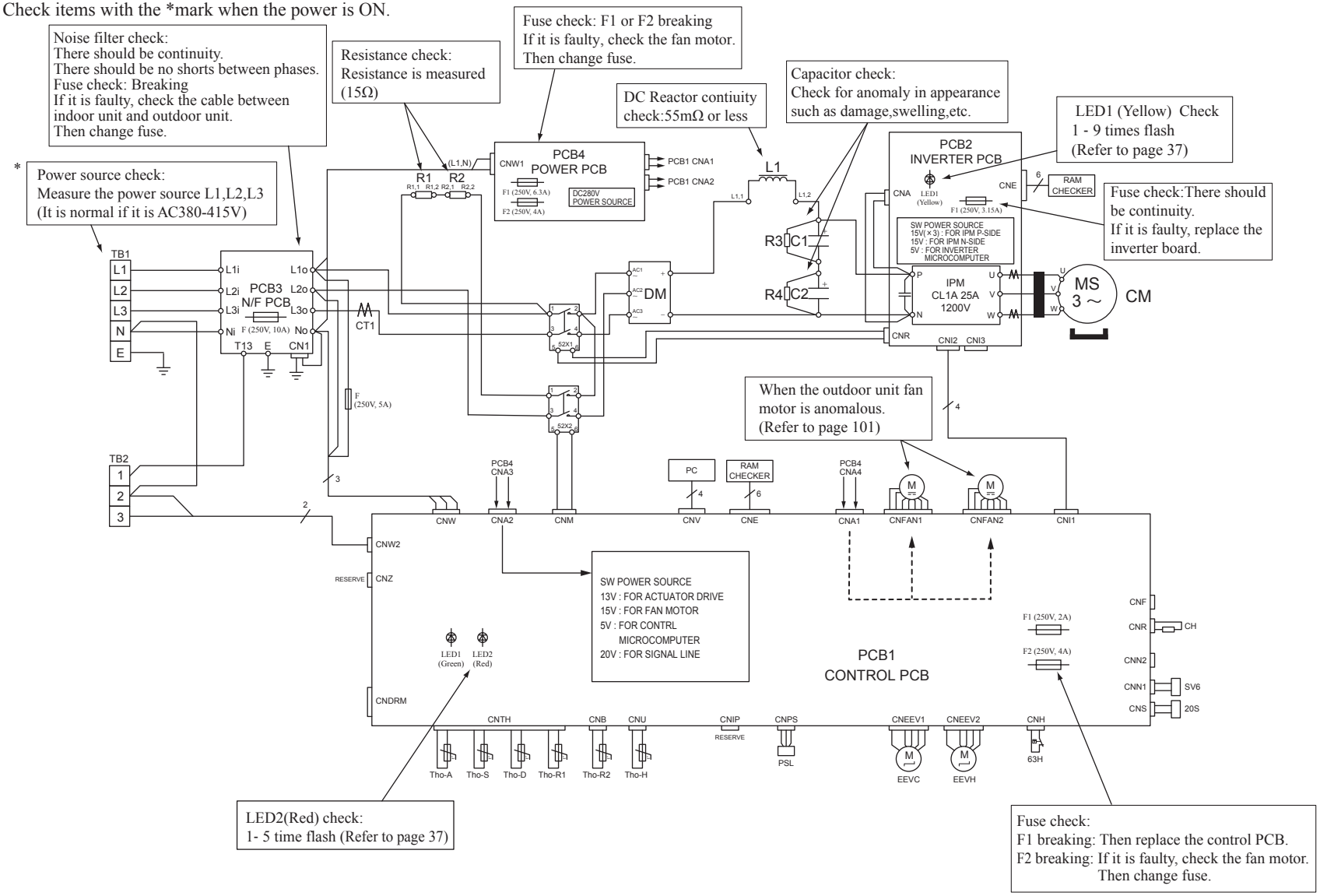
Check items with the *mark when the power is ON.



FDC250VSA

•Outdoor unit check points

Check items with the *mark when the power is ON.



2.2 Troubleshooting flow

(1) List of troubles

Remote control display	Description of trouble	Reference page
None	Operates but does not cool.	62
None	Operates but does not heat.	63
None	Earth leakage breaker activated	64
None	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)	65
None	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)	66
None	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)	67
None	Louver motor failure (FDT, FDTC, FDEN, FDF series)	68
None	Power source system error (Power source to indoor control PCB)	69
None	Power source system error (Power source to remote control)	70
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)	71
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote controls)	72
WAIT	Communication error at initial operation	73・74
None	No display	75
E1	Remote control communication circuit error	76
E5	Communication error during operation	77
E6	Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly	78
E7	Return air temperature thermistor anomaly	79
E8	Heating overload operation	80
E9	Drain trouble	81
E10	Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remote control	82
E11	Address setting error of indoor units	83
E14	Communication error between master and slave indoor units	84
E16	Indoor DC fan motor anomaly	85
E18	Address setting error of moster and slave indoor unit	86
E19	Indoor unit operation check, drain motor check setting error	87
E20	Indoor DC fan motor rotation speed anomaly	88
E21	Defective panel switch operation (FDT only)	89
E28	Remote control temperature thermistor anomaly	90
E35	Cooling overload operation	91
E36	Discharge pipe temperature error	92
E37	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly	93
E38	Outdoor air temperature thermistor anomaly	94
E39	Discharge pipe temperature thermistor anomaly	95
E40	High pressure error (63H1 activated)	96
E41	Power transistor overheat	97
E42	Current cut	98・99
E45	Inverter communication error	100
E48	Outdoor fan motor anomaly	101
E49	Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly	102・103
E51	Inverter or power transistor anomaly	104
E53	Suction pipe temperature thermistor anomaly	105
E54	Low pressure sensor anomaly	106
E55	Compressor under dome temperature thermistor anomaly (Model FDC 250 only)	107
E57	Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve closure	108
E59	Compressor startup failure	109・110

(2) Troubleshooting

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Operates but does not cool
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

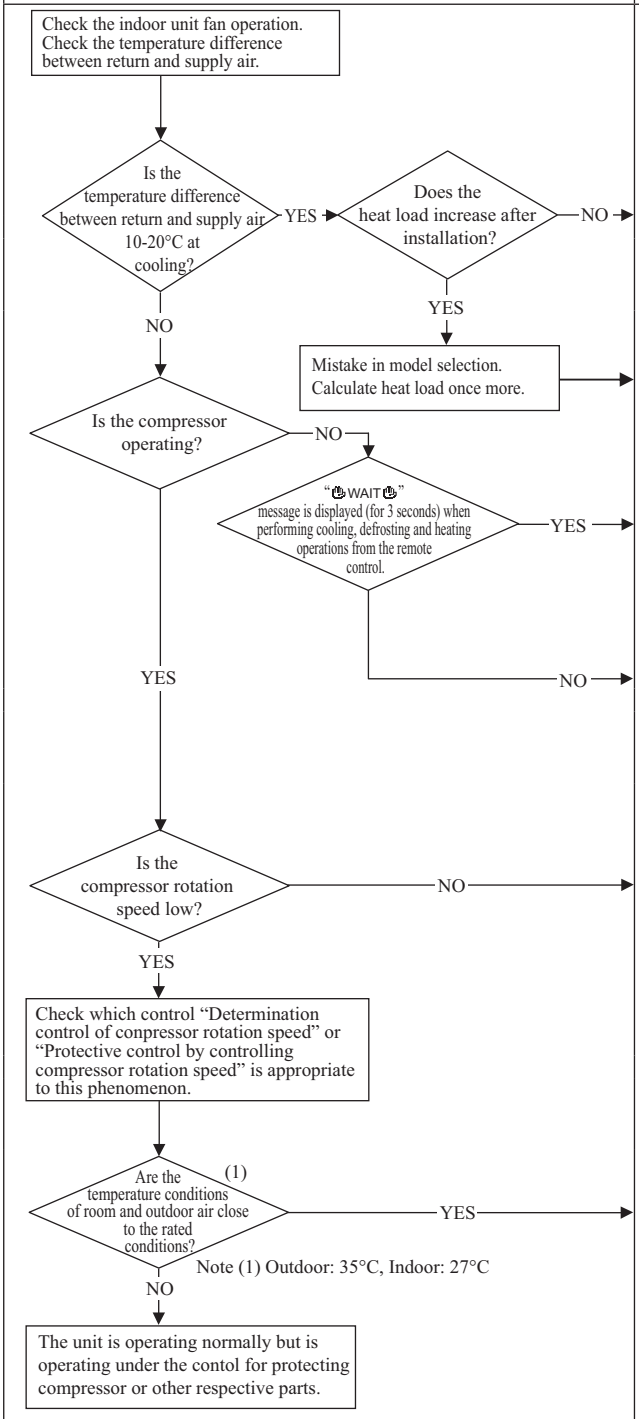
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty expansion valve operation

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Operates but does not heat
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

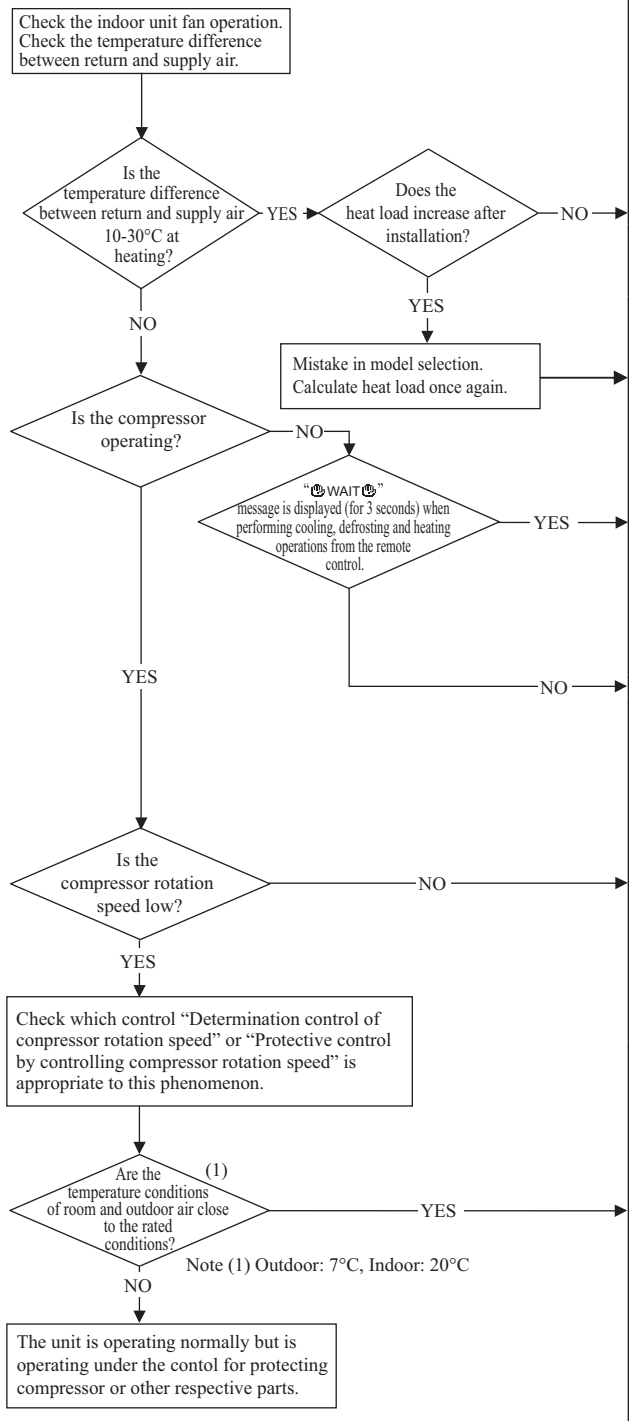
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty 4-way valve operation
- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty expansion valve operation

5. Troubleshooting



Countermeasure

It is normal.
(This unit is designed to start in the soft start mode by detecting the under dome temperature of compressor when it restart after power reset.

It is necessary to replace to higher capacity one or to install additional unit.

Compressor refrigerant oil protection control at starting is activated. For the contents of control, refer to the compressor start control of the microcomputer control functions.

Compressor may be stopped by the error detection control.
For the contents of control, refer to anomalous stop control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputor control functions.

Inspect the followings.
- Minor clogging of filter
- Minor clogging of heat exchanger
- Minor short-circuit
- Minor shortage of refrigerant amount
- Poor compression of compressor

Considering appropriate operation control, check suspicious points.
Inspect the followings for reference.
- Major clogging of filter
- Major clogging of heat exchanger
- Major short-circuit
- Major shortage of refrigerant amount
- Compressor protection ON
- Indoor fan tap
- Valid setting of silent mode

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Earth leakage breaker activated
	Outdoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4.Presumable cause

• Defective compressor
• Noise

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are OK the insulation resistance and coil resistance of compressor? NO	Replace compressor.*
Is insulation of respective harnesses OK? Is any harness bitten between pannel and casing or etc? NO	Secure insulation resistance.
Check the outdoor unit grounding wire/earth leakage breaker.	

Check of the outdoor unit grounding wire/earth leakage breaker

① Run an independent grounding wire from the grounding screw of outdoor unit to the grounding terminal on the distribution panel. (Do not connect to another grounding wire.)
② In order to prevent malfunction of the earth leakage breaker itself, confirm that it is conformed to higher harmonic regulation.

* Insulation resistance of compressor
• Immediately after installation or when the unit has been left for long time without power source, the insulation resistance may drop to a few MΩ because of refrigerant migrated in the compressor.
When the earth breaker is activated at lower insulation resistance, check the following points.
① 6 hours after power ON, check if the insulation resistance recovers to normal.
When power ON, crankcase heater heat up compressor and evaporate the refrigerant migrated in the compressor.
② Check if the earth leakage breaker is conformed to higher harmonic regulation or not.
Since the unit is equipped with inverter, it is necessary to use components conformed to higher harmonic regulation in order to prevent malfunction of earth leakage breaker.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)
	Outdoor	–	–	

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

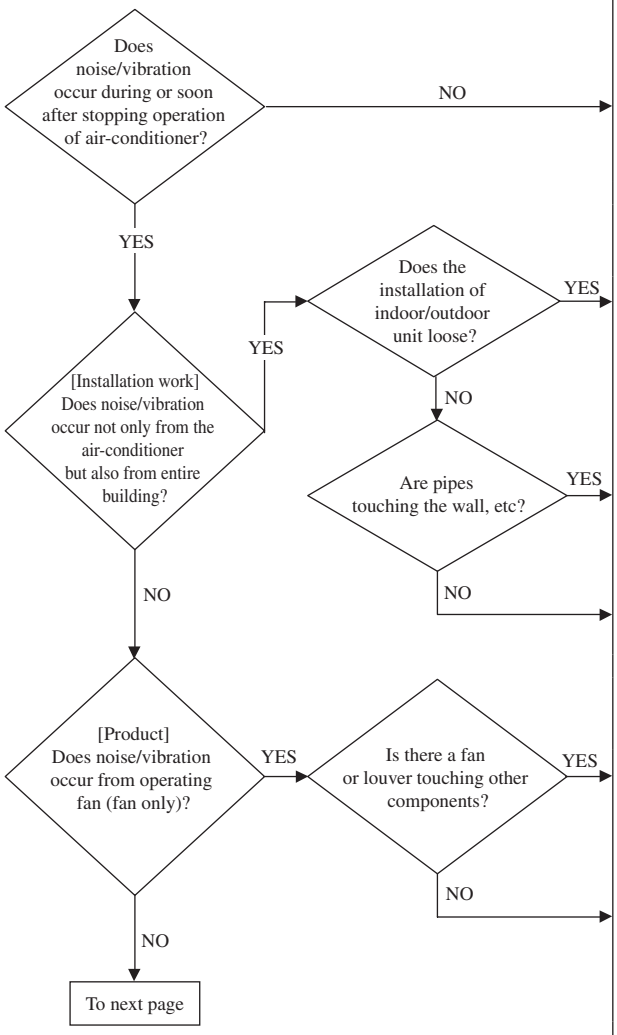
4.Presumable cause

① Improper installation work
- Improper anti-vibration work at installation
- Insufficient strength of mounting face

② Defective product
- Before/after shipping from factory

③ Improper adjustment during commissioning
- Excess/shortage of refrigerant, etc.

5.Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	If excessive noise/vibration persists when sufficient time has elapsed after stopping the unit, it is considered that the air-conditioner is not the source. Check the installed condition carefully, and correct the position or insert rubber cushions or others into the gap, if necessary. Prevent the vibration from transmitting to wall and etc by fixing pipes on the wall or wrapping rubber cushion around the pipe which goes through the hole in the wall or applying other appropriate means. Strength of ceiling wall, floor, etc. may be insufficient. Review the installing position or reinforce it. Check for leaning of installed unit or anomalous mounting of fan, louver or motor and specify the contacting point and correct it. When the heat exchanger or filter is clogged, clean them. In case that the unit is installed at the site where background noise is very low, small noise from indoor unit can be heard, but it is normal. Before installation, check for background noise. If backgound nois is very low, convince client prior to installation.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)
	Outdoor	–	–	

1. Applicable model

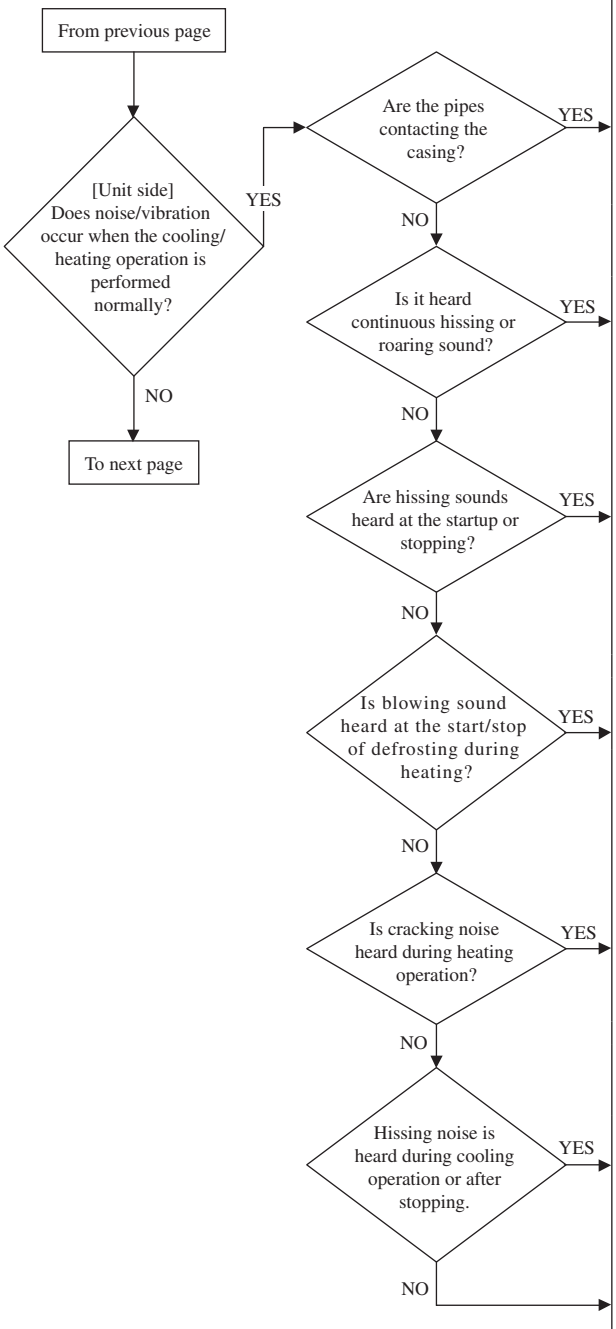
All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5. Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	Rearrange the piping to avoid contact with the casing.
	It is noise/vibration that is generated when the refrigerant gas or liquid flow through inside of piping of air-conditioner. It is likely to occur particularly during cooling or defrosting in the heating mode. It is normal.
	The noise/vibration occurs when the refrigerant starts or stops flowing. It is normal.
	When the defrosting starts or stops during heating, the refrigerant flow is reversed due to switching 4-way valve. This causes a large change in pressure which produces a blowing sound. It may accompany also the hissing sounds as mentioned above. They are normal.
	After the start or stop of heating operation or during defrosting, abrupt changes in temperature cause resin parts to shrink or expand. This is normal.
	It is the sound produced by the drain pump that discharges drain from the indoor unit. The pump continues to run for 5 minutes after stopping the cooling operation. This is normal.
	Apply the damper sealant at places considered to be the sources such as the pressure reducing mechanism (expansion valve), capillary, etc.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)
	Outdoor	–	–	

1.Applicable model

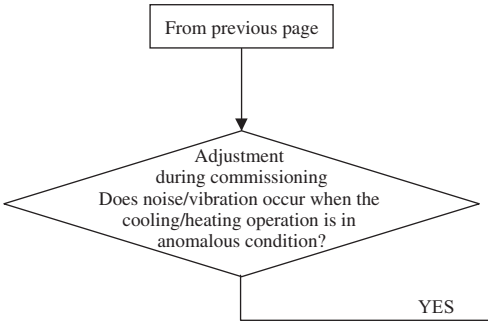
All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	If insufficient cooling/ heating problem happens due to anomalous operating conditions at cooling/ heating, followings are suspicious. • Overcharge of refrigerant • Insufficient charge of refrigerant • Intrusion of air, nitrogen, etc. In such occasion, it is necessary to recover refrigerant, vacuum-dry and recharge refrigerant. * Since there could be many causes of noise/ vibration, the above do not cover all. In such case, check the conditions when, where, how the noise/vibration occurs according to following check point. • Indoor/outdoor unit • Cooling/heating/fan mode • Startup/stop/during operation • Operating condition (Indoor/outdoor temperatures, pressure) • Time it occurred • Operation data retained by the remote control such as compressor rotation speed, heat exchanger temperature, EEV opening degree, etc. • Tone (If available, record the noise) • Any other anomalies

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Louver motor failure (FDT, FDTC, FDEN, FDF series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1.Applicable model

FDT, FDTC, FDEN, FDF series only

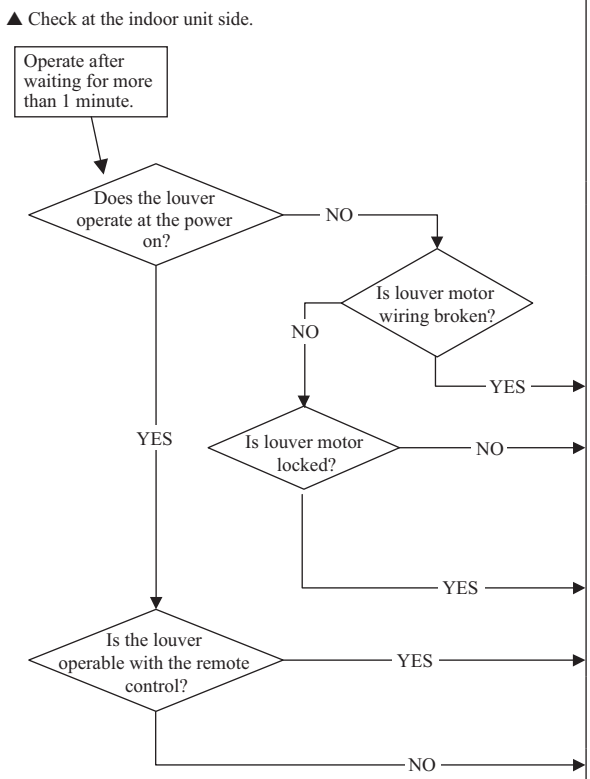
2.Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4.Presumable cause

- Defective louver motor
- Louver motor wire breakage
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: None

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Stays OFF	2-time flash

Content: Power source system error (Power source to indoor control PCB)

1. Applicable model

All models

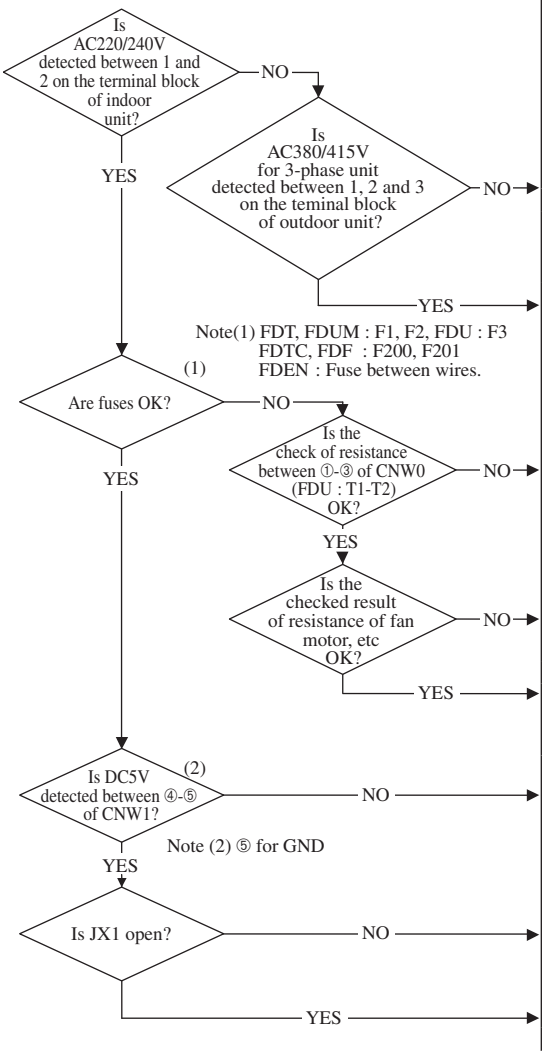
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Misconnection or breakage of connecting wires
- Blown fuse
- Faulty transformer
- Faulty indoor control or power PCB
- Broken harness
- Faulty outdoor control PCB (Noise filter)

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Power source system error (Power source to remote control)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

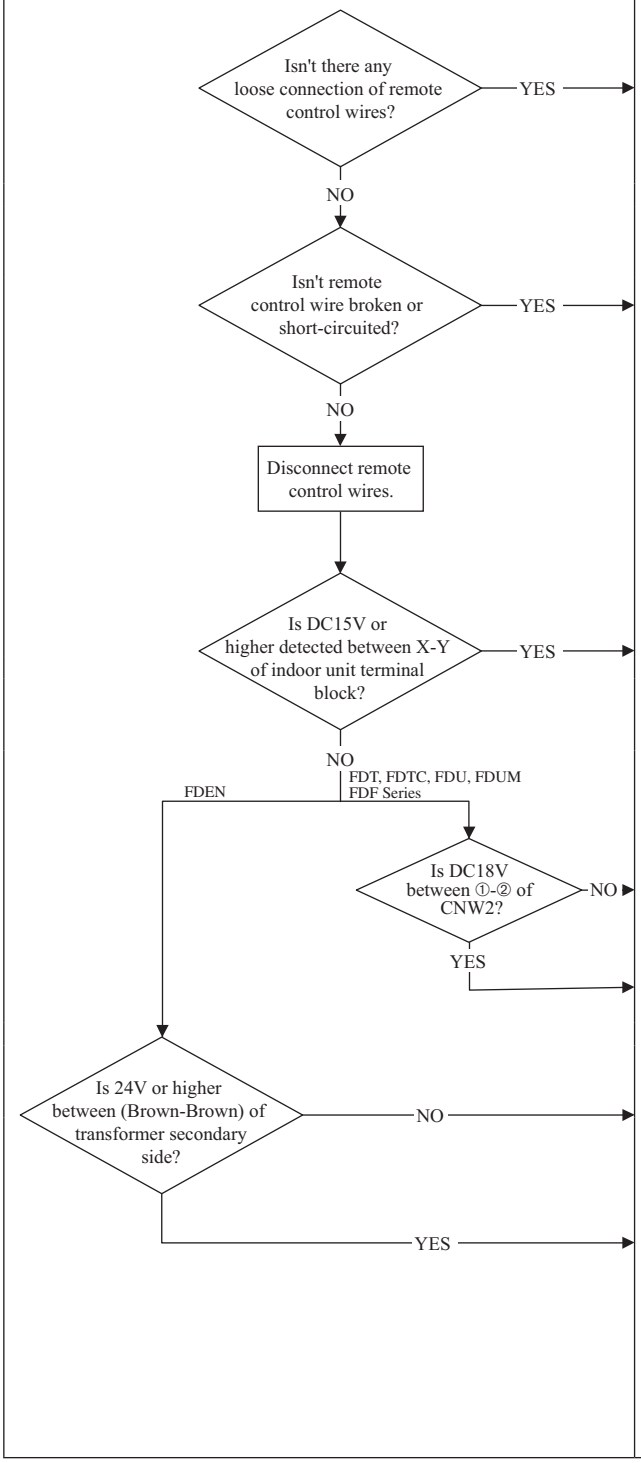
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Remote control wire breakage/short-circuit
- Defective remote control
- Malfunction by noise
- Faulty indoor power PCB
- Broken harness
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Communication between indoor unit and remote control is disabled for more than 30 minutes after the power on.

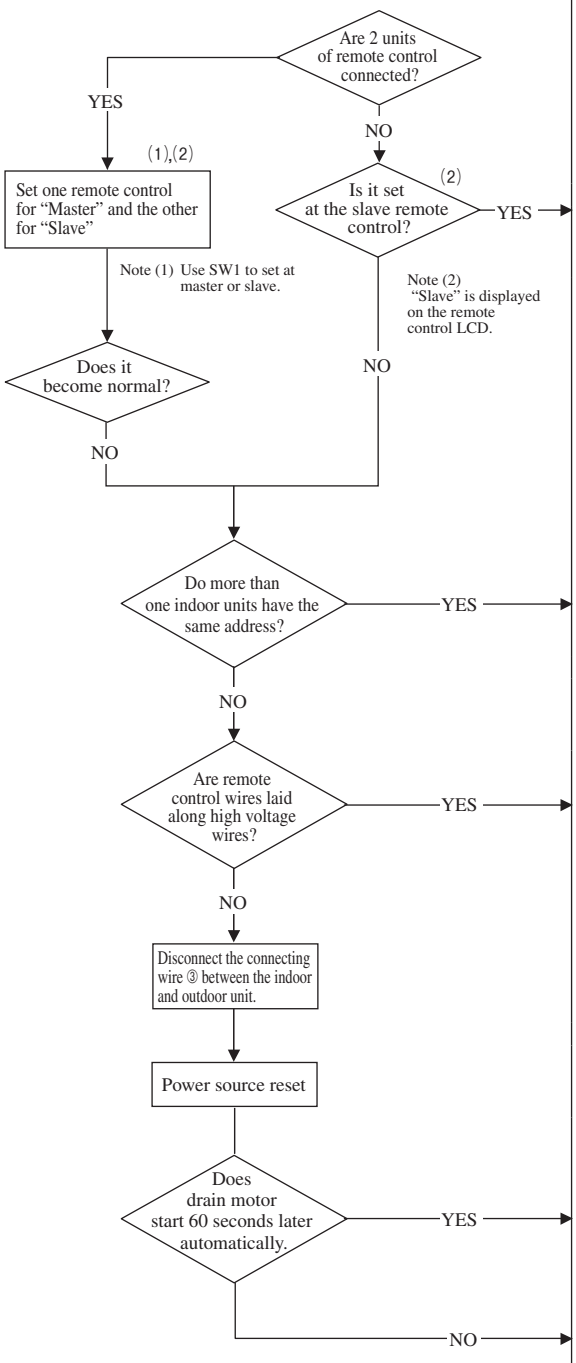
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "WAIT" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote control)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Indoor unit cannot communicate for more than 30 minutes after the power on with remote control.

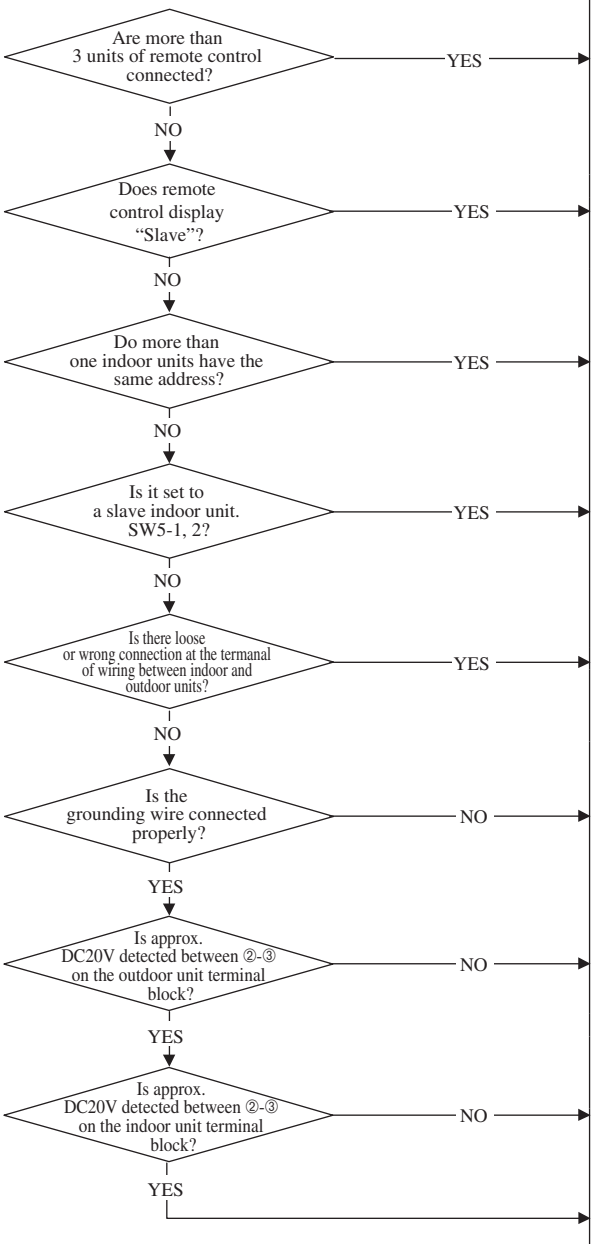
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty indoor control or power PCB
- Faulty outdoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "WAIT" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: ✋WAIT✋	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Communication error at initial operation (1/2)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

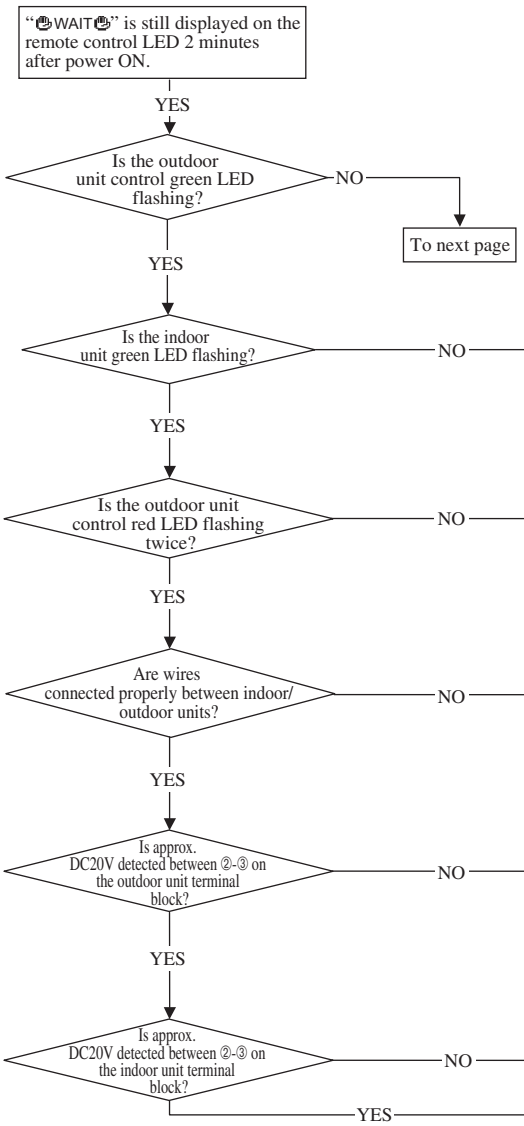
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor control or power PCB
- Defective remote control
- Broken remote control wire
- Faulty outdoor control PCB
- Broken connection wires

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: ✋WAIT✋

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash

Content

Communication error at initial operation (2/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

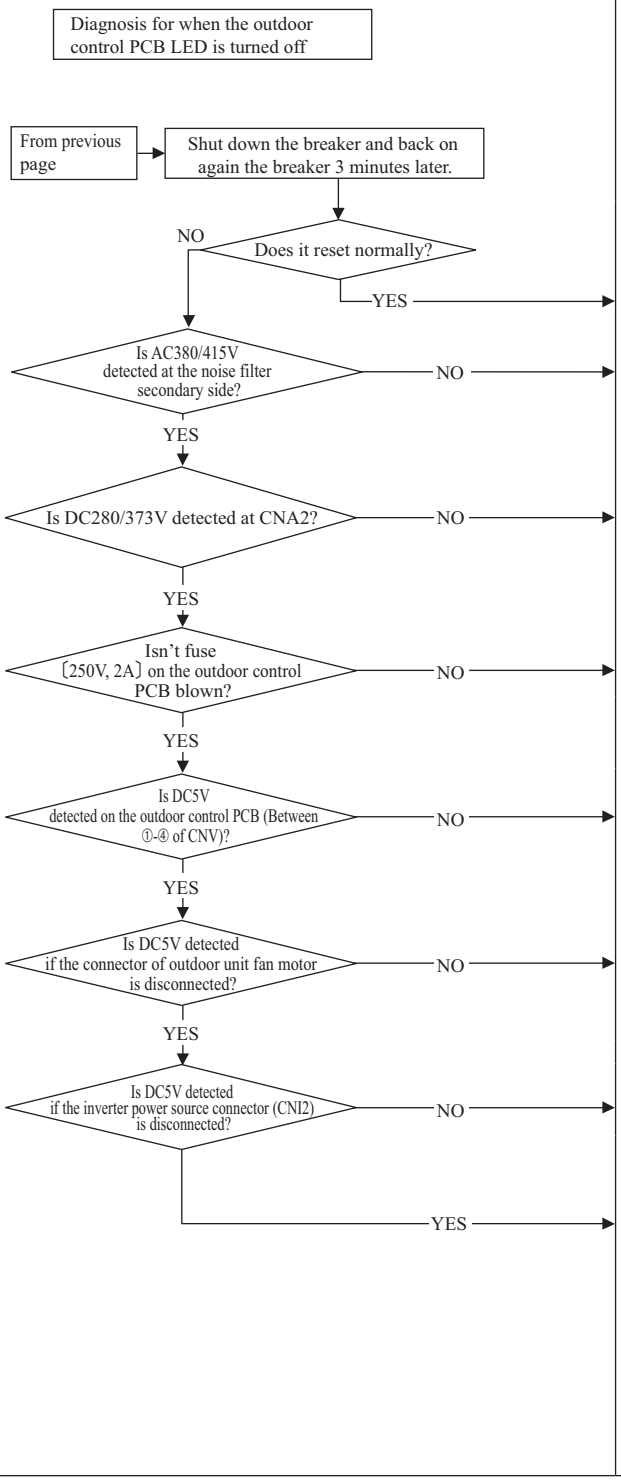
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty noise filter
- Faulty indoor control PCB
- Faulty outdoor control PCB
- Faulty inverter PCB
- Faulty fan motor

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: None

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash

Content

No display

1. Applicable model

All models

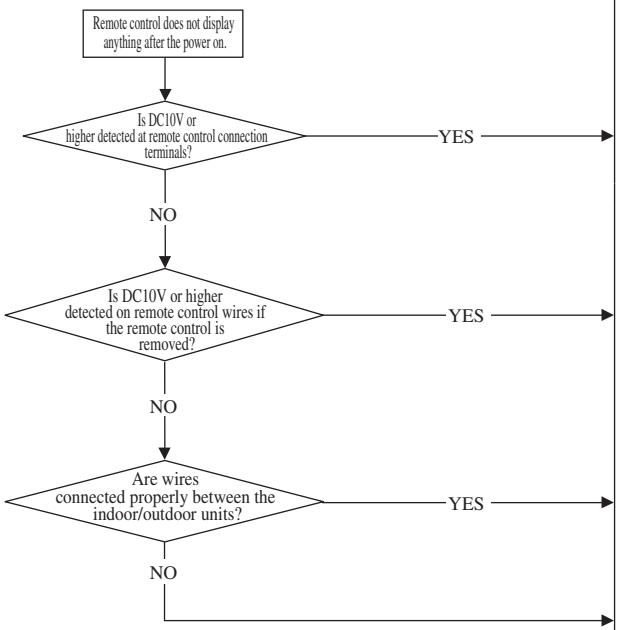
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor control PCB
- Defective remote control
- Broken remote control wire

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E1	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Remote control communication circuit error
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between the remote control and the indoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes. (Detectable only with the remote control)

3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Defective communication circuit between remote control-indoor unit
- Noise
- Defective remote control
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is it possible to reset normally by the power reset? → YES	Malfunction by noise Check peripheral environment.
NO → Turn SW7-1 to OFF. → ON Remove the wire ③ connecting between indoor/outdoor units. → Power reset → Does the drain pump restart automatically 1 minute later? → YES	Defective indoor control PCB → Replace.
NO	Defective remote control → Replace.

Note (2) Does the remote control still display "WAIT" even after 3 minutes?

Note: If the indoor unit cannot communicate normally with the remote control for 180 seconds, the indoor unit PCB starts to reset automatically.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E5	Indoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Communication error during operation
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	See below	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between indoor and outdoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes.

3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above is detected during operation.

4. Presumable cause

- Unit No. setting error
- Broken remote control wire
- Faulty remote control wire connection
- Faulty outdoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
In case that the outdoor unit red LED 2-time flash	
Note (1) Inspect faulty connections (disconnection, looseness) on the outdoor unit terminal block. Is the connection of signal wires at the outdoor unit side OK? — NO	Repair signal wires.
YES Note (2) Check for faulty connection or breakage of signal wires between indoor-outdoor units. Is the connection of signal wires between indoor-outdoor units OK? — NO	Repair signal wires.
YES Power reset Has the remote control LCD returned to normal state? — NO	To the diagnosis of "WAIT"
YES	Unit is normal. (Malfunction by temporary noise, etc.)
In case that the outdoor unit red LED stays OFF	
Power reset NO Has the remote control LCD returned to normal state? — NO	Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective network communication circuit) → Replace.
YES	Unit is normal. (Malfunction by temporary noise, etc.)

Note: Pressing the pump-down switch cancels communications between indoor and outdoor unit so that "communication error-E5" is displayed on indoor unit and remote control, but it is normal.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E6	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected on the indoor heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1, R2 or R3).

3. Condition of Error displayed

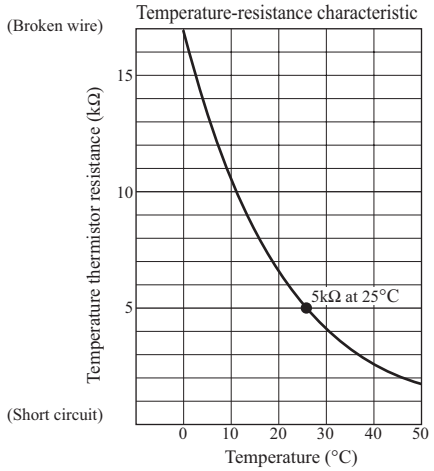
- When the temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.
- Or if 70°C or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger thermistor connector
- Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor connector OK? — NO	Correct. → Insert connector securely.
YES → Are characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor OK? — NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor control PCB → Replace. (Defective indoor unit heat exchanger temperature thermistor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E7	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Return air temperature thermistor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected by indoor return air temperature thermistor (ThI-A)

3. Condition of Error displayed

- When the temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

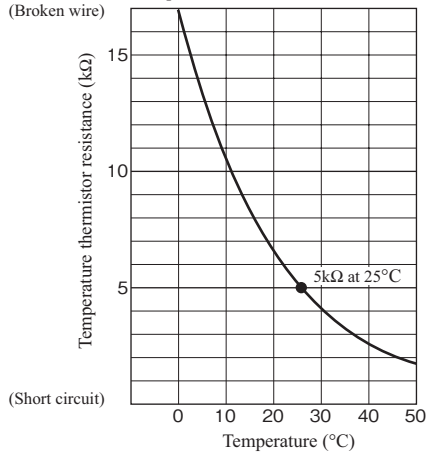
4. Presumable cause

- Defective return air temperature thermistor connector
- Defective return air temperature thermistor
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of return air temperature thermistor connector OK? — NO	Correct. → Connect connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of return air temperature thermistor OK? — NO	Defective return air temperature thermistor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor control PCB → Replace. (Defective return air temperature thermistor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristic



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E8	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Heating overload operation
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor (ThI-R1, R2, R3)

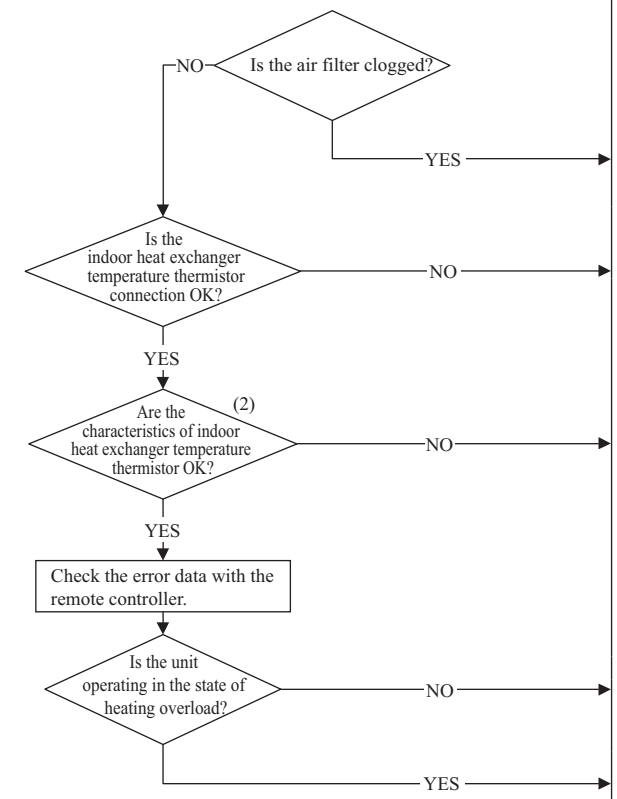
3. Condition of Error displayed

When it is detected 5 times within 60 minutes from initial detection or when the overload condition is detected for 6 minutes continuously.

4. Presumable cause

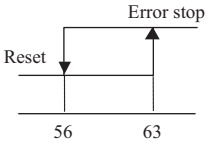
- Clogged air filter
- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor connector
- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor
- Anomalous refrigerant system

5. Troubleshooting



Note (1) Judge if it is in the state of overload or not as follows.
- ▲ Is there any short-circuit of air?
- ▲ Isn't there any fouling or clogging on the indoor heat exchanger?
- ▲ Is the outdoor fan control normal?
- ▲ Isn't the room and outdoor air temperature too high?

Note (2) For characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor, see the error display E6.



Note: During heating operation; After starting compressor, compressor rotation speed is decreased by detecting indoor heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) in order to control high pressure.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E9	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Drain trouble (FDT, FDTC, FDU and FDUM series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

FDT, FDTC, FDU and FDUM series only

2. Error detection method

Float switch is activated

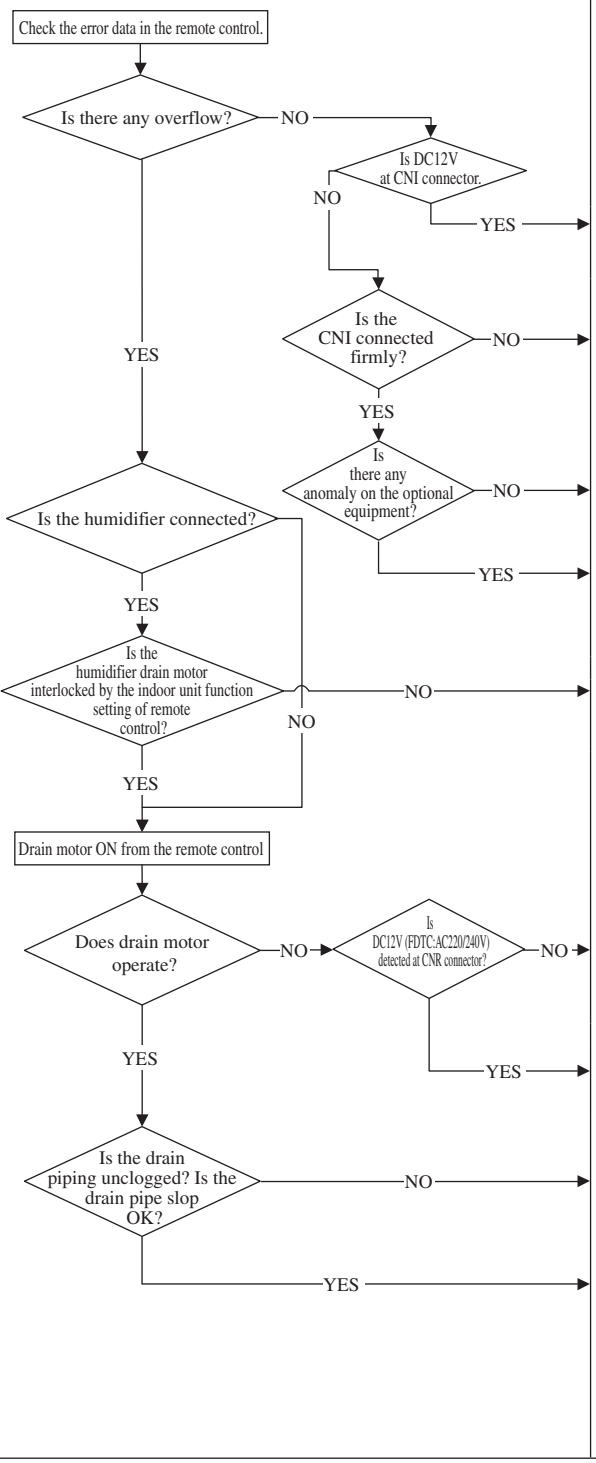
3. Condition of Error displayed

If the float switch OPEN is detected for 3 seconds continuously or if float switch connector or wire is disconnected.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor control PCB
- Float switch setting error
- Humidifier drain motor interlock setting error
- Option equipment setting error
- Drain piping error
- Defective drain motor
- Disconnection of drain motor wiring

5. Troubleshooting



Note: When this error occurred at power ON, disconnection of wire or connector of the float switch is suspected. Check and correct it (or replace it, if necessary).

Error code

Remote control: E10

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF

Content: Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remote control

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When it detects more than 17 of indoor units connected to one remote contorl

3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Excessive number of indoor units connected
- Defective remote control

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Aren't more than 17 indoor units connected to one remote control? — NO	Defective remote control → Replace.
YES	Reduce to 16 or less units.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E11	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Address setting error of indoor units
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

IU address has been set using the "Master IU address set" function of remote control.

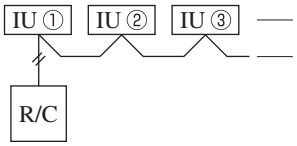
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Same as above

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
E11 occurs ↓ Is "Master IU address set" function of remote control used? YES →	• In cases of RC-E5 Return address No. to "IU …" using [▲] or [▲] button. • In cases of RC-EX1A Menu → Next → IU settings → Select IU
In case the wiring is below and "Master IU address set" is used, E11 is appeared. 	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E14	Indoor	Keeps flashing	3-time flash	Communication error between master and slave indoor units
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When communication error between master and slave indoor units occurs

3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Unit address setting error
- Broken remote control wire
- Defective remote control wire connection
- Defective indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is it OK the unit address setting for master and slave indoor units? → NO	Correct unit address setting.
Isn't the remote control wiring between indoor units defective? → YES	Correct wiring.
Is it restored by resetting the power source? → NO	Defective indoor control PCB → Replace.
→ YES	• Malfunction by noise • Check surrounding environment.

Note (1) Set dip switches SW5-1 and SW5-2 as shown in the following table.
(Factory default setting – "Master")

		Indoor unit			
		Master	Slave-a	Slave-b	Slave-c
Dip switch	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E16	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor DC fan motor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for the FDU, FDUM series FMI2 only.

1. Applicable model

DC fan motor only

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

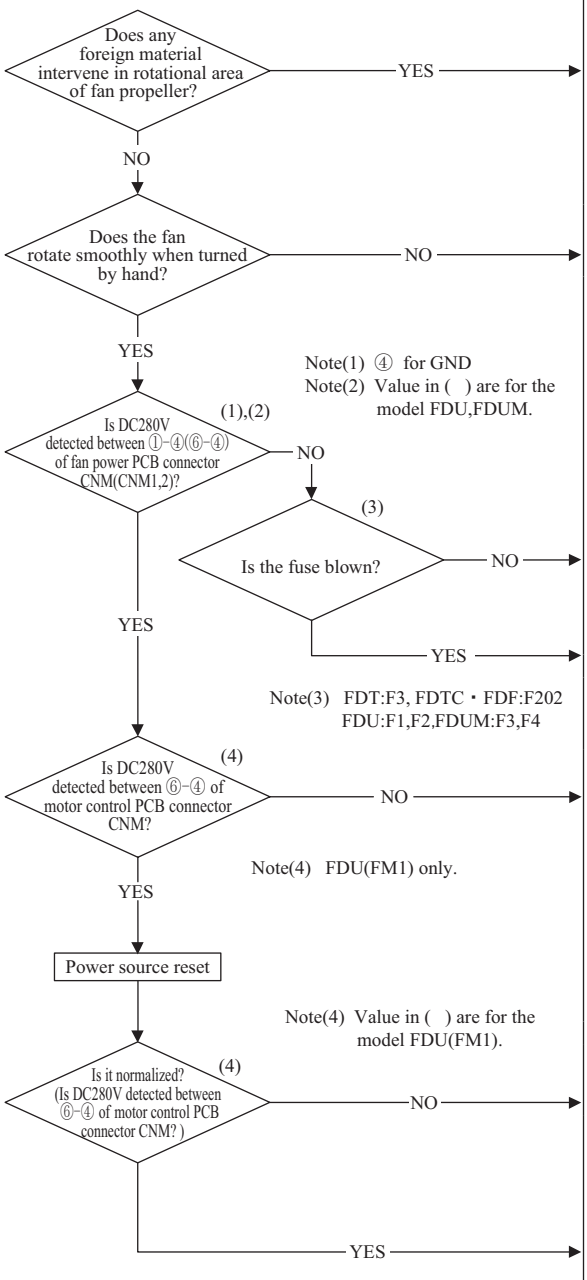
3. Condition of Error displayed

When actual rotation speed of indoor fan motor drops to lower than 200min^{-1} for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the indoor fan motor stop. After 2-seconds, it starts again automatically, but if this error occurs 4 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E18	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Address setting error of master and slave indoor units
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Indoor unit address has been set using the "Master indoor unit address set" function of remote control.

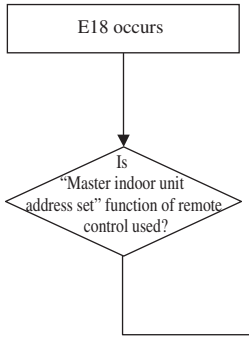
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Same as above

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	Return address No. to "indoor unit …" using [▲] or [▼] button.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E19	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Indoor unit operation check, drain motor check setting error
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

After indoor operation check, when the communication between indoor and outdoor unit is established and SW7-1 is still kept ON.

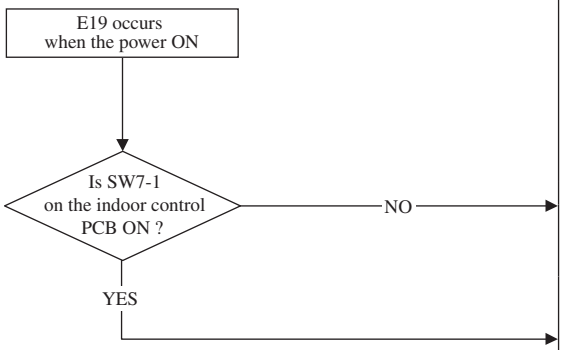
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Mistake in SW7-1 setting
(Due to forgetting to turn OFF SW7-1 after indoor operation check)

5. Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is SW7-1 on the indoor control PCB ON ? NO	Defective indoor control PCB (Defective SW7) →Replace
Is SW7-1 on the indoor control PCB ON ? YES	Turn SW7-1 on the indoor control PCB OFF and reset the power

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E20	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor DC fan motor rotation speed anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for the FDU, FDUM series FMI2 only.

1. Applicable model

DC fan motor only

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

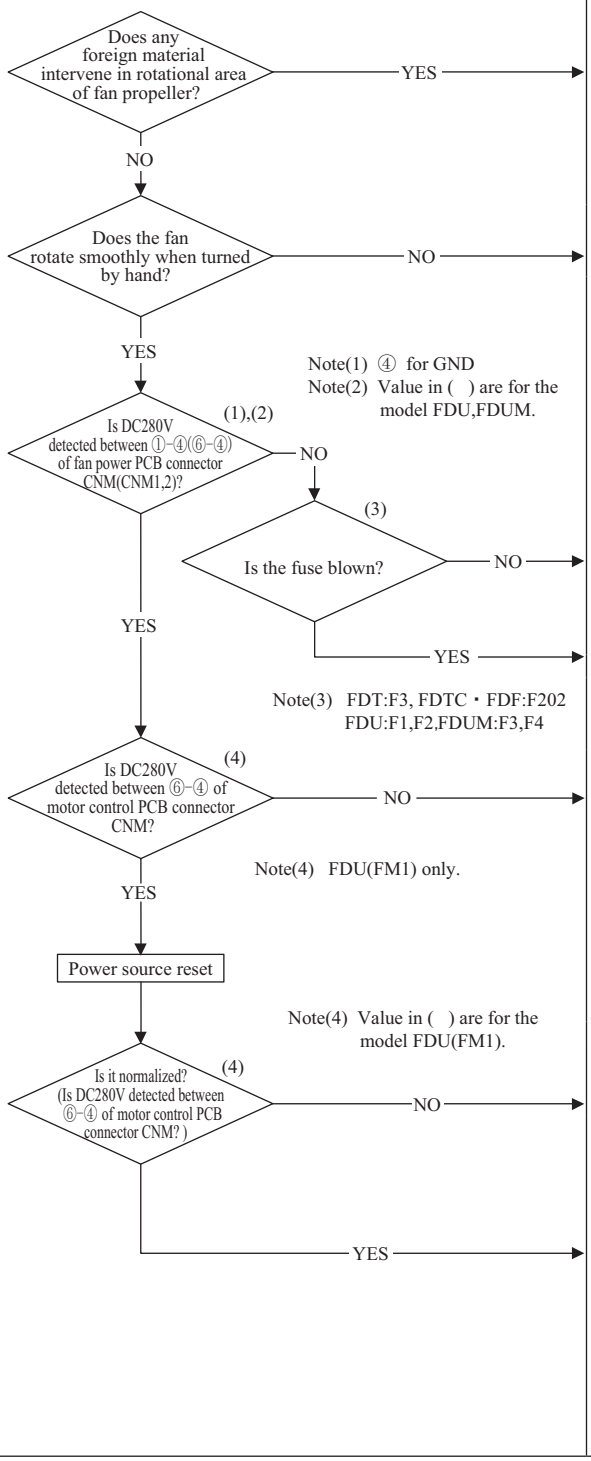
3. Condition of Error displayed

When the actual fan rotation speed does not reach to the speed of [required speed -50min^{-1}(FDU : -500min^{-1})] after 2 minutes have been elapsed since the fan motor rotation speed command was output, the unit stops by detecting indoor fan motor anomaly.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor power (control) PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E21	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Defective panel switch operation (FDT)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

FDT series only

2. Error detection method

Panel switch (PS) has detected Open for more than 1 second.

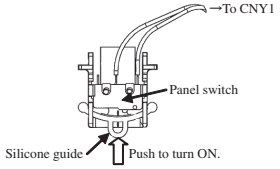
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Defective panel switch
- Disconnection of wiring
- Defective indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is grill opened? — YES	Reset the error and close the grill.
Does matter improve if panel switch is turned ON forcibly after resetting error? — YES <Forced panel switch ON> Put the switch in the state of ON by fixing the silicone section of panel switch with adhesive tape while it is held down.	Insufficient push on the panel switch at the internal face of grill →Attach 3 mm thick rubber sheet at the section where the panel switch touches the inside of grill. Close then the grill.
Are connectors at right inserted properly? — NO <Connectors on PCBs> Indoor control PCB: CNV	Disconnected, poorly connected connectors →Reinsert properly.
Is there continuity between ① – ④ of CNV on indoor control PCB when panel switch operation is checked? — NO	 ・Defective panel switch or incorrect panel switch wiring → Replace panel switch. ・Broken wire between panel switch PCB (CNV) → Correct or replace wire.
YES	Defective indoor control PCB → Replace indoor control PCB.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E28	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Remote control temperature thermistor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) of remote control temperature thermistor (Thc)

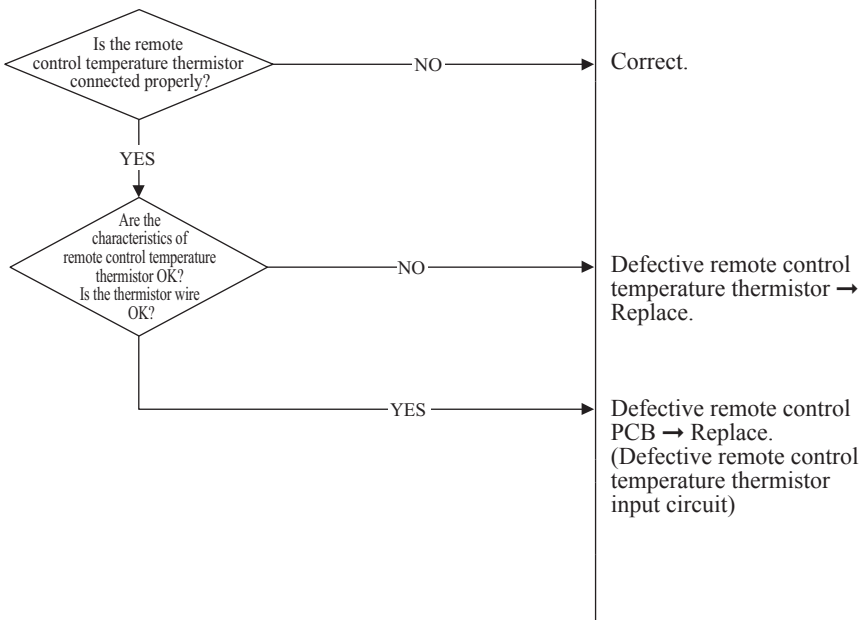
3. Condition of Error displayed

When the temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty connection of remote control temperature thermistor
- Defective remote control temperature thermistor
- Defective remote control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Resistance-temperature characteristics of remote control temperature thermistor (ThC)

Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)	Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)
0	65	30	16
1	62	32	15
2	59	34	14
4	53	36	13
6	48	38	12
8	44	40	11
10	40	42	9.9
12	36	44	9.2
14	33	46	8.5
16	30	48	7.8
18	27	50	7.3
20	25	52	6.7
22	23	54	6.3
24	21	56	5.8
26	19	58	5.4
28	18	60	5.0

Note: After 10 seconds has passed since remote control thermistor was switched from valid to invalid, E28 will not be displayed even if the thermistor harness is disconnected. At same time the thermistor, which is effective, is switched from remote control thermistor to indoor return air temperature thermistor. Even though the remote control thermistor is set to be Effective, the return air temperature displayed on remote control for checking still shows the value detected by indoor return air temperature thermistor, not by remote control temperature thermistor.

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E35	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Cooling overload operation

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

For the error detection method, refer to the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed and cooling high pressure protective control of micro computer control function for corresponding models.

3. Condition of Error displayed

When outdoor heat exchanger temperature anomaly is detected 5 times within 60 minutes or this anomalous state is detected 60 minutes continuously including compressor stop.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor
- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Excessive refrigerant amount

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
* For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor, refer to E37.	
Are the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor normal? — NO	Replace outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor.
YES	
Is the unit operating in the state of cooling overload? — YES	Check unit side. • Isn't the air circulation of outdoor unit short-circuited? • Are installation spaces adequate? • Isn't there any fouling or clogging on heat exchanger?
NO	
Is the high pressure control normal? — NO	Control operation check *
YES	
Is the temperature (measured actually) at detection of error correct? — NO	Defective outdoor control PCB→Replace.
YES	Excessive refrigerant amount : Recharge refrigerant by weighing proper amount on a scale.

* For the contents of control, refer to the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed and cooling high pressure protective control of micro computer control function for corresponding models.

Note:

Error code

Remote control: E36

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keeps flashing	

Content

Discharge pipe temperature error

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

For the error detection method, refer to the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed and cooling high pressure protective control of micro computer control function for corresponding models.

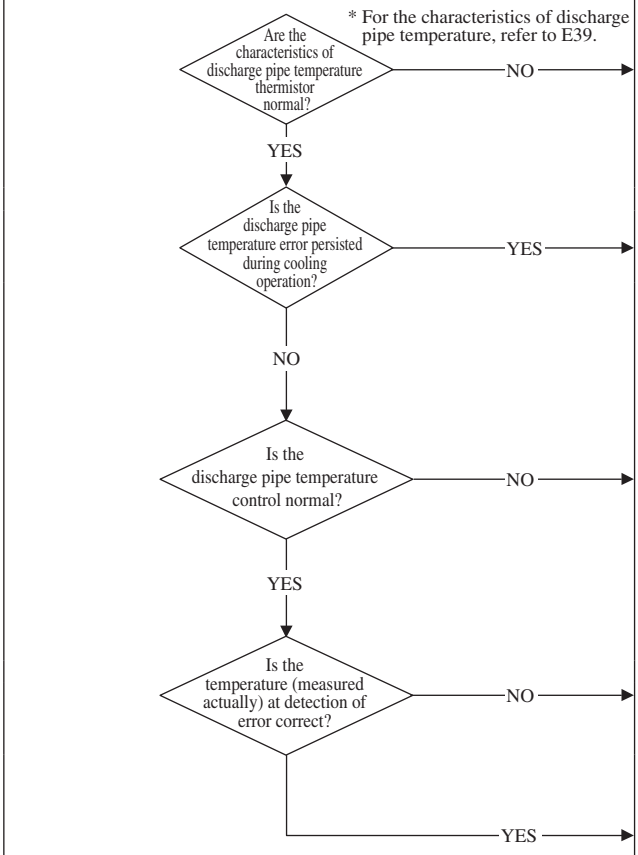
3. Condition of Error displayed

When discharge pipe temperature anomaly is detected 2 times within 60 minutes or this anomalous state is detected 60 minutes continuously including compressor stop.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Defective discharge pipe temperature thermistor
- Clogged filter
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger

5. Troubleshooting



* For the contents of control, refer to the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed and cooling high pressure protective control of micro computer control function for corresponding models.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E37	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Outdoor heat exchanger temperature themistor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor

3. Condition of Error displayed

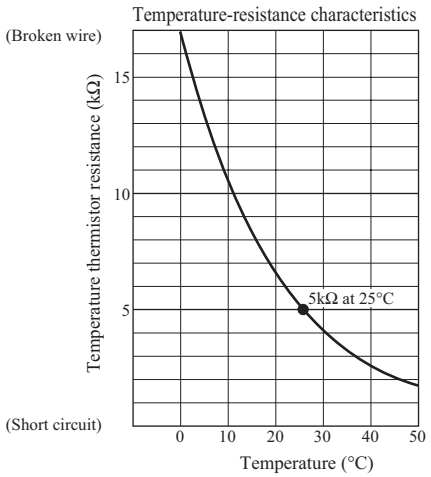
- When the temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower for 20 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes.
- When -50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 second after compressor ON.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Broken thermistor harness or temperature sensing section
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor, see the following graph. Are the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor OK? → NO	Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor control PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E38	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Outdoor air temperature thermistor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on outdoor air temperature thermistor

3. Condition of Error displayed

- When the temperature thermistor detects -45°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes.
- When -45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 second after compressor ON.

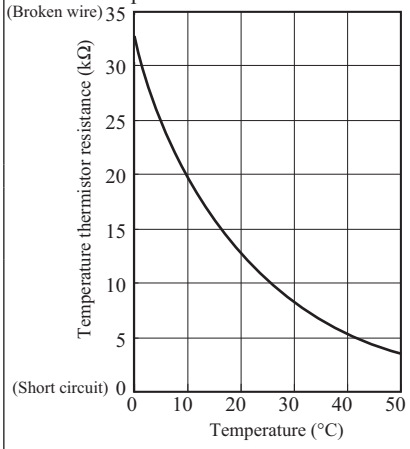
4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Broken thermistor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor air temperature thermistor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → For the characteristics of outdoor air temperature thermistor, see the following graph. Is the characteristics of the outdoor air temperature thermistor OK? → NO	Defective outdoor air temperature thermistor→ Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor control PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor air temperature thermistor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E39	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Discharge pipe temperature thermistor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the discharge pipe temperature thermistor

3. Condition of Error displayed

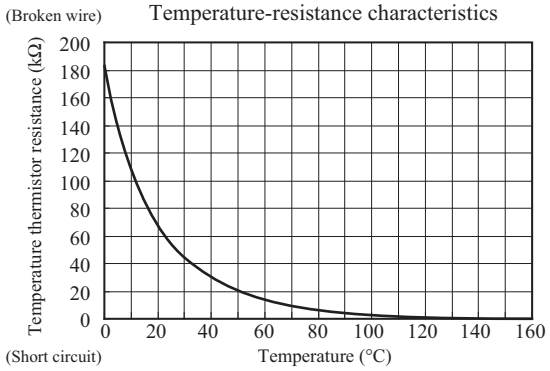
When the temperature thermistor detects -10°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Broken thermistor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the discharge pipe temperature thermistor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature thermistor OK? (For the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature thermistor, see the following graph.) → NO	Defective discharge pipe temperature thermistor→ Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor control PCB→Replace. (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E40	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

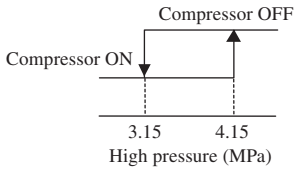
High pressure error (63H1 activated)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the high pressure switch 63H1 is activated.



3. Condition of Error displayed

If 63H1 turns OFF (opened), the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor restarts. If this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes or continues for 60 minutes continuously.

4. Presumable cause

- Short circuit of air flow, disturbance of air flow and clogging filter at outdoor heat exchanger/Breakdown of fan motor
- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Defective 63H1 connector
- Defective electronic expansion valve connector
- Closed service valve
- Mixing of non-condensing gas (nitrogen, etc.)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
If the power source breaker is turned OFF and ON too quickly, E40 may be displayed. (This is normal.)	
Is the service valve fully opened? — NO	Open service valve.
YES	
Has 63H1 activated? — NO	
On operation of 63H1 — YES	
1. During cooling ・ Is the outdoor fan motor running? ・ Isn't any short-circuit of air on the outdoor unit? ・ Are sufficient return air/supply air space secured? 2. During heating ・ Isn't the indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor disconnected from the thermistor casing? ・ Isn't the filter clogged? * Under the condition of overcharging refirgerant, 63H1 may activate due to delay of starting the preventive control by compressor speed control, because detected heat exhanger temperature, which conducts compressor speed control, becomes lower than normal condition due to excess sub-cooling degree.	
Is 63H1 connector connected properly? — NO	Correct 63H1 connector.
YES	
Is the electronic expansion valve connector connection OK? — NO	Correct electronic expansion valve connector.
If any anomaly exists on the electronic expansion valve connector connection, the power source must be reset.	
YES	Defective outdoor control PCB→Replace. (Defective 63H1 input circuit)

Note: In the protective control range for compressor startup (initial startup after power ON), even if 63H1 is activated only once (63H1turns OFF), immediately the error is displayed.

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E41	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		2-time flash or 8-time flash(1)	

Content: Power transistor overheat

Note (1) 8-time flash 250 model only.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When anomalously high temperature is detected by power transistor.

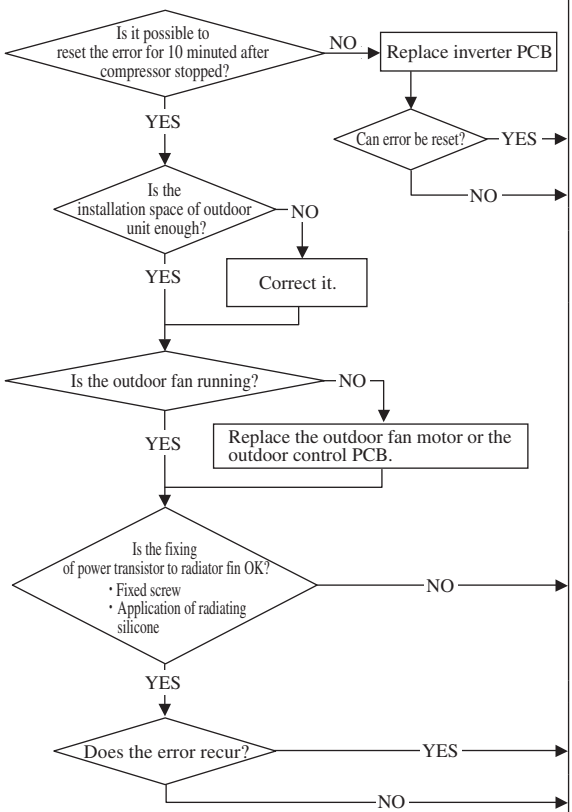
3. Condition of Error displayed

Anomalously high temperature of power transistor is detected 5 times within 60 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Outdoor fan motor anomaly
- Improperly fixing of power transistor to radiator fin
- Inadequate installation space of outdoor unit

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E42	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		1-time flash or 9-time flash(1)	

Content

Current cut (1/2)

Note (1) 9-time flash 250 model only.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

3. Condition of Error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.
- After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this amonaly occurs 4 times within 30 minute after the intial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- The valves closed
- Faulty power source
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the Power source voltage OK? — NO	Check power source.
YES → Are the service valves opened? — NO	Open the valves.
YES → Is the high pressure during operation OK? — NO	Check refrigerant amount and refregerant circuit *In case of transitional increase of high pressure and/or test run, several times restarting may recover it, because liquid refrigerant (migrated) in the compresser is discharged from the compressor.
YES → Is the checked result of insulation resistance and coil resistance (1) of compressor motor OK? — NO	Replace compressor.
(1) 1.172Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC200) 0.309Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC250)	
YES → To next page.	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E42	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		1-time flash or 9-time flash(1)	

Content

Current cut (2/2)

Note (1) 9-time flash 250 model only.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

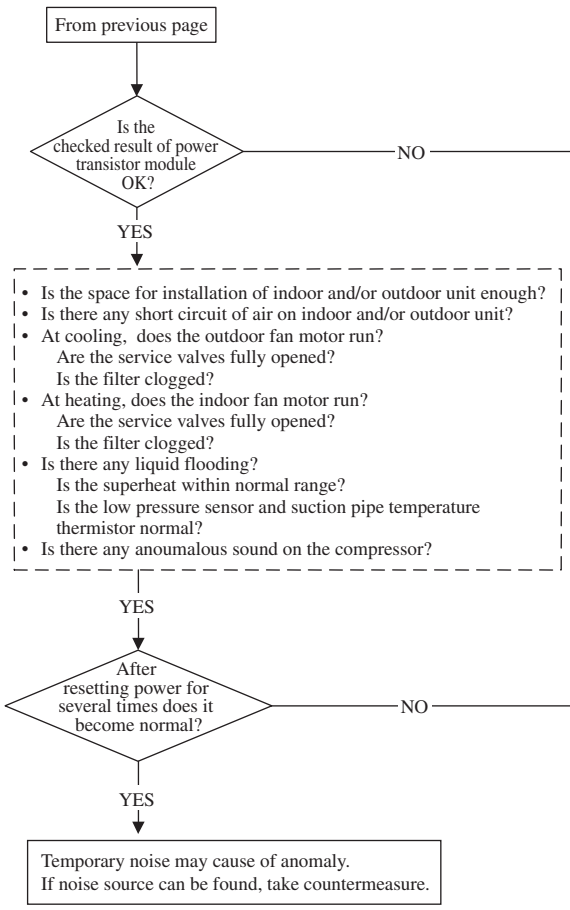
3. Condition of Error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.
- After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this amonaly occurs 4 times within 30 minute after the intial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Defective inverter PCB
- Faulty power source
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: E45

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keep flashing	

Content

Communication error between inverter PCB and outdoor control PCB

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the communication between inverter PCB and outdoor control PCB is not established.

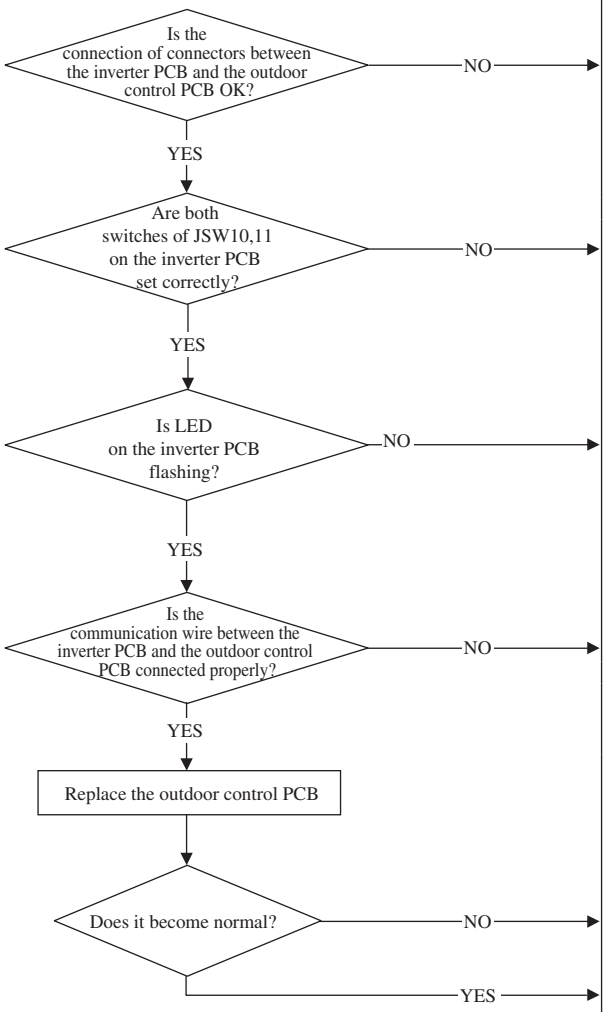
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above.

4. Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Anomalous connection of connector between the outdoor control PCB and inverter PCB
- Outdoor control PCB anomaly
- Outdoor fan motor anomaly

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control:E48	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keep flashing	

Content

Outdoor fan motor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of outdoor fan motor

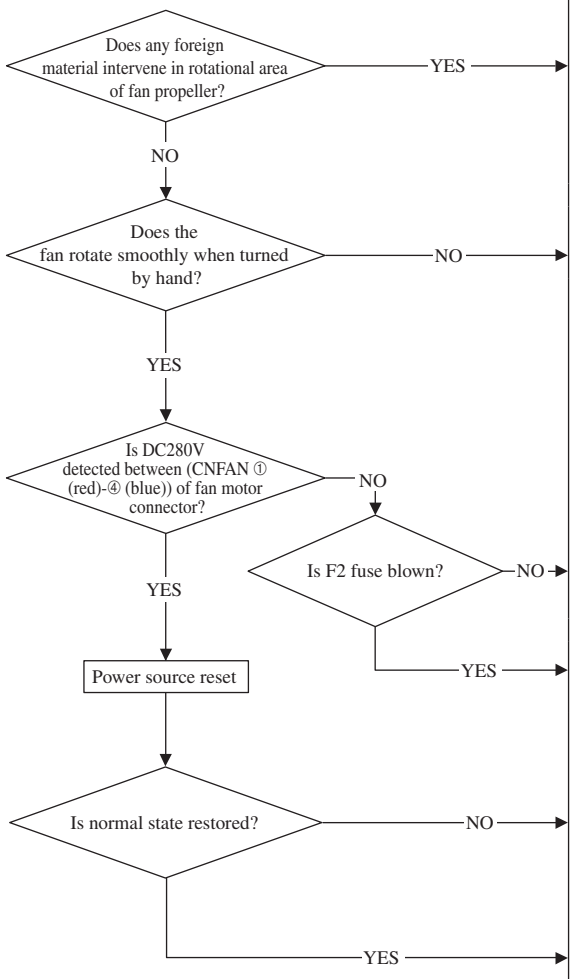
3. Condition of Error displayed

When actual rotation speed of outdoor fan motor (FMo1) drops to 100min^{-1} or lower for 30 minutes continuously, the compressor and the outdoor fan motor stop. After 3-minutes delay, it starts again automatically, but if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on outdoor control PCB
- Blow fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note: When E48 error occurs, in almost cases F2 fuse (4A) on the outdoor control PCB is blown. There are a lot of cases that fuse is blown and E48 occurs due to defective fan motor. And even though only the outdoor control PCB (or fuse) is replaced,, another trouble (*1) could occur. Therefore when fuse is blown, check whether the fan motor is OK or not.
After confirming the fan motor normal, check by power ON. (Don't power ON without confirming the fan motor normal.)
*1 The error which does not seem to relate E48 may occur like as "WAIT", Stay OFF of LED on outdoor control PCB, inverter communication error (E45) and etc.

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E49	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keep flashing	

Content

Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly (1/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by low pressure drop and suction superheat

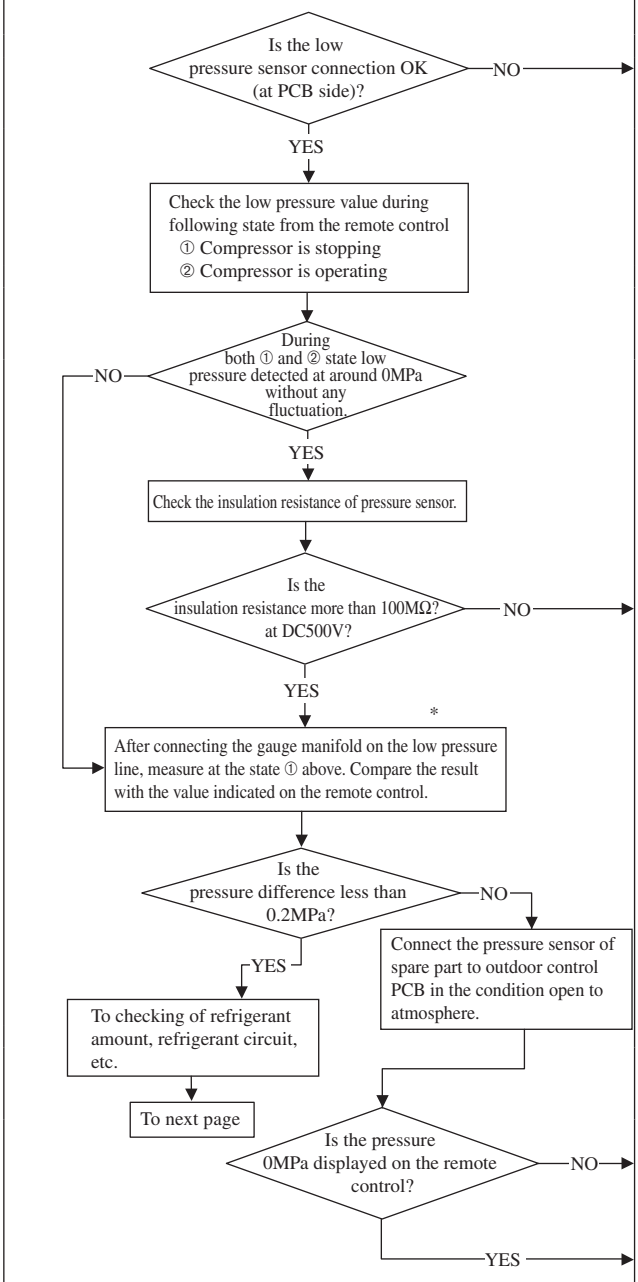
3. Condition of Error displayed

① When the low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 15 seconds continuously, compressor stops and it restarts automatically after 3-minutes delay. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes,
② 10 minutes after the compressor starts, if the low pressure sensor detects 0.15MPa or lower for 60 minutes continuously and compressor suction superheat is detected 30degC or higher for 60 minutes continuously. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes,
③ If low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 5 minutes continuously (including the compressor stop status),

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Defective low pressure sensor connector
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective suction pipe temperature thermistor connector
- Defective suction pipe temperature thermistor

5. Troubleshooting



Note: * Connect the gauge manifold to the service valve check joint during cooling, or connect it to the check joint at internal piping of outdoor unit during heating.

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E49	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keep flashing	

Content

Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly (2/2)

1. Applicable model

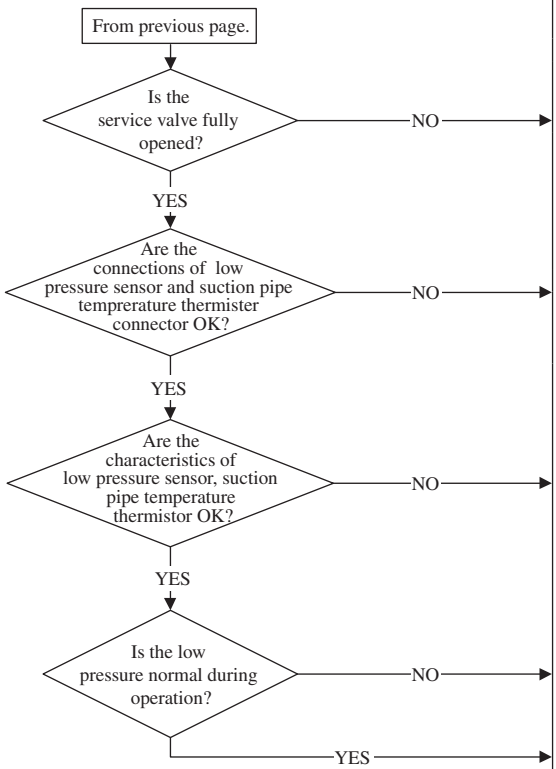
All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control:E51	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		2-time flash or 8-time flash(1)	

Content

Inverter or power transistor anomaly

Note (1) 8-time flash 250 model only.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When power transistor anomaly is detected for 15 minutes continuously

3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Power transistor anomaly

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Replace inverter PCB.	
Did it return? YES	OK
NO	Replace power transistor. (250 model)

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control:E53	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keep flashing	

Content

Suction pipe temperature thermistor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the suction pipe temperature thermistor detects anomalously low temperature

3. Condition of Error displayed

If the temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minutes delay, if this anomaly ocuurs 3 times within 40 minute.

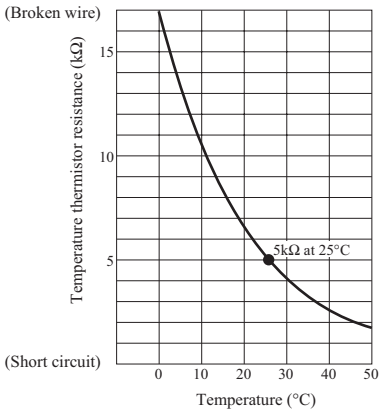
4. Presumable cause

- Defective suction pipe temperature thermistor connection
- Defective suction pipe temperature thermistor
- Defective outdoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of suction pipe temperature thermistor connector OK? — NO	Correct connection of suction pipe temperature thermistor connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of suction pipe temperature thermistor OK? — NO	Defective suction pipe temperature thermistor→ Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor control PCB→Replace. (Defective suction pipe temperature thermistor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control:E54	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keep flashing	

Content

Low pressure sensor anomaly

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

When anomalous voltage (pressure) is detected

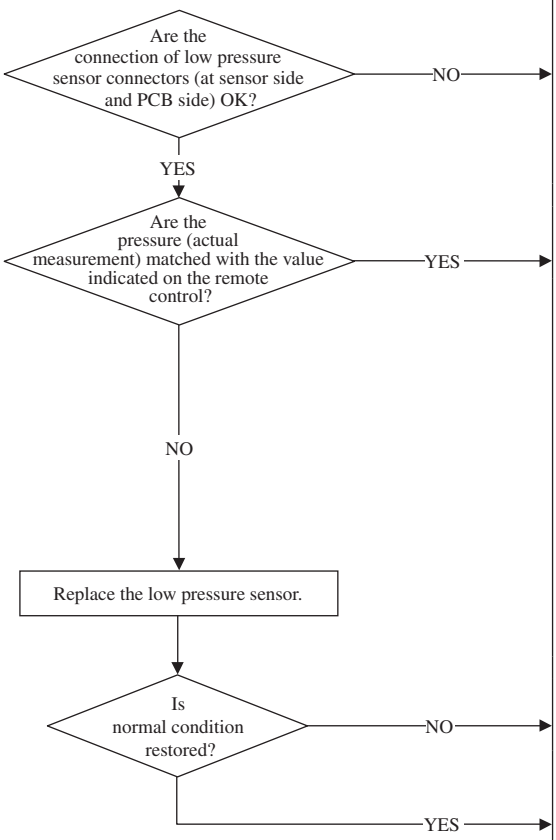
3.Condition of Error displayed

If the pressure sensor detects 0V or lower and 4.0V or higher for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minuts delay, if this anomaly occurs 3 times within 40 minutes

4.Presumable cause

- Defective low pressure sensor connection
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective outdoor control PCB
- Improper amount of refrigerant
- Anomalous refrigeration circuit

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control:E55	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keep flashing	

Content

Compressor under dome temperature thermistor anomaly
(Model FDC250 only)

1.Applicable model

Model FDC250 only

2.Error detection method

When anoumalous low temperature (resistance) is detected by the compressor under dome temperature thermistor

3.Condition of Error displayed

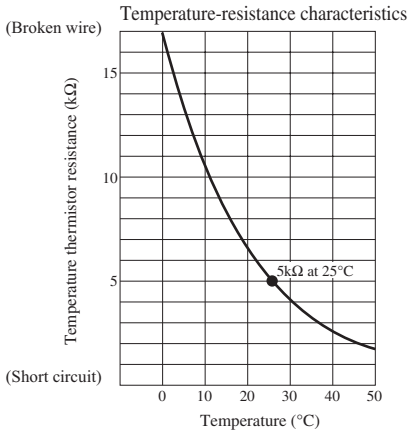
If the temperature thermistor detcts -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minutes delay, if this anomaly ocuurs 3 times within 40 minute.

4.Presumable cause

- Defective under dome temperature thermistor connection
- Defective under dome temperature thermistor
- Defective outdoor control PCB

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of under dome temperature thermistor connector OK? — NO	Correct connection of under dome temperature thermistor connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of under dome temperature thermistor OK? — NO	Defective under dome temperature thermistor→ Replace.
YES	Replace outdoor control PCB. (Defective under dome temperature thermistor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E57	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keep flashing	

Content

Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

- Judge insufficient refrigerant amount by detecting the temperature differnce between indoor heat exchanger (ThI-R) and indoor return air (ThI-A).
- It detects at initial startup in cooling or dehumidifying mode after power ON.

3. Condition of Error displayed

Anomalous stop at initial detection

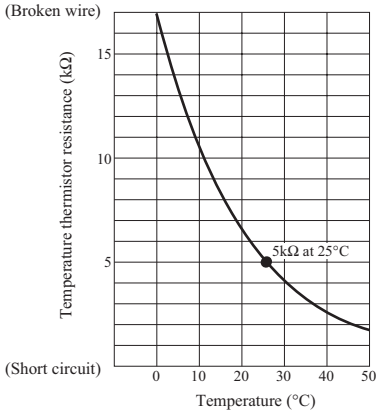
4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor
- Defective indoor return air temperature thermistor
- Defective indoor control PCB
- Insufficient refregerant amount

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the service valve fully opened? NO	Open fully.
YES → Are the connections of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature thermistor connectors OK? NO	Correct indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature thermistor connector connections.
YES → Are the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature thermistor OK? NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature thermistor → Replace.
YES → Is the low pressure during operation normal? NO	Charge refrigerant.
YES	Defective indoor control PCB→Replace. (Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature thermistor input circuits)

Indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature thermistor
Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note: Insufficient refrigerant amount preventive control makes compressor stopped, if it judges insufficient refrigerant amount by detecting the temperature difference between indoor heat exchanger (ThI-R) and return air temperature (ThI-A) for 1 minute after compressor ON in cooling or dehumidifying mode and for 9 minutes after compressor ON in heating mode. [in cooling mode: (ThI-A)-(ThI-R)>4degC, in heating mode: (ThI-R)-(ThI-A)<4degC]

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control:E59	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		4-time flash	

Content

Compressor startup failure (1/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When it fails to change over to the operation for rotor position detection of compressor motor (If the compressor speed cannot increase 11rps or higher)

3. Condition of Error displayed

If the compressor fails to startup for 20 times (10 patterns x2 times) continuously.

4. Presumable cause

- Outdoor fan motor anomaly
- Outdoor control PCB anomaly
- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Anomalous power source voltage
- Insufficient or Excessive refrigerant amount
- Faulty component for refrigerant circuit
- Compressor anomaly (Motor or bearing)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
In case that the compressor does not start at all and no sound or vibration exists	
Is power source voltage OK? — NO	Check the power source voltage and correct it
YES	
Is the pressure equalized at starting OK? — NO	Check refrigerant amount and refrigerant circuit.
YES	
Is the insulation resistance and coil resistance of compressor OK? — NO	Replace compressor
YES	
To next page	

Note: Insulation resistance
- The unit is left for long period without power source or soon after installation, insulation resistance may decrease to several MΩ or lower due to the liquid refrigerant migrated in the refrigerant oil in compressor. If the electric leakage breaker is activated due to low insulation resistance, check followings.
  ① Check whether the insulation resistance can recover or not, after 6 hours has passed since power ON.
  (By energize the crankcase heater, liquid refrigerant migrated in the refrigerant oil in compressor can be evaporated)
  ② Check whether the electric leakage breaker conforms to high-harmonic specifications
  (As INV PAC units has inverter, in order to prevent from improper operation, be sure to use the breaker of high-harmonic type)

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E59	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	5-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		4-time flash	

Content

Compressor startup failure (2/2)

1. Applicable model

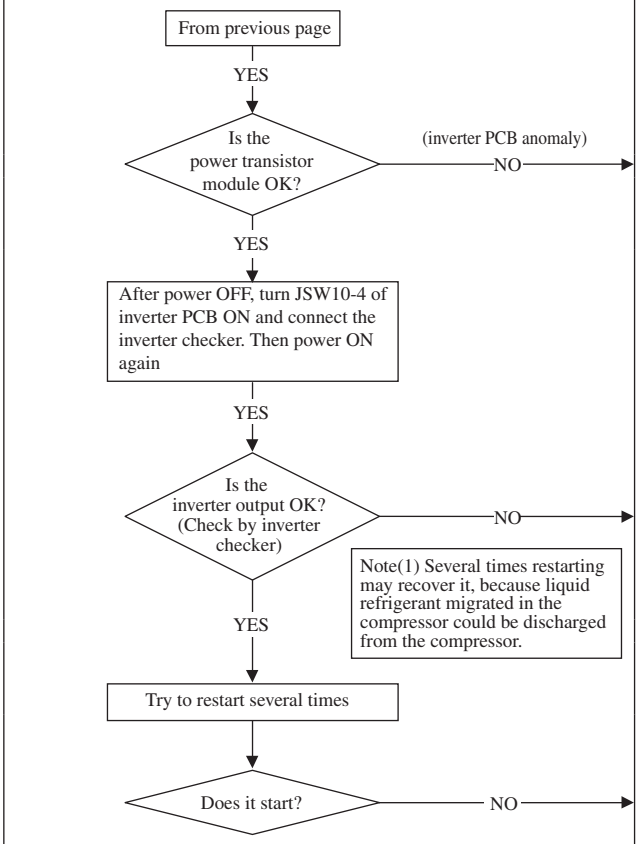
All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5. Troubleshooting



Diagnosis | Countermeasure

Note:

3. ELECTRICAL WIRING

(1) Indoor units

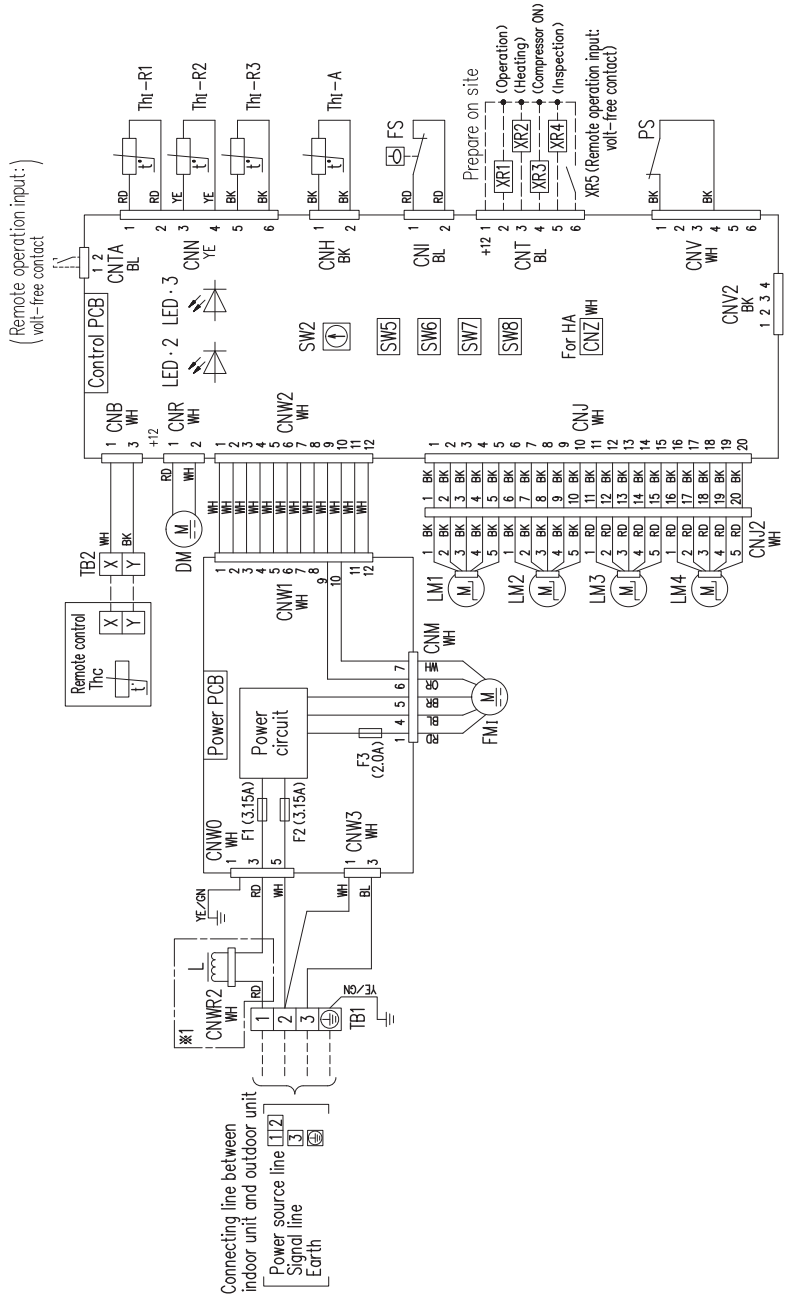
(a) Ceiling cassette-4way type (FDT)

Models FDT50VF, 60VF, 71VF1, 100VF1, 125VF

CNB~Z	Connector
DM	Drain motor
F1~3	Fuse
FMi	Fan motor
FS	Float switch
L	Reactor
LED・2	Indication lamp (Green–Normal operation)
LED・3	Indication lamp (Red–Inspection)
LM1~4	Louver motor
PS	Panel switch
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master/Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7–1	Operation check, Drain motor test run
SW7–3	Powerful mode Valid/Invalid
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□mark)
Thc	Thermistor (Remote control)
Th1–A	Thermistor (Return air)
Th1–R1,2,3	Thermistor (Heat exchanger)

Color Marks

Mark	Color	Mark	Color
BK	Black	RD	Red
BL	Blue	WH	White
BR	Brown	YE	Yellow
OR	Orange	YE/GN	Yellow/Green

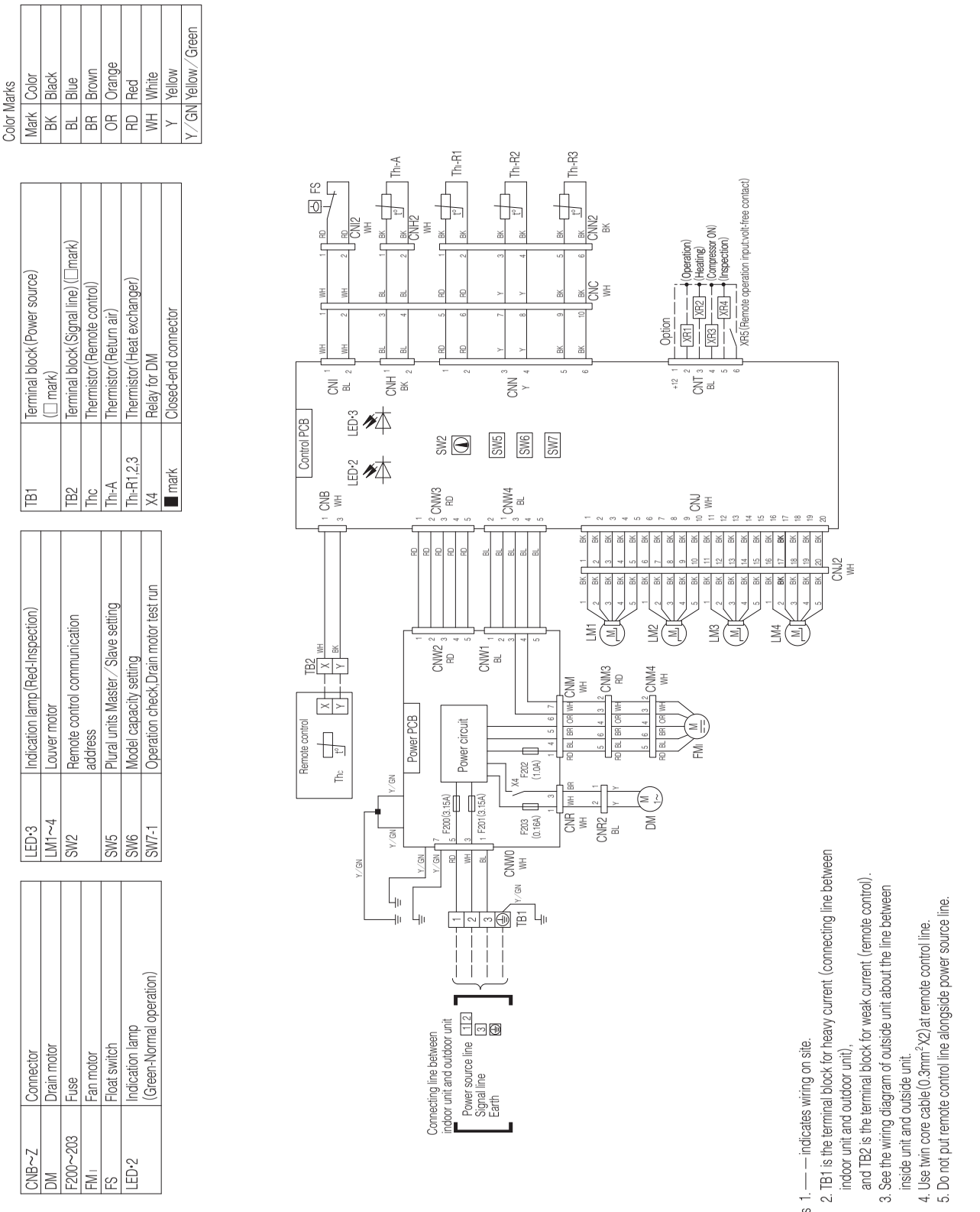


Notes
1. ----indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outside unit about the line between inside unit and outside unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm^2) at remote control line.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.
5. Section 1 (※1) is provided on the models 100 – 140 only.

PJF000Z286 Ⓒ

(b) Ceiling cassette-4 way compact type (FDTC)

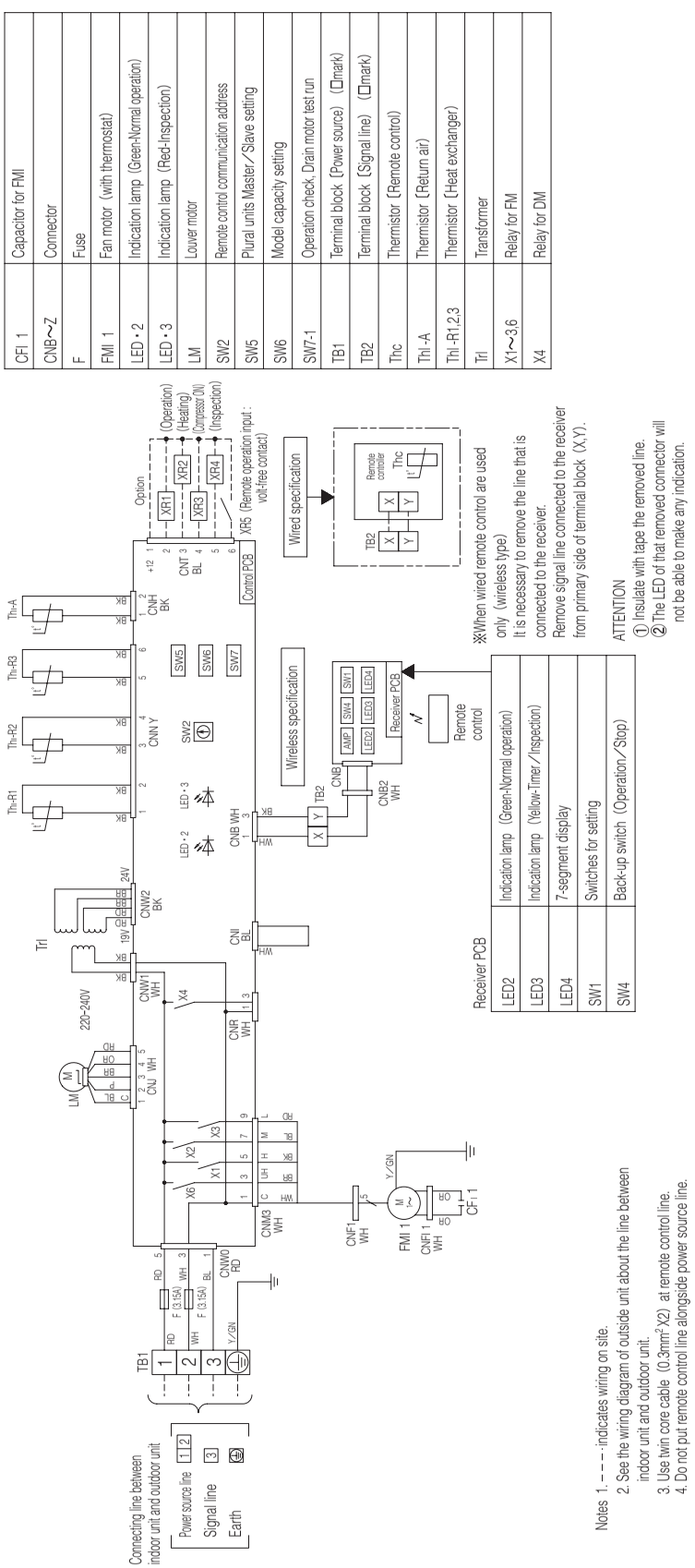
Models FDTC50VF, 60VF



PJA003Z340 D

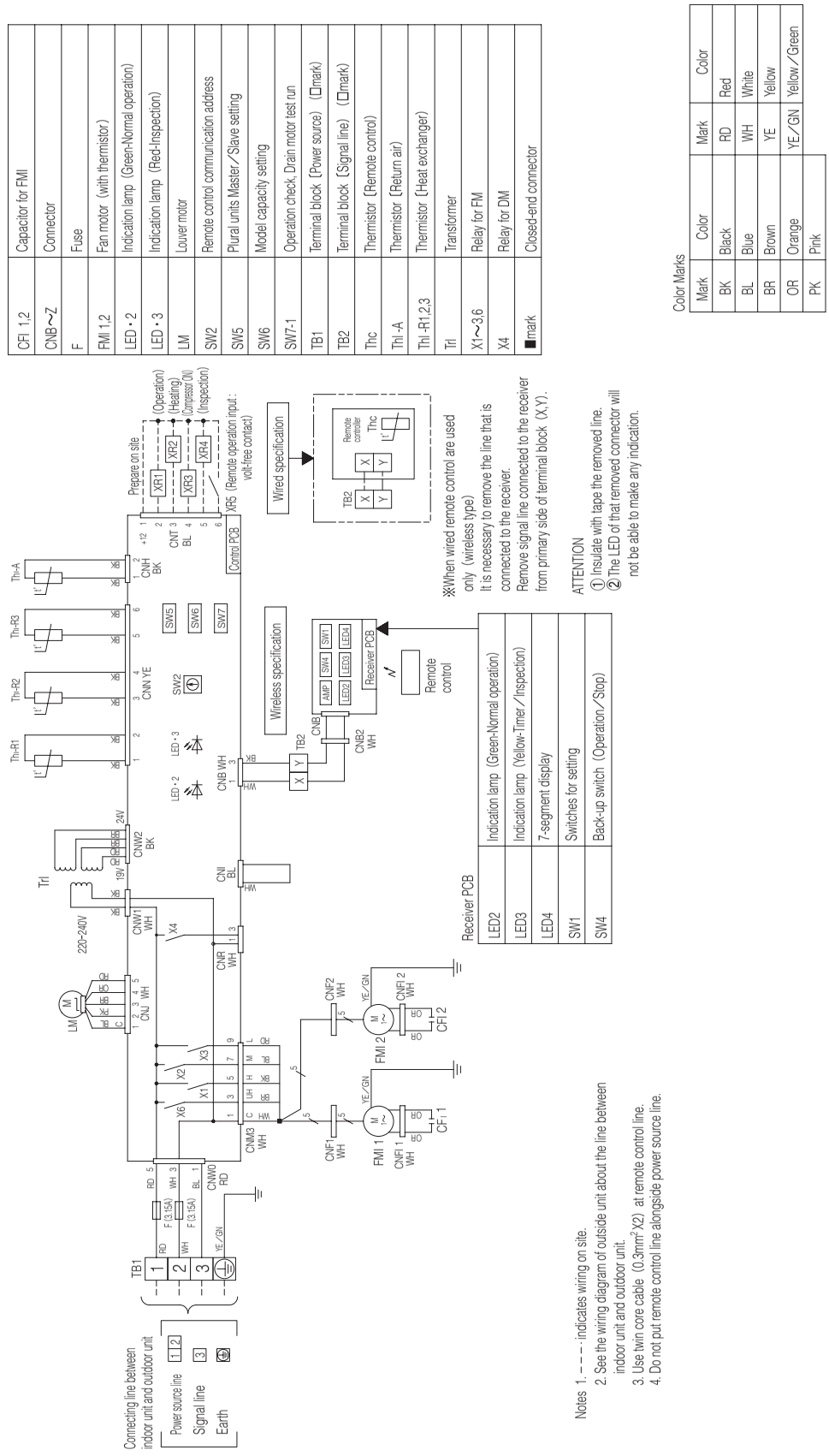
(c) Ceiling suspended type (FDEN)

Model FDEN50VF



PFA003Z819C

Models FDEN60VF, 71VF1, 100VF1, 125VF



PFA003Z820F

(d) Duct connected-High static pressure type (FDU)

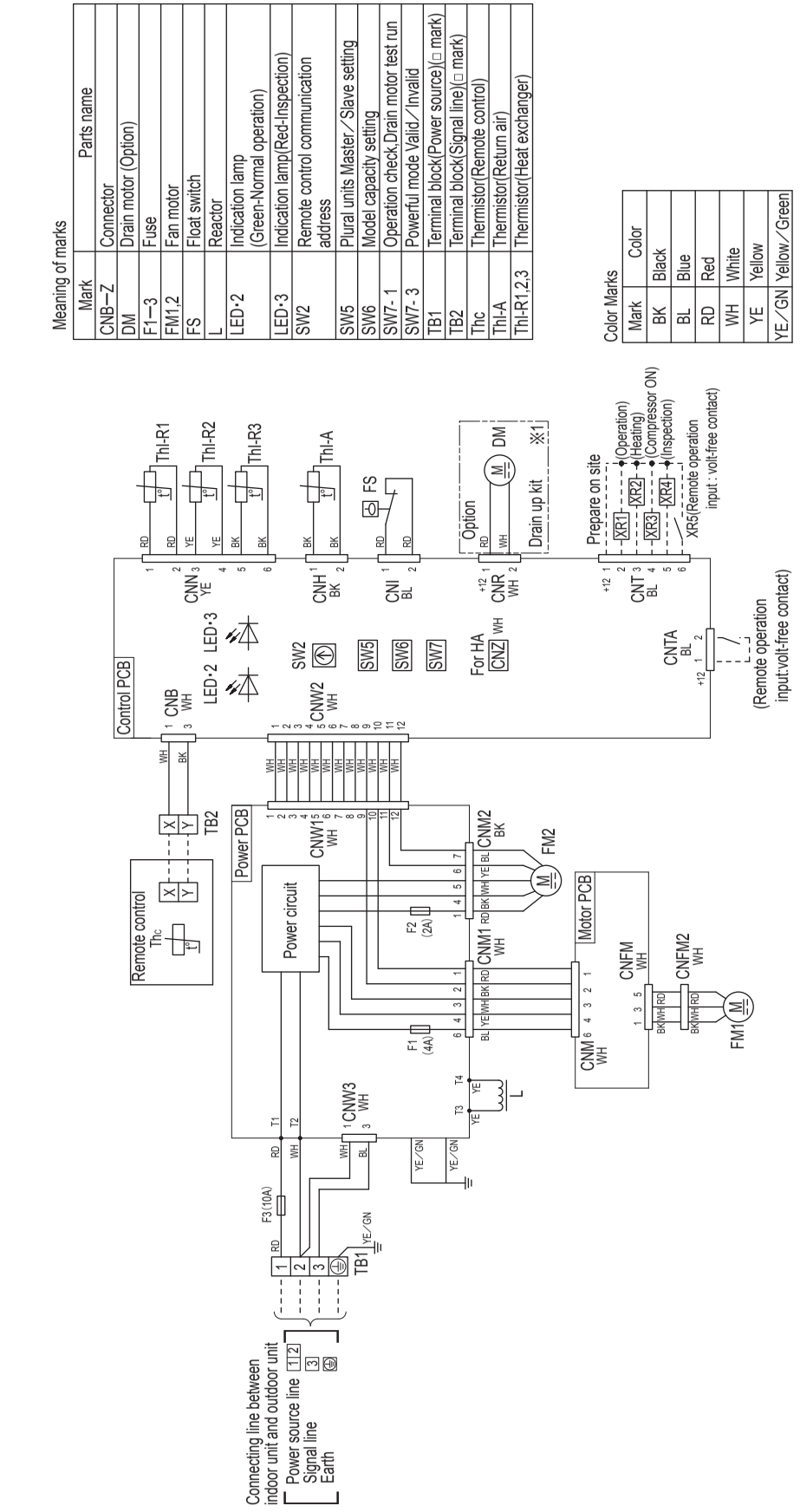
Models FDU200VG, 250VG

Meaning of marks

Mark	Parts name
CNB–Z	Connector
DM	Drain motor (Option)
F1–3	Fuse
FM1,2	Fan motor
FS	Float switch
L	Reactor
LED･2	Indication lamp (Green-Normal operation)
LED･3	Indication lamp(Red-Inspection)
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master／Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7- 1	Operation check,Drain motor test run
SW7- 3	Powerful mode Valid／Invalid
TB1	Terminal block(Power source)(□ mark)
TB2	Terminal block(Signal line)(□ mark)
Thc	Thermistor(Remote control)
Thl-A	Thermistor(Return air)
Thl-R1,2,3	Thermistor(Heat exchanger)

Color Marks

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YE／GN	Yellow／Green



Notes 1. - - - - indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outside unit about the line between inside unit and outside unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm²X2) at remote control line.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.
5. Circuit option in —— - —— (※1) is not included as standard from factory.
This circuit is an option when using drain up kit.

PJG000Z288

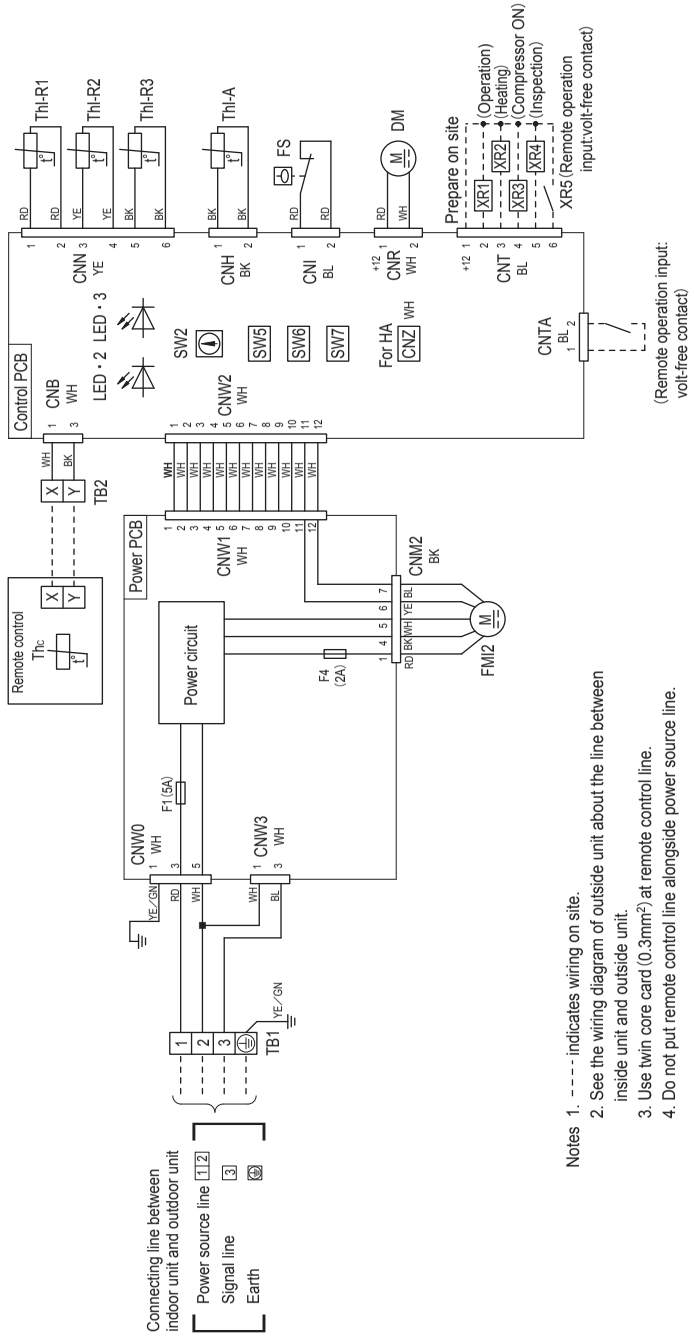
(e) Duct connected-Low/Middle static pressure type (FDUM)

Model FDUM71VF1

CNB~Z	Connector
DM	Drain motor
F1,4	Fuse
FMI2	Fan motor (with thermostat)
FS	Float switch
LED・2	Indication lamp (Green-Normal operation)
LED・3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master／Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check, Drain motor test run
SW7-3	Powerful mode Valid／Invalid
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□mark)
Thc	Thermistor (Remote control)
Thl-A	Thermistor (Return air)
Thl-R1,2,3	Thermistor (Heat exchanger)
■mark	Closed-end connector

Color Marks

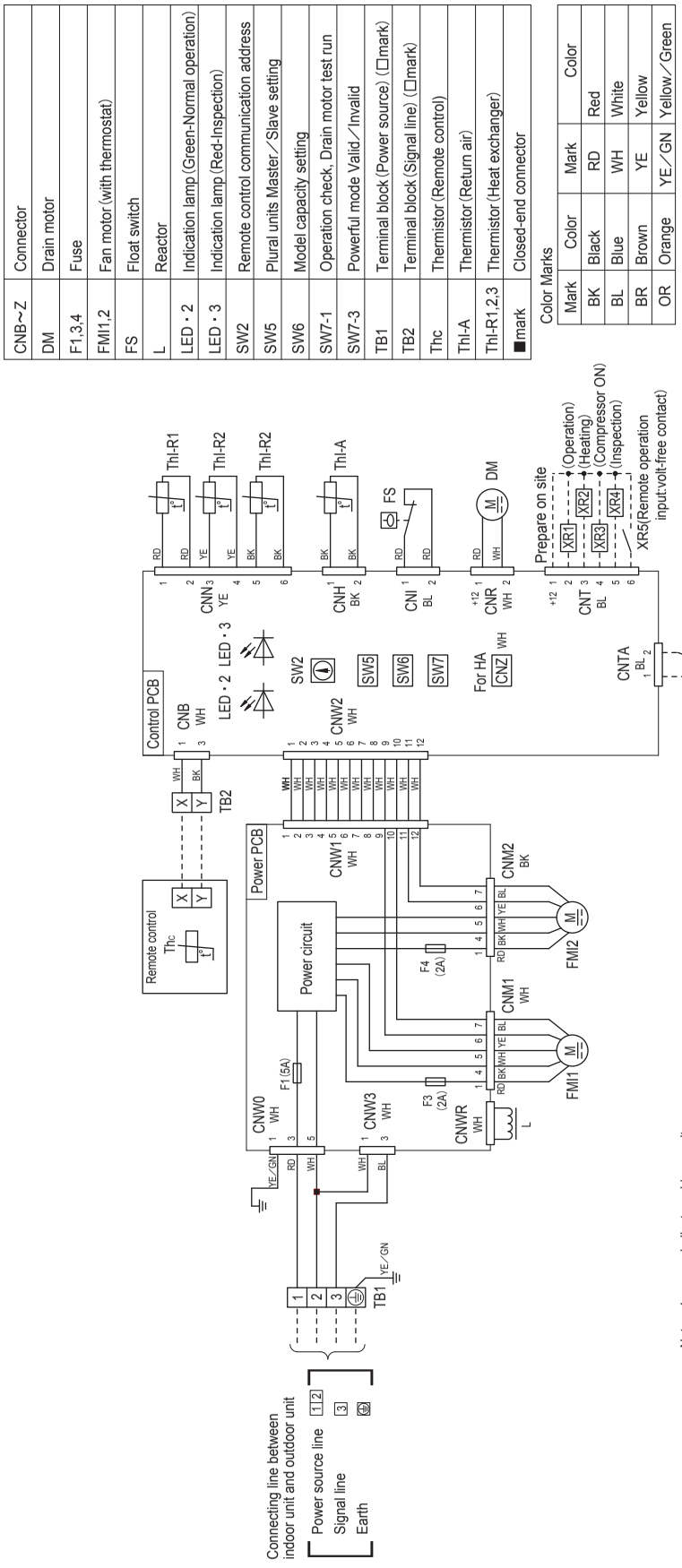
Mark	Color	Mark	Color
BK	Black	RD	Red
BL	Blue	WH	White
BR	Brown	YE	Yellow
OR	Orange	YE／GN	Yellow／Green



Notes 1. - - - - indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outside unit about the line between inside unit and outside unit.
3. Use twin core card (0.3mm²) at remote control line.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.

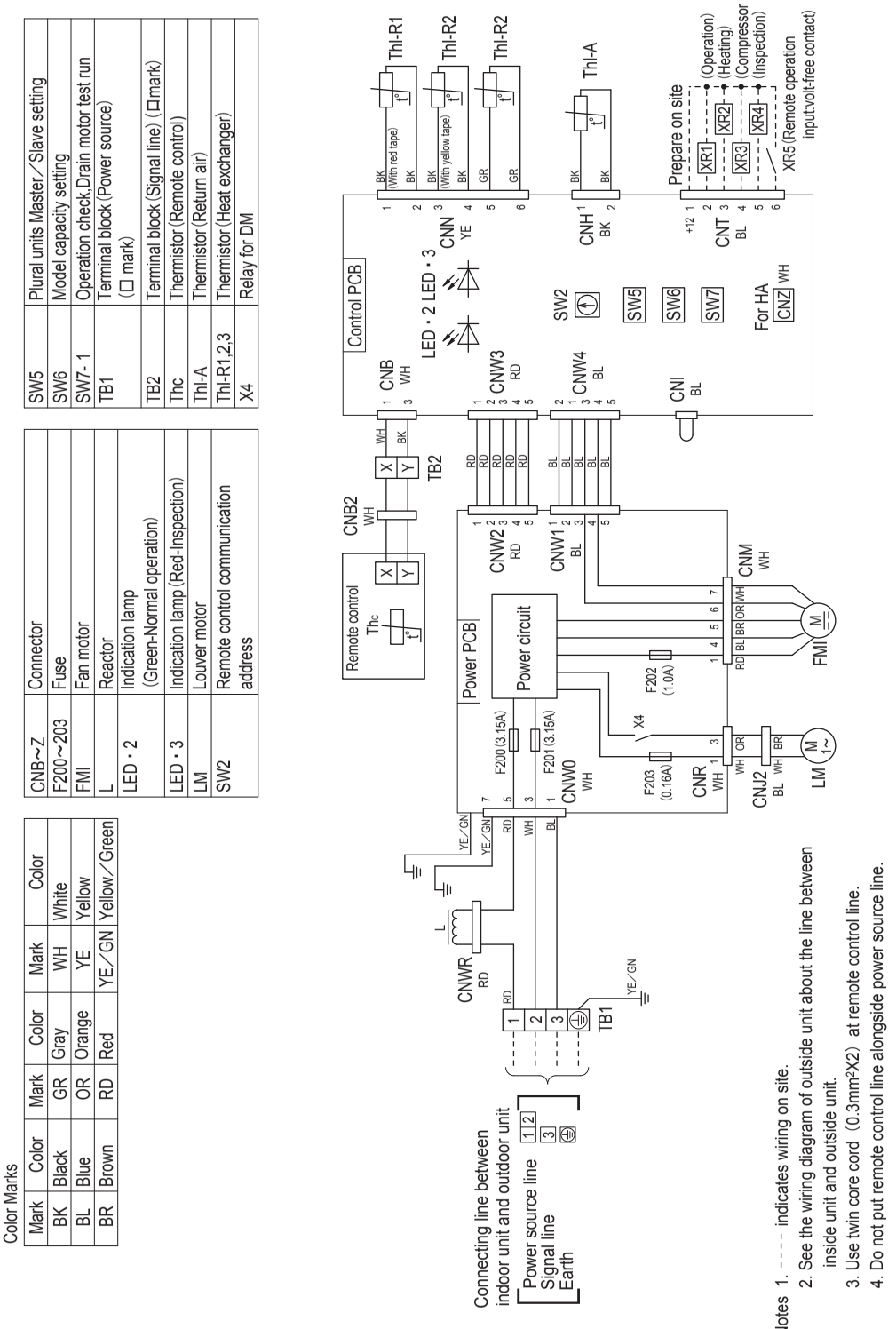
PJG000Z028 B

Models FDUM100VF1, 125VF



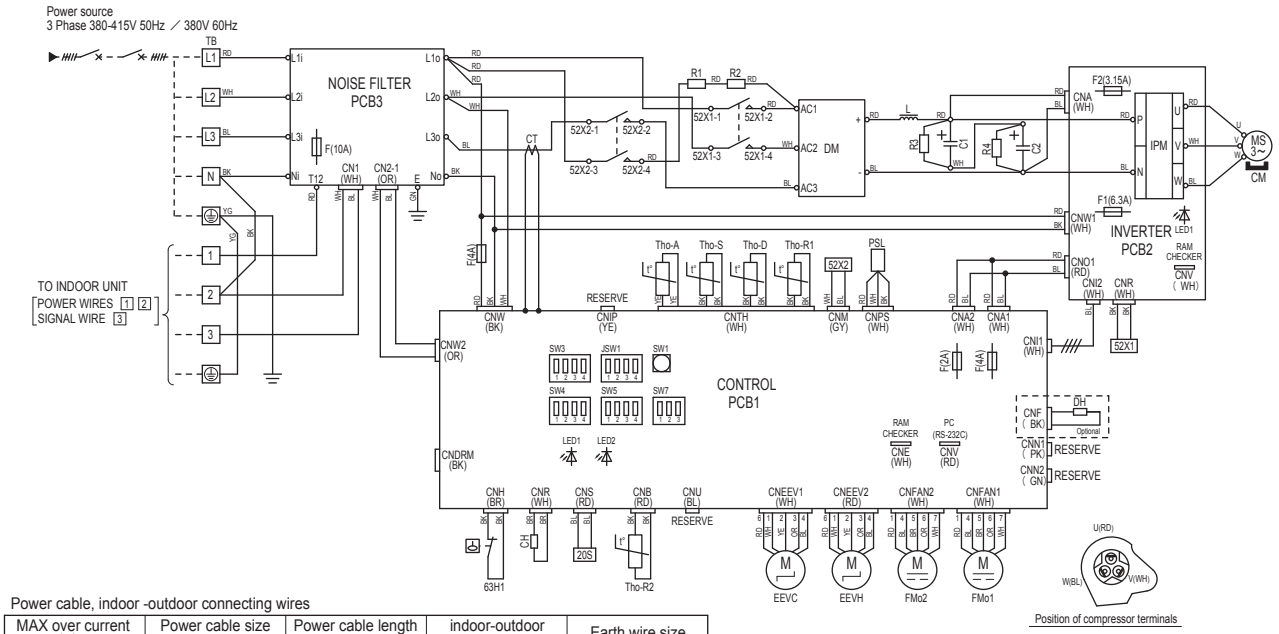
PJG000Z029 B

(f) Floor standing type (FDF)
Models FDF100VD1, 125VD



PGA000Z783 A

(2) Outdoor units
Model FDC200VSA



Meaning of marks

Mark	Parts name
CH	Crankcase heater
CM	Compressor motor
CNA－Z	Connector
CT	Current sensor
DH	Drain pan heater
DM	Diode module
F	Fuse
FMo1,2	Fan motor
IPM	Intelligent power module
L	Reactor
LED1	Indication lamp (GREEN)
LED2	Indication lamp (RED)
PSL	Low pressure sensor
EEVC	Expansion valve for cooling
EEVH	Expansion valve for heating
SW1	Pump down switch
SW3-5, 7	Local setting switch
TB	Terminal block
Tho-A	Thermistor (Outdoor air temp.)
Tho- D	Thermistor (Discharge pipe temp.)
Tho- R1, R2	Thermistor (Heat exchanger temp.)
Tho- S	Thermistor (Suction pipe temp.)
20S	Solenoid coil for 4 way valve
52X1, 2	Relay
63H1	High pressure switch

Power cable, indoor -outdoor connecting wires

MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm^2)	Power cable length (m)	indoor-outdoor wire size x number	Earth wire size
20	5.5	54	ϕ 1.6mm x 3	ϕ 1.6mm

※At the connection with FDU indoor unit.

MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm^2)	Power cable length (m)	indoor-outdoor wire size x number	Earth wire size
25	5.5	43	ϕ 1.6mm x 3	ϕ 1.6mm

※At the connection with FDUM indoor unit.

MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm^2)	Power cable length (m)	indoor-outdoor wire size x number	Earth wire size
22	5.5	49	ϕ 1.6mm x 3	ϕ 1.6mm

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear of Circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

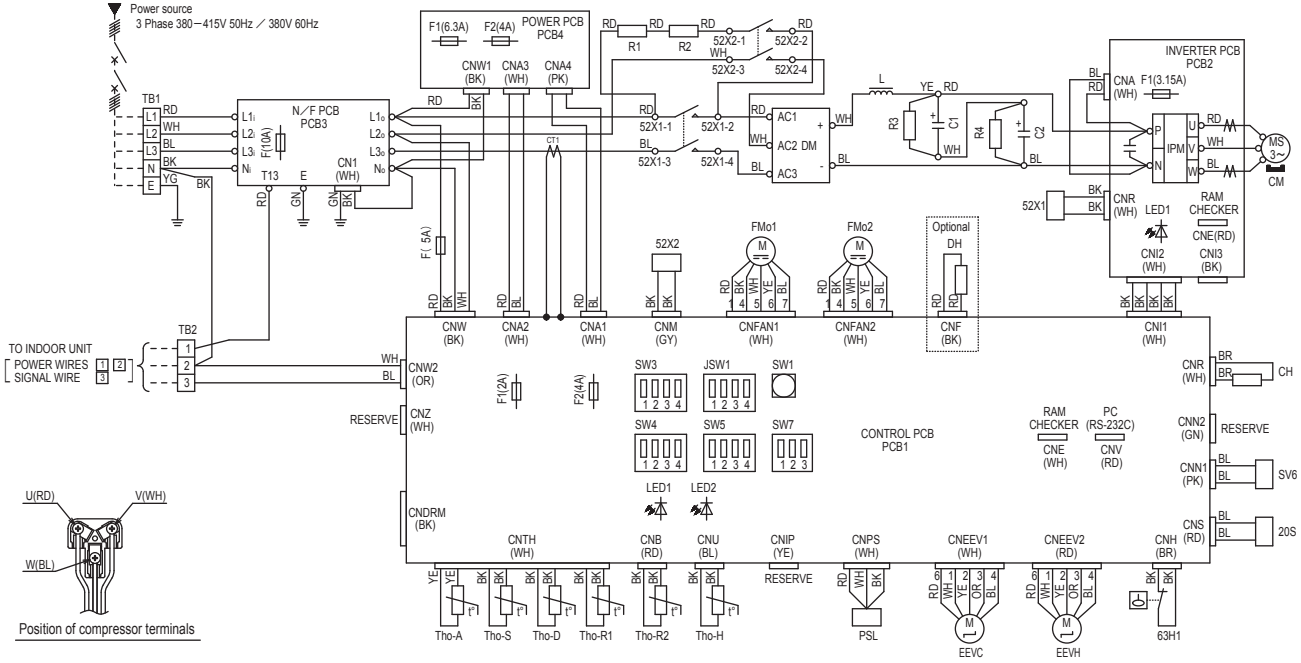
Local setting switch SW3（ Set up at shipment OFF）

SW3-1	Defrost control change	The defrosting operation interval becomes shorter by turning ON this switch. This switch should be turned ON in the area where outside temperature becomes below the freezing point.
SW3-2	Snow guard fan control	When this switch is turned ON, the outdoor unit fan will run for 30 seconds in every 10 minutes, when outdoor temperature falls to 3℃ or lower and the compressor is not running when the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.
SW3-3,4	Trial operation	Method of trial operation ① Trial operation can be performed by using SW3-3,4. ② Compressor will be in the operation when SW3-3 is ON. ③ Cooling trial operation will be performed when SW3-4 is OFF, and heating trial operation when SW3-4 is ON. ④ Be sure to turn OFF SW3-3 after the trial operation is finished.

Color mark

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
GN	Green
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow/Green
GY	Gray
PK	Pink

PCA001Z769



Meaning of marks

Mark	Parts name
CH	Crankcase heater
CM	Compressor motor
CNA–Z	Connector
CT	Current sensor
DH	Drain pan heater
DM	Diode module
F	Fuse
FMo1,2	Fan motor
IPM	Intelligent power module
L	Reactor
LED1	Indication lamp (GREEN)
LED2	Indication lamp (RED)
PSL	Low pressure sensor
EEVC	Expansion valve for cooling
EEVH	Expansion valve for heating
SW1	Pump down switch
SW3~5, 7	Local setting switch
TB	Terminal block
Tho-A	Thermistor (Outdoor air temp.)
Tho- D	Thermistor (Discharge pipe temp.)
Tho- R 1,R2	Thermistor (Heat exchanger temp.)
Tho-H	Thermistor (Comp. under dome temp.)
Tho-S	Thermistor (Suction pipe temp.)
20S	Solenoid coil for 4 way valve
SV6	Solenoid coil for 2 way valve
52X1, 2	Relay
63H1	High pressure switch

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm^2)	Power cable length (m)	indoor-outdoor wire size x number	Earth wire size
21	5.5	51	ϕ1.6mm x 3	ϕ1.6mm

※At the connection with FDU indoor unit.

MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm^2)	Power cable length (m)	indoor-outdoor wire size x number	Earth wire size
27	5.5	40	ϕ1.6mm x 3	ϕ1.6mm

※At the connection with FDUM indoor unit.

MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm^2)	Power cable length (m)	indoor-outdoor wire size x number	Earth wire size
24	5.5	45	ϕ1.6mm x 3	ϕ1.6mm

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear of Circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

Local setting switch SW3（Set up at shipment OFF）

SW3-1	Defrost control change	The defrosting operation interval becomes shorter by turning ON this switch. This switch should be turned ON in the area where outside temperature becomes below the freezing point.
SW3-2	Snow guard fan control	When this switch is turned ON, the outdoor unit fan will run for 30 seconds in every 10 minutes, when outdoor temperature falls to 3℃ or lower and the compressor is not running when the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.
SW3-3,4	Trial operation	Method of trial operation ① Trial operation can be performed by using SW3-3,4. ② Compressor will be in the operation when SW3-3 is ON. ③ Cooling trial operation will be performed when SW3-4 is OFF, and heating trial operation when SW3-4 is ON. ④ Be sure to turn OFF SW3-3 after the trial operation is finished.

Color mark

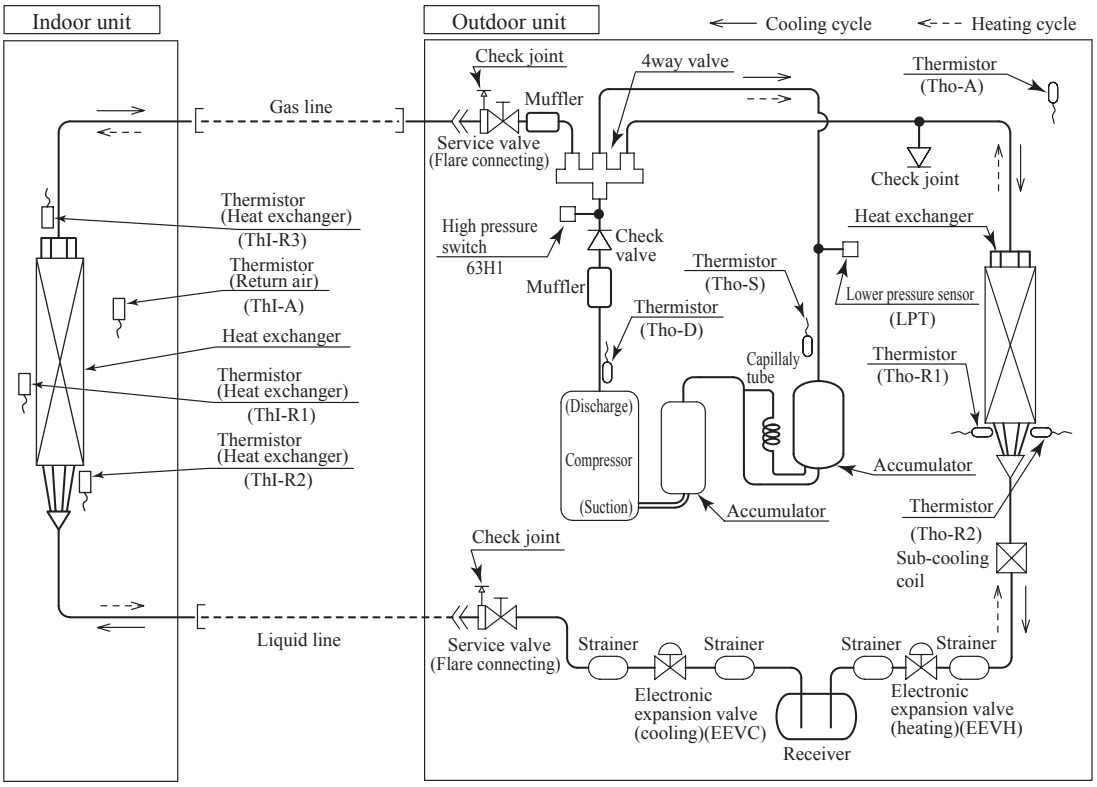
Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
GN	Green
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow／Green
GY	Gray
PK	Pink

PCB003Z866

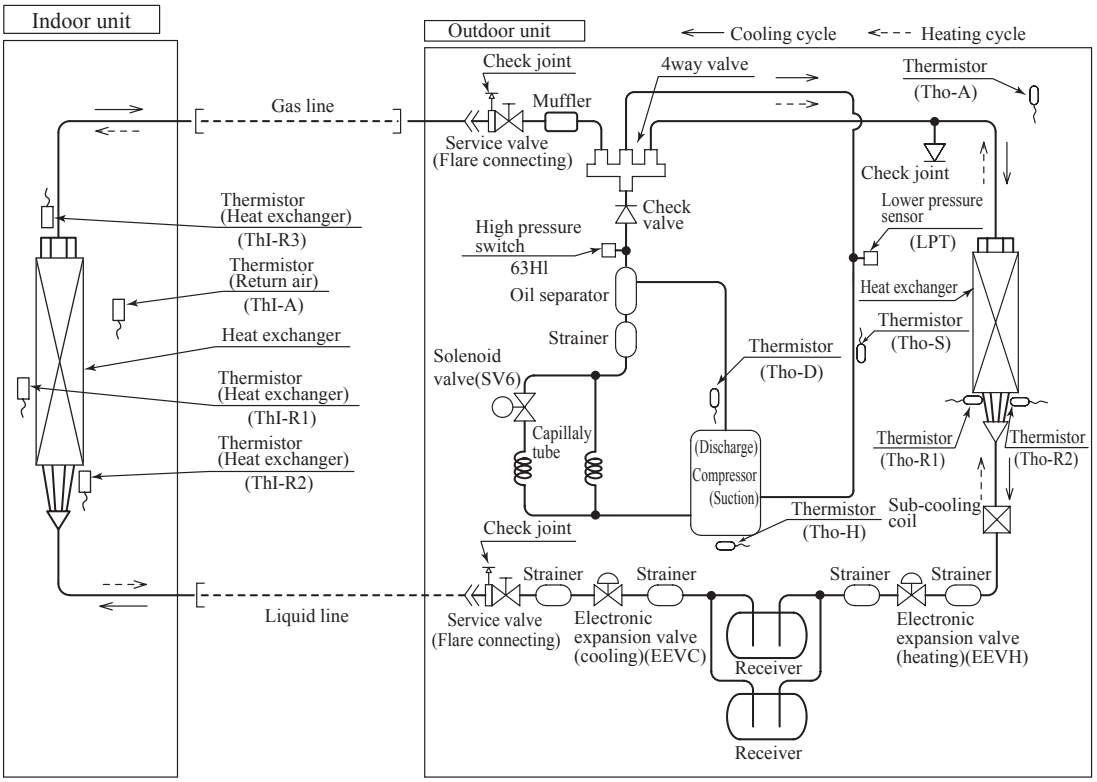
4. PIPING SYSTEM

(1) Single type

Model 200



Model 250

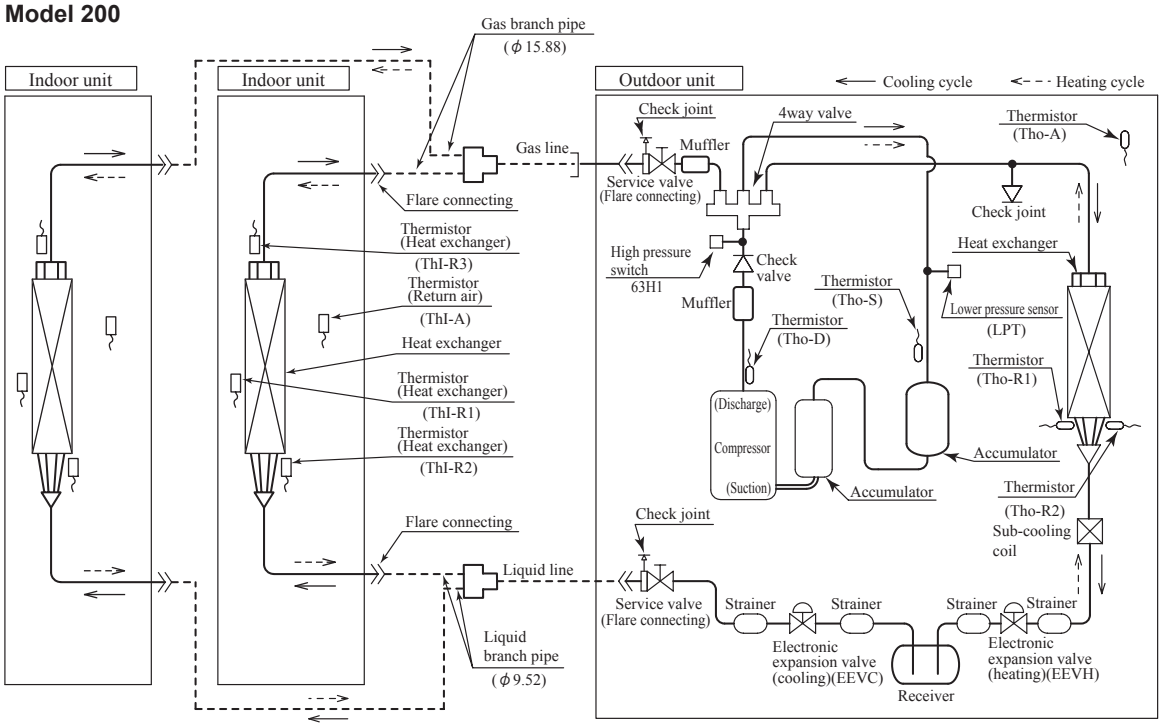


●**Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size**

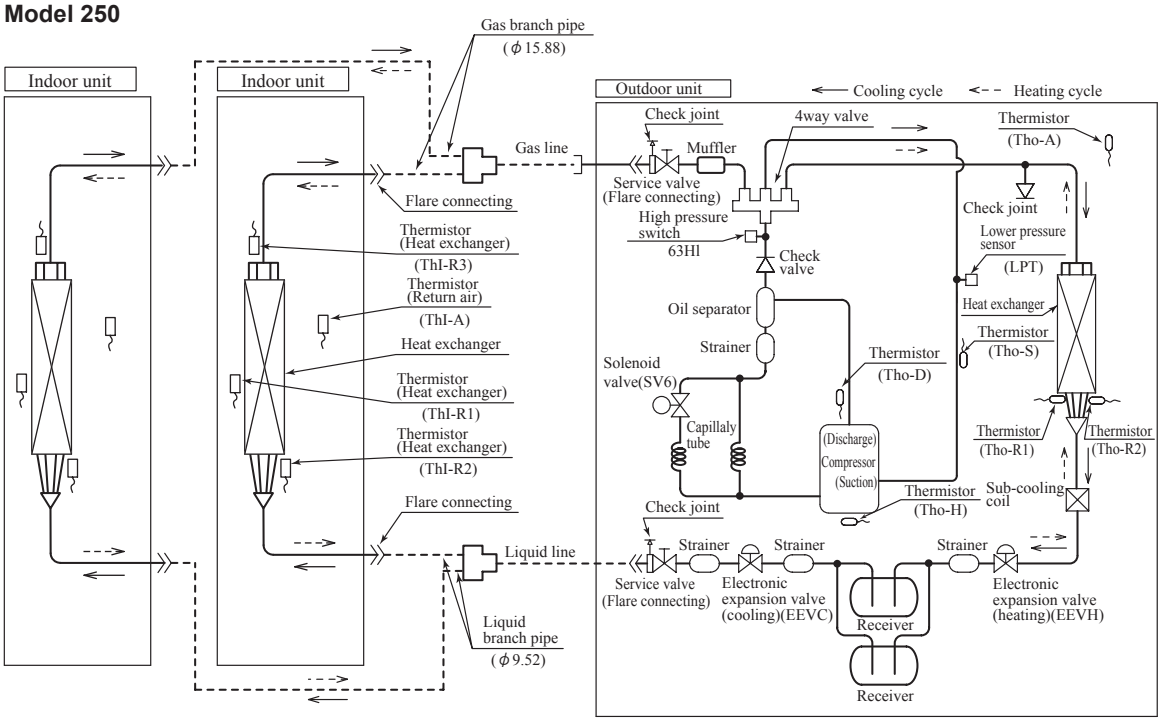
Model	Gas line	Liquid line
200	In case of ϕ22.22 : 35m In case of ϕ25.4 or ϕ28.58 : 70m	In case of ϕ9.52 : 40m In case of ϕ12.7 : 70m
250		In case of ϕ12.7 : 70m

(2) Twin type

Model 200



Model 250

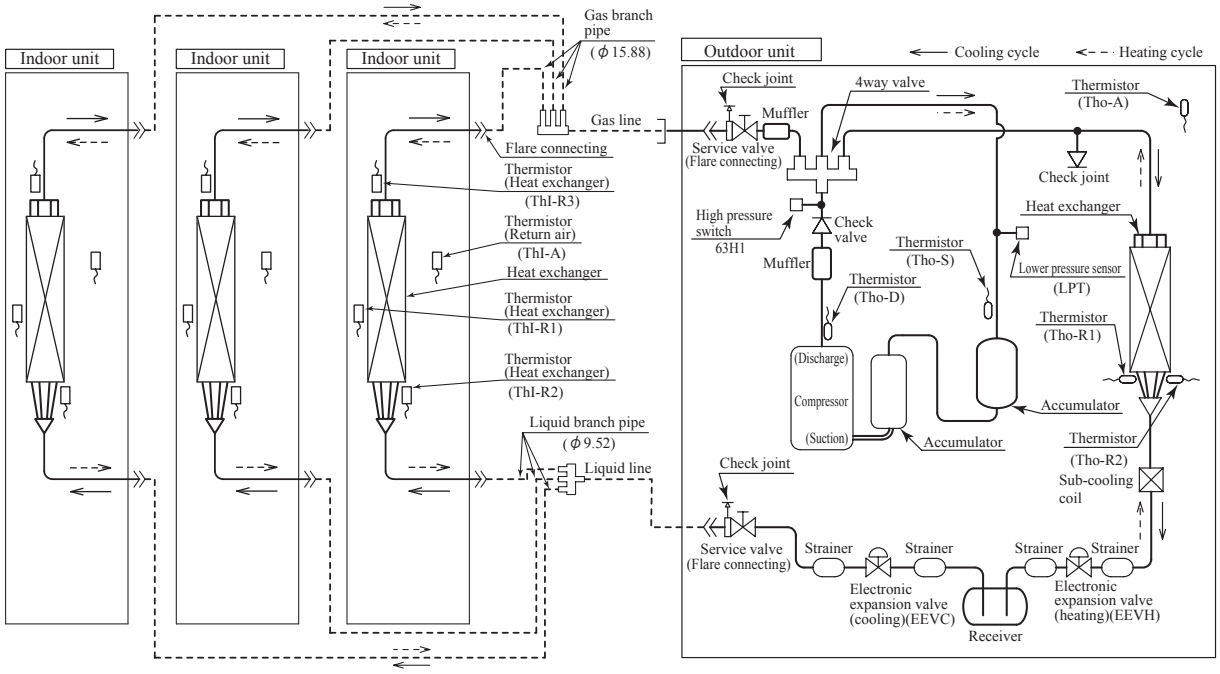


●**Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size**

Model	Gas line	Liquid line
200	In case of φ22.22 : 35m In case of φ25.4 or φ28.58 : 70m	In case of φ9.52 : 40m In case of φ12.7 : 70m
250		In case of φ12.7 : 70m

(3) Triple type

Model 200

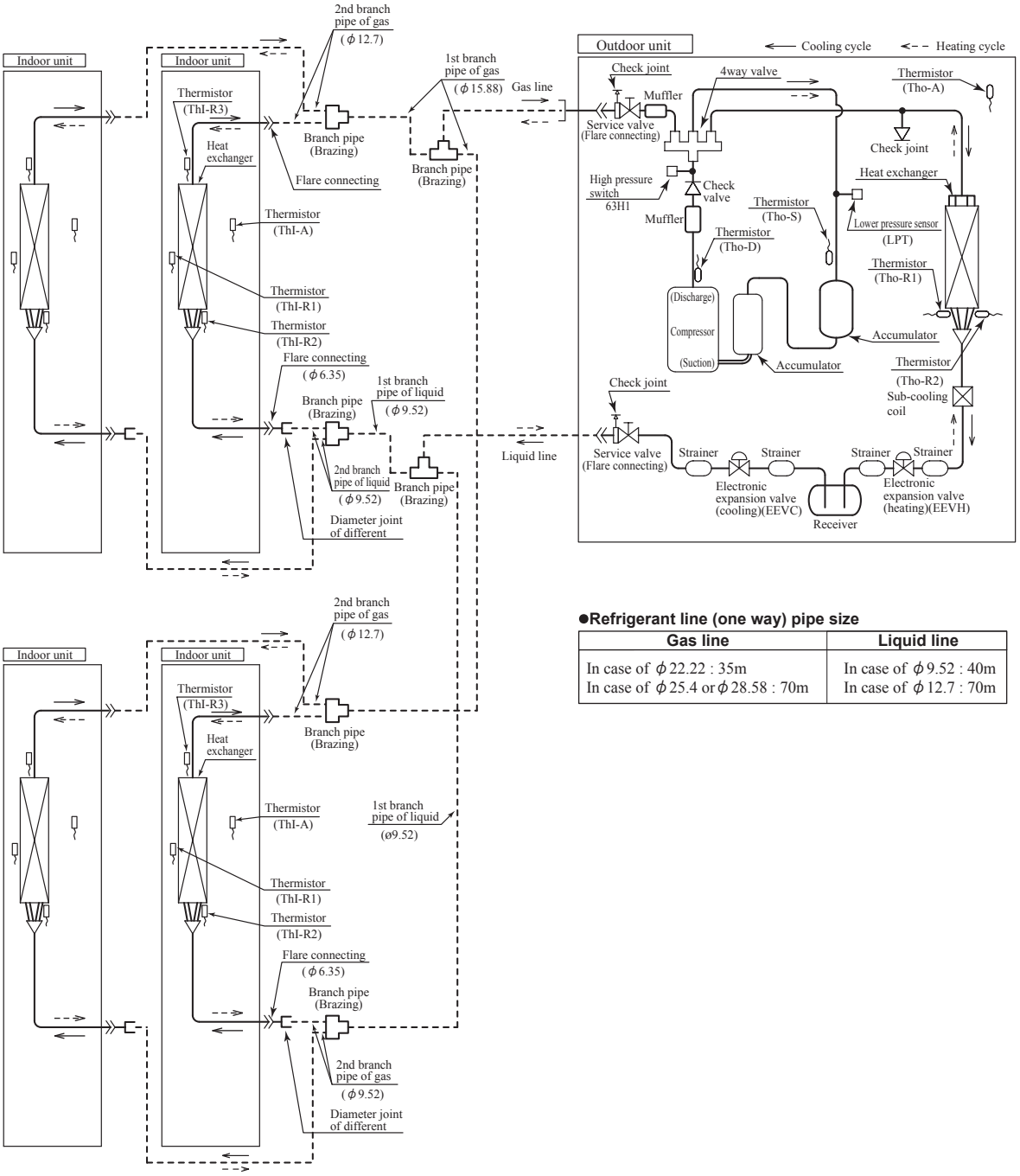


●**Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size**

Gas line	Liquid line
In case of φ22.22 : 35m In case of φ25.4 or φ28.58 : 70m	In case of φ9.52 : 40m In case of φ12.7 : 70m

(4) Double twin type

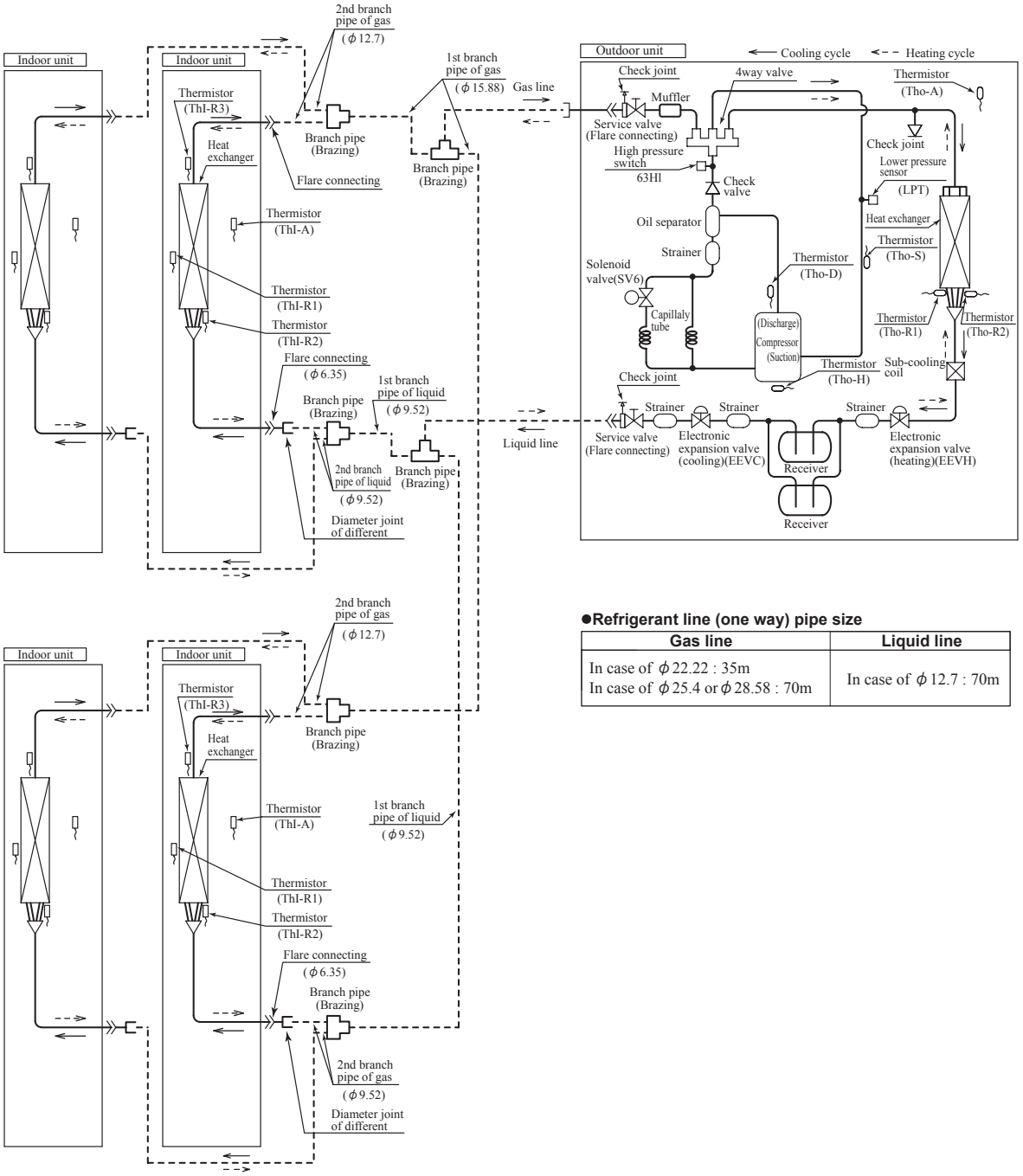
Model 200



●Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size

Gas line	Liquid line
In case of φ22.22 : 35m In case of φ25.4 or φ28.58 : 70m	In case of φ9.52 : 40m In case of φ12.7 : 70m

Model 250



●Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size

Gas line	Liquid line
In case of φ22.22 : 35m In case of φ25.4 or φ28.58 : 70m	In case of φ12.7 : 70m

PJF012D016G

5. APPLICATION DATA

5.1 Installation of indoor unit

(1) Ceiling cassette-4 way type (FDT)

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to the page158. For remote control installation, refer to the page166. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to the page180.
This unit must always be used with the panel.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING: Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. | ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠ WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect performance or function and etc..
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

①Before installation

- Install correctly according to the installation manual.
- Confirm the following points:
  - ○Unit type/Power source specification
  - ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts
  - ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For unit hanging		For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe			
Flat washer (M10)	Level gauge	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover(small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
								
8	1	1	1	4	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For unit hanging and adjustment	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid tube	For pipe cover fixing	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.

This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above.
If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.

- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

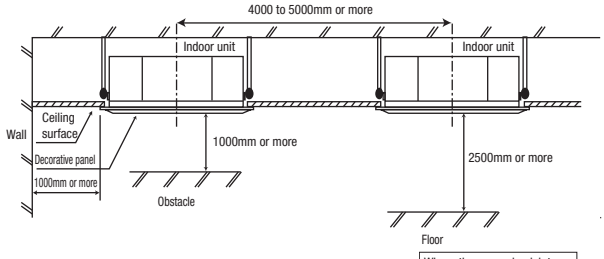
②Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

③If there are 2 units of wireless type, keep them away for more than 6m to avoid malfunction due to cross communication.

④When plural indoor units are installed nearby, keep them away for more than 4 to 5m.

Space for installation and service

- When it is not possible to keep enough space between indoor unit and wall or between indoor units, close the air supply port where it is not possible to keep space and confirm there is no short circuit of airflow.
- Install the indoor unit at a height of more than 2.5m above the floor.



Where there are pipe joints on the way of embedded piping, provide adequate openings for inspection of the joints.

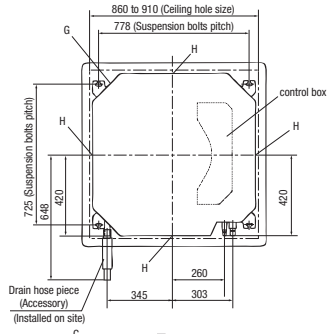
Set blow-out pattern

- Select the most proper number of blow-out air supply port direction from 4 way, 3 way or 2 way according to the shape of the room and installation position. (1 way is not available.)
- If it is necessary to change the number of air supply port, prepare the covering materials. (sold as accessory)
- Instruct the user not to use low fan speed when 2way or 3way air supply is used.
- Do not use 2way air supply port under high temperature and humidity environment. (Otherwise it could cause condensation and leakage of water.)
- It is possible to set the airflow direction port by port independently. Refer to tne user's manual for details.

③Preparation before installation

- If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.
  - ○For grid ceiling
    When suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
  - ○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.
    When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
- Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10 or M8) on site.

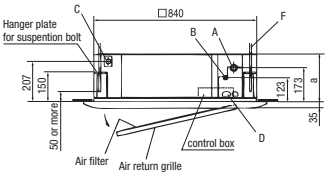
Ceiling opening, Suspension bolts pitch, Pipe position

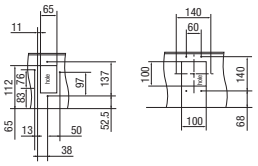


(mm)

Series	Type	a
Single Split (PAC) series	40 to 71 type	246
	100 to 140 type	298
VRF (KX) series	28 to 71 type	246
	90 to 160 type	298

Symbol	
A	Gas piping
B	Liquid piping
C	Drain piping
D	Hole for wiring
F	Suspension bolts
G	Outside air opening for ducting
H	Air outlet opening for ducting



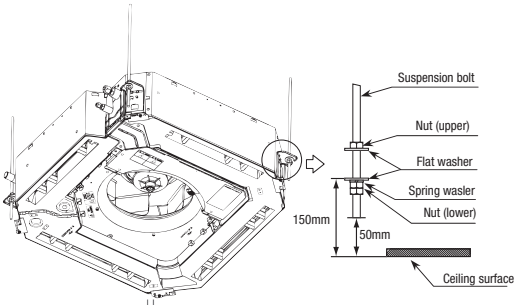


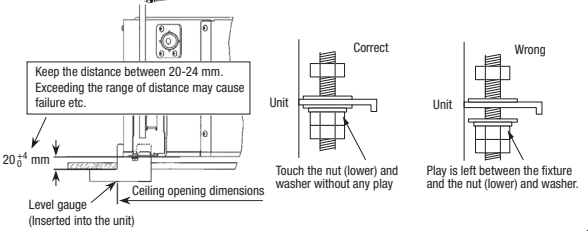
G H

④Installation of indoor unit

Work procedure

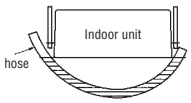
1. Prepare a ceiling hole with the size of from 860mm × 860mm to 910mm × 910mm referring to the template attached in the package.
2. Arrange the suspension bolt at the right position (725mm×778mm).
3. Make sure to use four suspension bolts and fix them so as to be able to hold 500N load.
4. Ensure that the lower end of the suspension bolt should be 50mm above the ceiling plane. Temporarily put the four lower nuts 150mm above the ceiling plane and the upper nuts on distant place from the lower nuts in order not to obstruct hanging the indoor unit or adjust the indoor unit position, and then hang the indoor unit.
5. Adjust the indoor unit position after hanging it by inserting the level gauge attached on the package into the air supply port and checking if the gap between the ceiling plane and the indoor unit is appropriate. In order to adjust the indoor unit position, adjust the lower nuts while the upper nuts are put on distant place. Confirm there is no backlash between the hanger plate for suspension bolt and the lower nut and washer.





④Installation of indoor unit (continued)

6. Make sure to install the indoor unit horizontally. Confirm the levelness of the indoor unit with a level gauge or transparent hose filled with water. Keep the height difference at both ends of the indoor unit within 3mm.
7. Tighten four upper nuts and fix the unit after height and levelness adjustment.



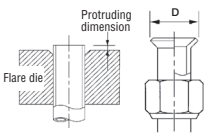
Caution

- ●Do not adjust the height by adjusting upper nuts. It will cause unexpected stress on the indoor unit and it will lead to deformation of the unit, failure of attaching a panel, and generating noise from the fan.
- ●Make sure to install the indoor unit horizontally and set the gap between the unit underside and the ceiling plane properly. Improper installation may cause air leakage, dew condensation, water leakage and noise.
- ●Even after decorative panel attached, still the unit height can be adjusted finely. Refer to the installation manual for decorative panel for details.
- ●Make sure there is no gap between decoration panel and ceiling surface, and between decoration panel and the indoor unit. The gap may cause air leakage, dew condensation and water leakage.
- ●In case decorative panel is not installed at the same time, or ceiling material is installed after the unit installed, put the cardboard template for installation attached on the package (packing material of cardboard box) on the bottom of the unit in order to avoid dust coming into the indoor unit.

⑤Refrigerant pipe

Caution

- ●Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product or a nut compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
  Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.
  1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the one attached to the unit or compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
  2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R410A.



Pipe dia. d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N·m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 ~ 0.5	0.7 ~ 1.3	8.9 ~ 9.1	14 ~ 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 ~ 13.2	34 ~ 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 ~ 16.6	49 ~ 61
15.88	1			19.3 ~ 19.7	68 ~ 82
19.05	1.2			23.6 ~ 24.0	100 ~ 120

- ●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation.
  In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
- ●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
  Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
- ●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
- ●Use special tools for R410A refrigerant.

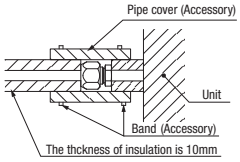
Work procedure

1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
   ※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
   ● Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
   ※Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
   ※Do a flare connection as follows:
   ● Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   ● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table above. Make sure to hold the pipe on the indoor unit securely by a spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   ● Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
   ※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
   ● Use heat-resistant (120 °C or more) insulations on the gas side pipes.
   ● In case of using at high humidity condition, reinforce insulation of refrigerant pipes.
   Surface of insulation may cause dew condition or water dropping, if insulations are not reinfoced.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

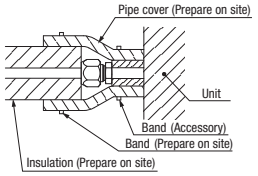
⑤Refrigerant pipe (continued)

Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion.
Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.

<The case of using thicness of insulation is 10mm>



<The case of using reinfoced insulation>



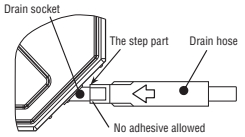
⑥Drain pipe

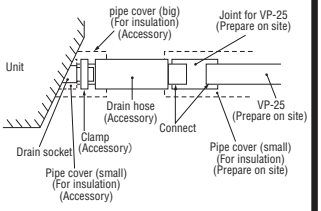
Caution

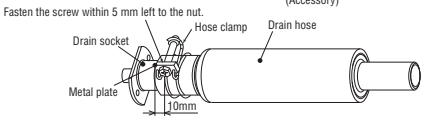
- ● Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- ● Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- ● Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- ● Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- ● Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- ● Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

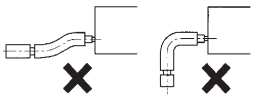
1. Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.
   Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw within 5mm left to the nut.
   ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.



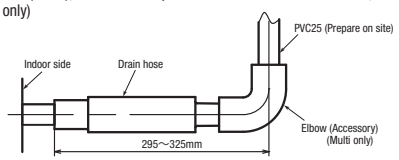




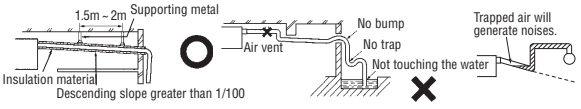
2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP-25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP-25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP-25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   ● Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose.
   It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   ● The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.



   ●As for drain pipe, apply VP25 (OD32).
   If apply PVC25 (OD25), connect the expanded connector to the drain hose, with adhesive. (Multi unit only)

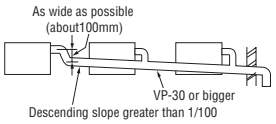


3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   ●Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   ●Do nt set up air vent.



⑥Drain pipe (continued)

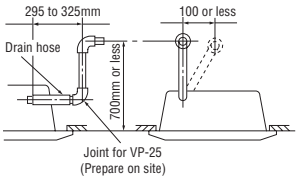
●When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP-30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.



4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   ● Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.
   ※After drainage test implementation, cover the drain socket part with pipe cover (small size), then use the pipe cover (big size) to cover the pipe cover (small size), clamps and part of the drain hose, and fix and wrap it with tapes to wrap and make joint part gapless.

Drain up

● The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 700mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.

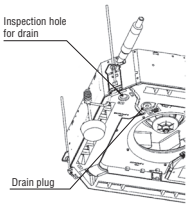


Drain test

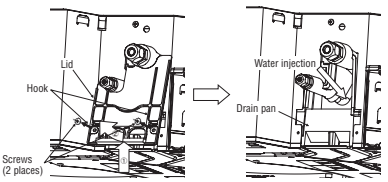
● After installation of drain pipe, make sure that drain system work in good condition and no water leakage from joint and drain pan. Check if the motor sound of drain pump is normal or not.
● Do drain test even if installation of heating season.
● For new building cases, make sure to complete the test before hanging the ceiling.

1. Fill water of approx. 1,000 cc in the drain pan of the main unit. Take care not to wet electrical equipment such as the drain pump, etc.
   Inject water through the blow outlet using a feed water pump, or the like, or through the refrigerant pipe joint.

●When injecting water through the blow outlet



●When removing the lid to inject water through the refrigerant joint
(1) Remove screws at 2 places.
(2) While pressing the lid in the direction ① , pull and remove the lid in the direction ② .
(Remove the lid by releasing the catches from the hooks in the figure.)



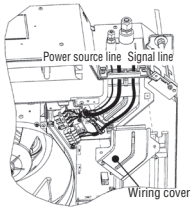
2. Make sure that water is drained out properly and there is no water leakage from any joints of the drain pipe at the test.
   Confirm that the water is properly drained out while the drain motor is operating. At the drain socket (transparent), it is possible to check if the water is drained out properly.
3. Unplug the drain plug on the indoor unit to remove remaining water on the drain pan after the test, and re-plug it. And insulate the drain pipe properly finally.

Drain pump operation

○In case electrical wiring work finished
Drain pump can be operated by remote control (wired).
For the operation method, refer to Operation for drain pump in the installation manual for wiring work.
○In case electrical wiring work not finished
Drain pump will run continuously when the dip switch"SW7-1" on the indoor unit PCB is turned ON, the Connector CNB is disconnected, and then the power source (230VAC on the terminal block ① and ②) is turned ON.
Make sure to turn OFF "SW7-1" and reconnect the Connector CNB after the test.

● Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
● Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
● Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
● Be sure to do D type earth work.
● For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the control box (3 screws) and the wiring cover (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and fasten them to terminal block securely.
3. Fix the wiring with clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.

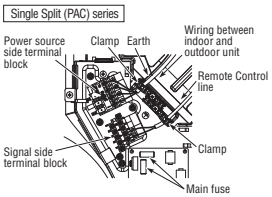


Main fuse specification

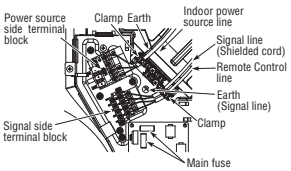
Specification	Port No.
T3.15A L250V	SSA564A149AF

⑦Wiring-out position and wiring connection

Single Split (PAC) series



VRF (KX) series



⑧Panel installation

●Attach the panel on the indoor unit after electrical wiring work.
●Refer to attached manual for panel installation for details.

⑨Check list after installation

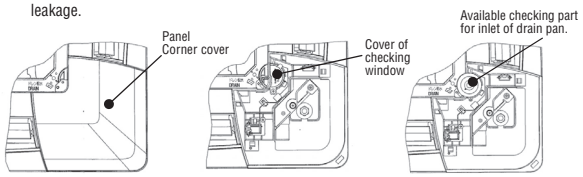
●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if;	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

⑩How to check the dirt of drain pan (Maintenance)

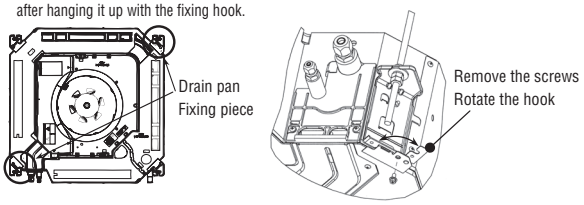
The method of checking the dirt of drain pan

●It is possible to check the dirt for inlet of drain pan without detaching the panel.
（Inspection is not possible when the high efficient filter and option spacer is installed.)
1． Open the air return grille and remove the panel corner cover on drain pan side.
2． Remove the cover of inspection window. (1screw)
3． Check the drain pan from the inspection window.
If the drain pan is very dirty, remove the drain pan and clean it.
4． After checking of the dirty of drain pan, restore the cover of the inspection window securely. Improper restoration of the cover may cause dew condensation and water leakage.



Attention for removing drain pan

●The fixing components have been attached the with drain pan. Pay attention to these components during installation and removing. Take off the hanging hook after removing four screws. During the installation of drain pan, fix the drain pan firmly by using four screws after hanging it up with the fixing hook.



PJF012D003C F

PANEL INSTALLATION MANUAL

Read this manual together with the indoor unit's installation manual.

⚠ WARNING

- **Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal. Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.**
- **Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work. Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.**

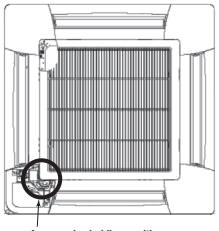
① Before installation

- Follow installation manual carefully, and install the panel properly.
- Check the following items.
  - ○ Accessories

Accessories

Bolt		4 pieces	For panel installation
Strap		4 pieces	For avoiding the corner panel from falling
Screw		4 pieces	For fixing the corner panel

Note: Accessories are laid in the position removing the corner panel.



Accessories holding position

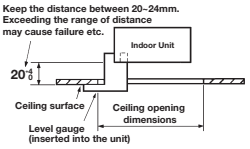
② Checking the indoor unit installation position

- Read this manual together with the air conditioner installation manual carefully.
- Check if the opening size for the indoor unit is correct with the level gauge supplied in the indoor unit.
- Check if the gap between the ceiling plane and the indoor unit is correct by inserting the level gauge into the air outlet port of the indoor unit. (See below drawing)
- Adjust the installation elevation if necessary.

Caution

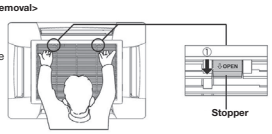
If there is a height difference beyond the design limit between the installation level of the indoor unit and the ceiling plane, the panel may be subject to excessive stress during installation, it may cause distortion and damage.

- The installation level of the indoor unit can be adjusted finely from the opening provided on the corner, even after panel is attached. (Refer to ⑥ Attaching the panel for details.)



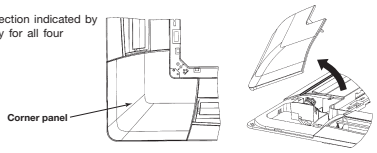
③ Removing the air return grille

1. Hold the stoppers on the air return grille (2 places) toward OPEN direction, open the air return grille.
2. Remove the hooks of the air return grille from the decorative panel while it is in the open position.



④ Removing a corner panel

- Pull the corner panel toward the direction indicated by the arrow and remove it. (Same way for all four corner panels)



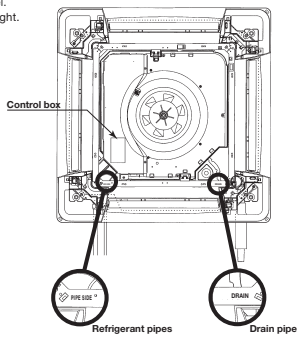
⑤ Orientation of the panel installation

Take note that there is an orientation to install the panel.

- Attach the panel with the orientation shown on the right.
- Align the "PIPE SIDE" mark (on the panel) with the refrigerant pipes on the indoor unit.
- Align the "DRAIN" mark (on the panel) with the drain pipe on the indoor unit.

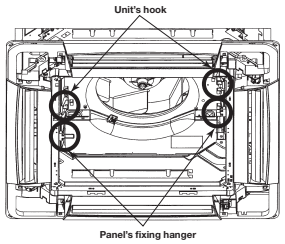
CAUTION

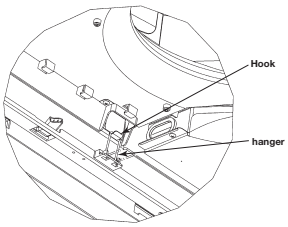
In case the orientation of the panel is not correct, it will lead to air leakage and also it is not possible to connect the louver motor wiring.



⑥ Attaching the panel

1. Temporary attaching
   - Lift up the hanger (2 places) on the panel for temporary support.
   - Hang the panel on the hook on the indoor unit.

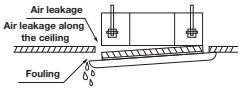




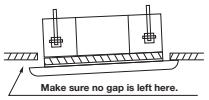
2. Fix the panel on the indoor unit
   - Fasten the panel on the indoor unit with the four bolts supplied with the panel.

Caution

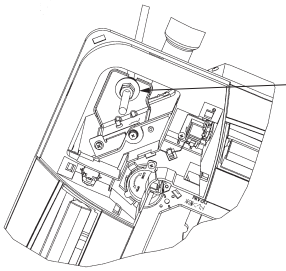
- Improperly tightened hanging bolts can cause the problems listed below, so make sure that you have tightened them securely.



- If there is a gap remaining between the ceiling and the decorative panel even after the hanging bolts are tightened, adjust the installation level of the indoor unit again.



- It is possible to adjust the installation height of the indoor unit with the panel attached as long as there is no influence on the drain pipe inclination and/or the indoor unit levelness.



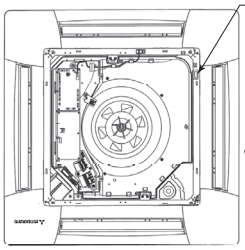
To adjust finely, please turn a nut fastening the indoor unit using a spanner or similar tool from the opening on the corner.

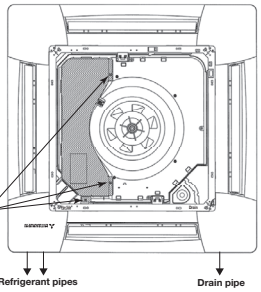
Caution

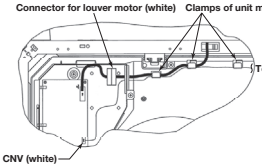
Make sure there is no stress given on the panel when adjusting the height of the indoor unit to avoid unexpected distortion. It may cause the distortion of panel or failing to close the air return grille.

⑦ Electrical wiring

1. After removing three screws of control box, detach the cover of control box (the hatched part).
2. Connect the connector for louver motor (white 20P).
   - Hold the wiring by using the clamps of the indoor unit.
   - Hold the connector inside the control box.
3. Connect the connector for panel switch.
   - Hold the wiring by using the clamps of the indoor unit.
   - Connect CNV (white) inside the control box.





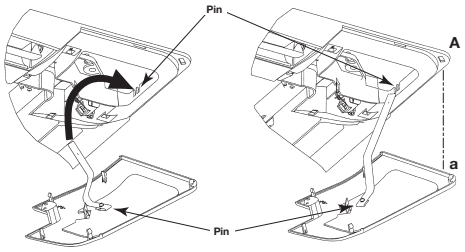


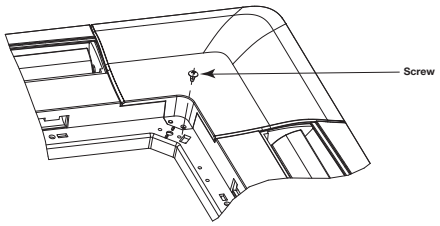
CAUTION

- If the air return grill is opened, the panel switch is turned off so that the air-conditioner cannot be operated any more.
- To start the air-conditioner, close the air return grill.

⑧ Attaching a corner panel

1. To avoid unexpected falling of the corner panel, put the strap onto the corner panel's pin with turning the strap up.
2. Then hang the strap of a corner panel onto the decorative panel's pin.
3. First insert the part "a" of a corner panel into the part "A" of the decorative panel, and then engage four hooks.





4. Fix with screw.

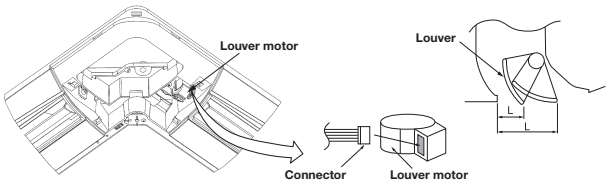
⑨ How to set the airflow direction

It is possible to change the movable range of the louver on the air outlet from the wired remote control. Once the top and bottom position is set, the louver will swing within the range between the top and the bottom when swing operation is chosen. It is also possible to apply different setting to each louver.

For the setting method of the louver's operating range, refer to the instruction manual of the wired remote control.

If it is necessary to fix the louver position manually, follow the procedure mentioned below.

1. Shut off the main power switch.
2. Unplug the connector of the louver motor which you want to fix the position. Make sure to insulate unplugged connectors electrically with a vinyl tape.
3. Adjust the louver position slowly by hand so as to be within the applicable range mentioned below table.



<Range of louver setting>

Vertical airflow direction	Horizontal 0°	Downwards 45°
Dimension L (mm)	43	26

※It can be set between 26~43mm freely.

Caution

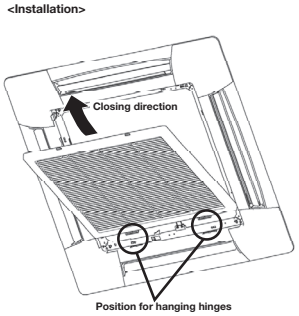
- Any automatic control or operation from the remote control will be disabled on the louver whose position is fixed in the above way.
- Do not set a louver beyond the specified range. Failure to observe this instruction may result in dripping, dew condensation, the fouling of the ceiling and the malfunctioning of the unit.

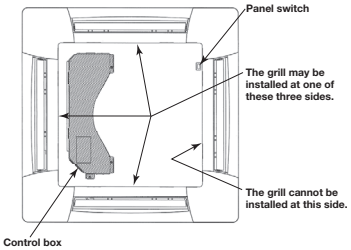
⑩ Attaching the air return grille

To attach the air return grille, follow the procedure described in ⑨ Removing the air return grille in the reverse order.

1. Hang the hooks of the air return grille in the hole of the panel. (The hooks of the grille can be hanged in three side of the panel as following.)
2. After the grille is hanged, close the grille while the stoppers on the grille (2 places) are kept pressed to "OPEN" direction. When the grille comes to the original position, release the stoppers to hold the grille. Make sure to hear the sound of "CLICK" in both stoppers.

<Installation>





Caution

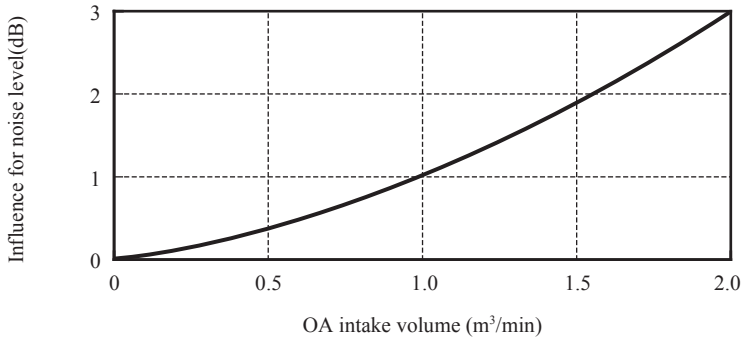
- Attaching the air return grille from the hinge side.
- Be careful in air return grille attaching, unstable attaching may cause grille falling.
- Repair or replace the distorted, broken stopper at once, or the grille falling may occur.

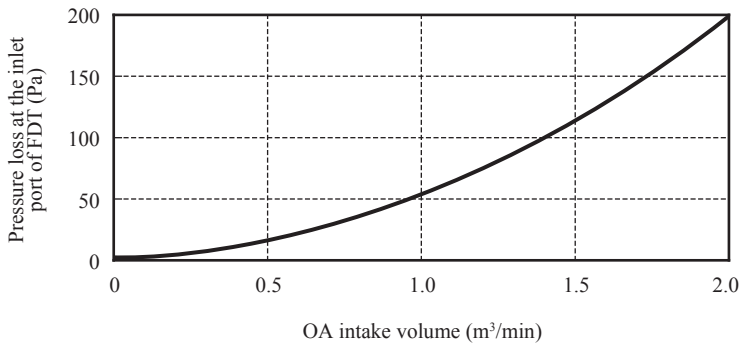
OUTDOOR AIR (OA) INTAKE FOR FDT

If it is required to intake OA through FDT unit, make sure to check following points carefully in order to conform to the requirement of customer.

If the OA intake volume through FDT unit is not satisfied with the required ventilation air volume, consider to install an indepemdent ventilation system.

1) Be sure to calculate cooling/heating load considering the ventilation heat load and to decide the air-conditioning system.
2) Be sure the OA intake volume to FDT unit should not exceed 20% of the Supply Air (SA) volume of FDT unit and it should be less than $2m^3$/min.
3) Be sure to decide the OA intake volume considering the mixed air temperature will be within the usage temperature range of FDT unit.
   Especially in following case, please consider to intake OA after processing OA or reducing the OA intake volume.
4) Be sure to equip a suitable filter for OA intaken in order to protect the dust.
   (Because OA does not pass through the filter equipped on FDT unit)
5) Be sure to insulate OA duct.
   (If not, it may have dew condensation.)
6) Be sure to interlock the booster fan for OA with the fan of FDT unit by using CNT connector.
   (If not, the dust trapped on the filter of FDT unit may be blown out to the room by the OA being intaken during the fan of FDT unit stopping)
7) Be sure to select a suitable booster fan for OA considering the pressure loss in the OA duct and the pressure loss at the inlet port of FDT with following diagram.
   (Please take into consideration the noise level as well)





<Selection of booster fan>

Booster fan should have a static pressure calculated with following formula

Static pressure of booster fan

= the pressure loss at the inlet port of FDT (from above diagram)

+ Pressure loss in the OA duct (In case of ϕ100 duct, 5Pa/m is required)

Select the booster fan from the fan characteristic diagram

(2) Ceiling cassette-4 way compact type (FDTC)

PJA012D786B B

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to the page 158. For remote control installation, refer to the page 166. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to the page 180.
This unit must always be used with the panel.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING: Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown as follows:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage, referred by the formula (accordance with IS05149).**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit, please consult the dealer and install the ventilation system, otherwise lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  - Places where flammable gas could leak.
  - Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  - Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  - Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  - On vehicles and ships
  - Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  - Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  - Highly salted area such as beach.
  - Heavy snow area
  - Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  - Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

  It can affect performance or function and etc..
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

① Before installation

- Install correctly according to the installation manual.
- Confirm the following points:
  ○ Unit type/Power source specification ○ Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○ Accessory items

Accessory itme

For unit hanging		For refrigerant pipe			For draom pipe			
Flat washer (M10)	Level gauge (Insulation)	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover(small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
								
8	4	1	1	4	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For adjustment in hoisting in the unit's main body	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid tube	For pipe cover fixing	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting

② Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.
- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.
  This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above.
  If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

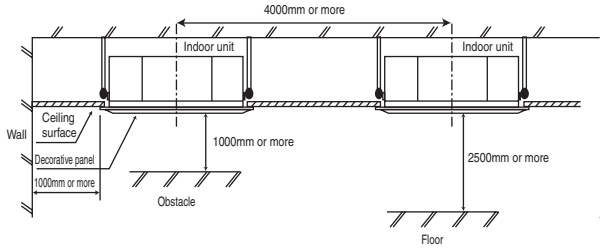
② Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

③ If there are 2 units of wireless type, keep them away for more than 5m to avoid malfunction due to cross communication.

④ When plural indoor units are installed nearby, keep them away for more than 4m.

Space for installation and service

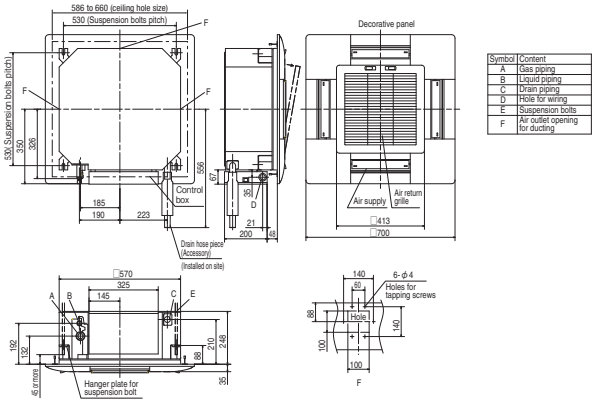
- When it is not possible to keep enough space between indoor unit and wall or between indoor units, close the air supply port where it is not possible to keep space and confirm there is no short circuit of airflow.
- Install the indoor unit at a height of more than 2.5m above the floor.



③ Preparation before installation

- If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.
  ○ For grid ceiling
  When suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
  ○ In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.
  When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
- Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10 or M8) on site.

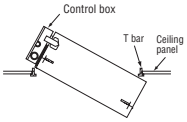
Ceiling opening, Suspension bolts pitch, Pipe position



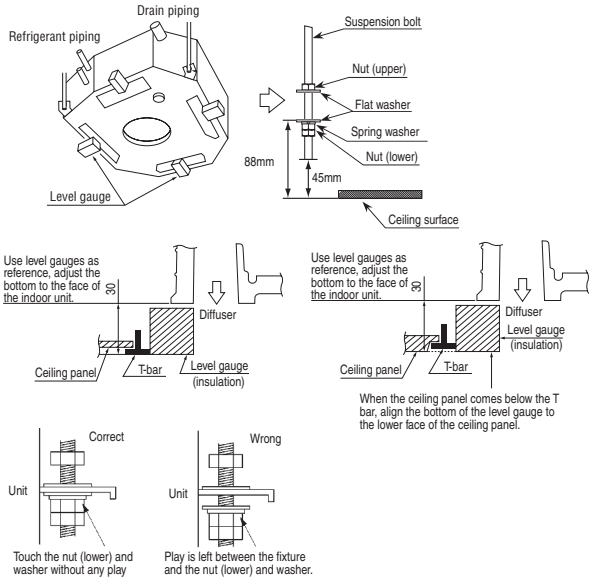
④ Installation of indoor unit

Work procedure

1. This units is designed for 2 x 2 grid ceiling.
   If necessary, please detach the T bar temporarily before you install it.
   If it is installed on a ceiling other than 2 x 2 grid ceiling, provide an inspection port on the control box side.
2. Arrange the suspension bolt at the right position (530mm×530mm).
3. Make sure to use four suspension bolts and fix them so as to be able to hold 500N load.
4. Ensure that the lower end of the suspension bolt should be 45mm above the ceiling plane.
   Temporarily put the four lower nuts 88mm above the ceiling plane and the upper nuts on distant place from the lower nuts in order not to obstruct hanging the indoor unit or adjust the indoor unit position, and then hang the indoor unit.

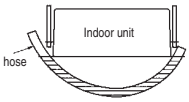


5. Adjust the indoor unit position after hanging it by inserting the level gauge attached on the package into the air supply port and checking if the gap between the ceiling plane and the indoor unit is appropriate. In order to adjust the indoor unit position, adjust the lower nuts while the upper nuts are put on distant place. Confirm there is no backlash between the hanger plate for suspension bolt and the lower nut and washer.



④ Installation of indoor unit (continued)

6. Make sure to install the indoor unit horizontally. Confirm the levelness of the indoor unit with a level gauge or transparent hose filled with water. Keep the height difference at both ends of the indoor unit within 3mm.
7. Tighten four upper nuts and fix the unit after height and levelness adjustment.



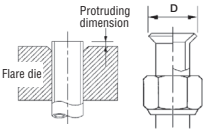
Caution

- Do not adjust the height by adjusting upper nuts. It will cause unexpected stress on the indoor unit and it will lead to deformation of the unit, failure of attaching a panel, and generating noise from the fan.
- Make sure to install the indoor unit horizontally and set the gap between the unit underside and the ceiling plane properly. Improper installation may cause air leakage, dew condensation, water leakage and noise.
- Even after decorative panel attached, still the unit height can be adjusted finely. Refer to the installation manual for decorative panel for details.
- Make sure there is no gap between decoration panel and ceiling surface, and between decoration panel and the indoor unit. The gap may cause air leakage, dew condensation and water leakage.
- In case decorative panel is not installed at the same time, or ceiling material is installed after the unit installed, put the cardboard template for installation attached on the package (packing material of cardboard box) on the bottom of the unit in order to avoid dust coming into the indoor unit.

⑤ Refrigerant pipe

Caution

- Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product or a nut compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
  Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.
  1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the one attached to the unit or compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
  2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R410A.



Pipe dia. d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N·m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 ~ 0.5	0.7 ~ 1.3	8.9 ~ 9.1	14 ~ 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 ~ 13.2	34 ~ 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 ~ 16.6	49 ~ 61
15.88	1			19.3 ~ 19.7	68 ~ 82
19.05	1.2			23.6 ~ 24.0	100 ~ 120

- Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation.
  In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
- Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
  Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
- Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
- Use special tools for R410A refrigerant.

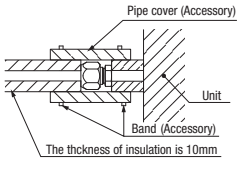
Work procedure

1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
   ※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
   ● Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
   ※ Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
   ※ Do a flare connection as follows:
   ● Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   ● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table above. Make sure to hold the pipe on the indoor unit securely by a spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   ● Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
   ※ Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
   ● Use heat-resistant (120 °C or more) insulations on the gas side pipes.
   ● In case of using at high humidity condition, reinforce insulation of refrigerant pipes.
   Surface of insulation may cause dew condition or water dropping, if insulations are not reinforced.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

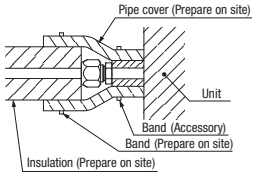
Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion.
Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.

⑤ Refrigerant pipe (continued)

<The case of using thicness of insulation is 10mm>



<The case of using reinfoced insulation>



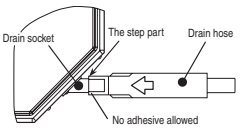
⑥ Drain pipe

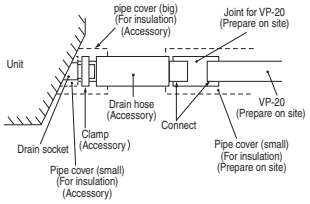
Caution

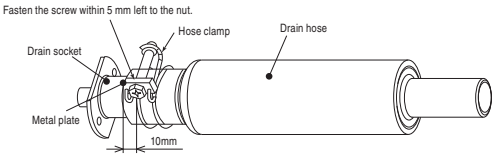
- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly.
  Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

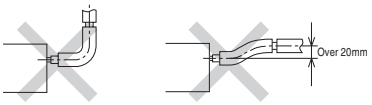
1. Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.
   Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw within 5mm left to the nut.
   ● Do not apply adhesives on this end.



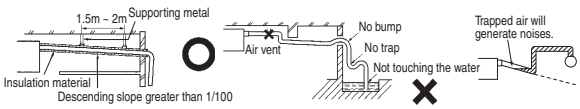




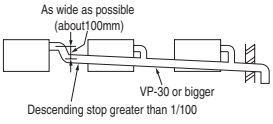
2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP-20 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP-20 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※ As for drain pipe, apply VP-20 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   ● Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose.
   It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   ● Do not bend or make an excess offset on the drain hose as shown in the picture.
   Bend or excess offset will cause drain leakage.



3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   ● Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   ● Do not set up air vent.



- When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP-30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.

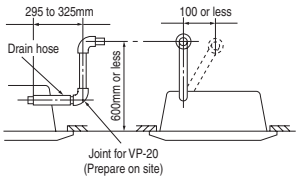


⑥ Drain pipe (continued)

4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   - Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.
     ※ After drainage test implementation, cover the drain socket part with pipe cover (small size), then use the pipe cover (big size) to cover the pipe cover (small size), clamps and part of the drain hose, and fix and wrap it with tapes to wrap and make joint part gapless.

Drain up

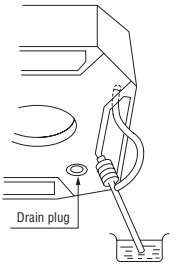
- The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 600mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.



Drain test

- After installation of drain pipe, make sure that drain system work in good condition and no water leakage from joint and drain pan. Check if the motor sound of drain pump is normal or not.
- Do drain test even if installation of heating season.
- For new building cases, make sure to complete the test before hanging the ceiling.

1. Pour water of about 1000cc into the drain pan in the indoor unit by pump so as not to get the electrical component wet.
2. Make sure that water is drained out properly and there is no water leakage from any joints of the drain pipe at the test.
   Confirm that the water is properly drained out while the drain motor is operating. At the drain socket (transparent), it is possible to check if the water is drained out properly.
3. Unplug the drain plug on the indoor unit to remove remaining water on the drain pan after the test, and re-plug it. And insulate the drain pipe properly finally.



Drain pump operation

○ Drain pump can be operated by remote control (wired).
Drain pump can be operated by remote controller (wired).
For the operation method, refer to Operation for drain pump in the installation manual for wiring work.

○ In case electrical wiring work not finished
Drain pump will run continuously when the dip switch"SW7-1" on the indoor unit PCB is turned ON, the Connector CNB is disconnected, and then the power supply (220-240VAC on the terminal block [① and ②] or [Ⓛ and Ⓝ]) is turned ON.
Make sure to turn OFF "SW7-1" and reconnect the Connector CNB after the test.

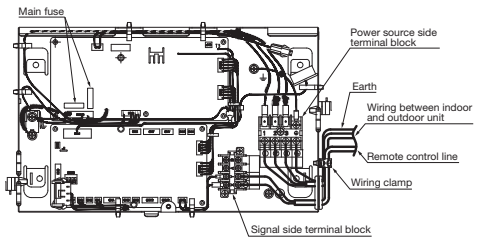
⑦ Wiring-out position and wiring connection

- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country. Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- Be sure to do D type earth work.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

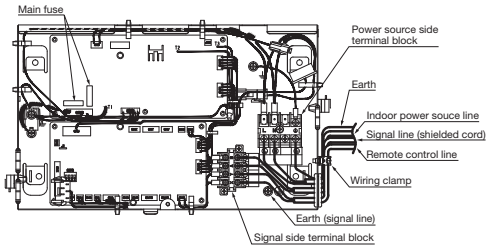
1. Remove a lid of the control box (1 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and fasten them to terminal block securely.
3. Fix the wiring with clamp.
4. Install a lid of the control box back to original place.

⑦ Wiring-out position and wiring connection (continued)

Single spilit (PAC) series



VRF (KX) series



Main fuse specification

Specification	Part No.
T3.15A L250V	SSA564A149F

⑧ Panel installation

- After wiring work finished, install the panel on the indoor unit.
- Refer to attached panel installation manual for details.

Accessory items

1	Hook		1 piece	For fixing temporarily
2	Chain		2 pieces	
3	Bolt		4 pieces	For installing the panel
4	Screw		1 piece	For attaching a hook
5	Screw		2 pieces	For attaching a chain

- Attach the panel on the indoor unit after electrical wiring work.
- Refer to attached manual for panel installation for details.

⑨ Check list after installation

- Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

PANEL INSTALLATION MANUAL

PJA012D783 a

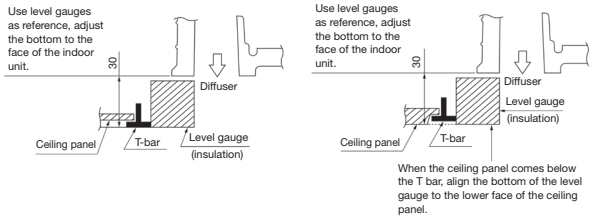
Please read this manual together with the indoor unit's installation manual.

⚠ WARNING

- **Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work.**
  Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.

① Checking the indoor unit installation position

- Read this manual together with the air conditioner installation manual carefully.
- Check if the gap between the ceiling plane and the indoor unit is correct by inserting the level gauge into the air outlet port of the indoor unit. (See below drawing)
- Adjust the installation elevation if necessary.
- Remove the level gauge before you attach the panel.

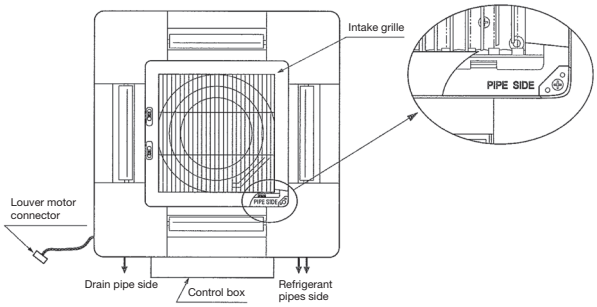


② Orientation of the panel and return air grille installation

1. Take note that there is an orientation to install the panel.
   - Attach the panel with the orientation shown on the below.
   - Align the "PIPE SIDE" mark (on the panel) with the refrigerant pipes on the indoor unit.
2. The intake grille can also be attached in a rotated position by 90 degrees.

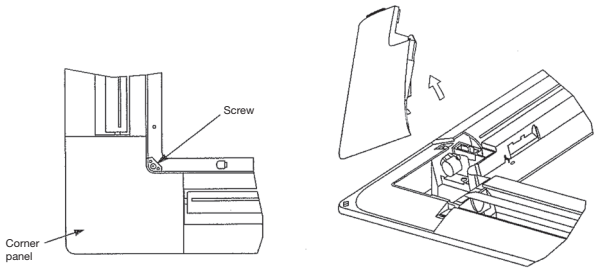
Caution

· In case the orientation of the panel is not correct, it will lead to air leakage and also it is not possible to connect the louver motor wiring.



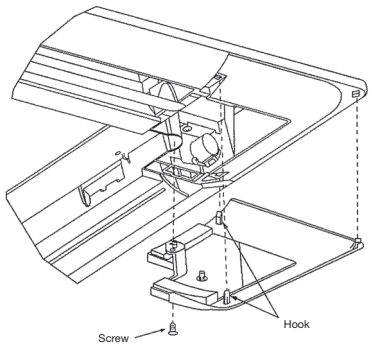
③ Removing a corner panel

- Unscrew the screw from the corner area, pull the corner panel toward the direction indicated by the arrow mark.



④ Attaching a corner panel

- First insert the part "a" of a corner panel into the part "A" of the cover panel, engage two hooks and tighten the screw.



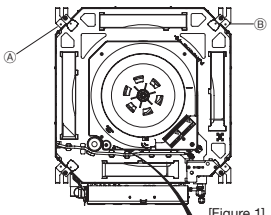
⑤ Panel installation

- Install the panel on the unit after completing the electrical wiring.

Accessories

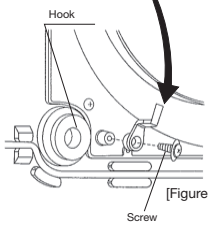
1	Hook		1 piece	For fixing temporarily
2	Chain		2 pieces	
3	Screw		4 pieces	For hoisting the panel
4	Screw		1 piece	For attaching a hook
5	Screw		2 pieces	For attaching a chain

1. Screw in two bolts out of the four supplied with the panel by about slightly less than 5mm. (● mark ⒶⒷ) [Figure 1]



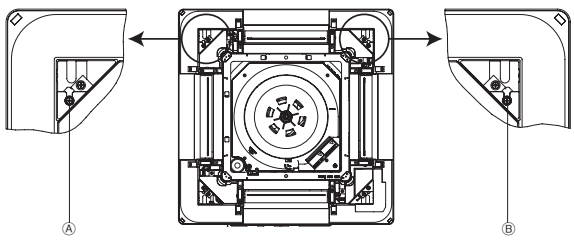
[Figure 1]

2. Attach the hook supplied with the panel to the main body with the hook fixing screw (1 screw). [Figure 2]
3. Open the intake grille.
4. Please remove the screw of a corner panel and remove a corner panel. (four places)



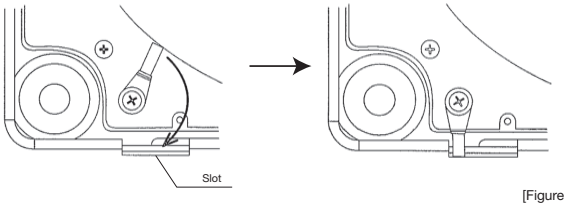
[Figure 2]

5. A panel is hooked on two bolts (● mark ⒶⒷ). [Figure 3]



[Figure 3]

6. Please rotate a hook, put in the slot on the panel, and carry out fixing the panel temporarily. [Figure 4]

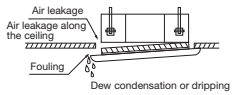


[Figure 4]

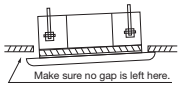
7. Tighten the two bolts used for fixing the panel temporarily and the other two.

Caution

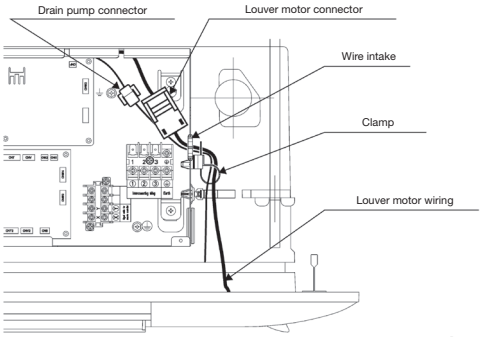
- Improperly tightened hanging bolts can cause the problems listed below, so make sure that you have tightened them securely.



- If there is a gap remaining between the ceiling and the decorative panel even after the hanging bolts are tightened, adjust the installation level of the indoor unit again.

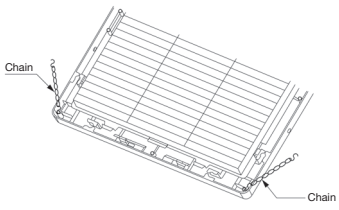


8. Please open the lid of a control box.
9. Like drain pump wiring, please band together by the clamp and put in louver motor wiring into a control box. [Figure 5]
10. Please connect a louver motor connector. [Figure 5]



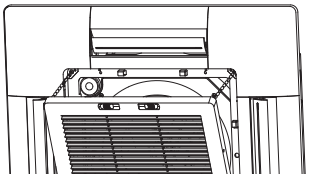
[Figure 5]

11. Attach two chains to the intake grille with two screws. [Figure 6]



[Figure 6]

12. Replace the corner panels. Please also close a chain with a screw together then. [Figure 7]
13. Close the intake grill.



[Figure 7]

Caution

Make sure there is no stress given on the panel when adjusting the height of the indoor unit to avoid unexpected distortion. It may cause the distortion of panel or failing to close the air return grille.

⑦ How to set the airflow direction

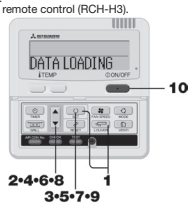
It is possible to change the movable range of the louver on the air outlet from the wired remote control. Once the top and bottom position is set, the louver will swing within the range between the top and the bottom when swing operation is chosen. It is also possible to apply different setting to each louver.
Note: This function is not able to be set with wireless remote control or simple remote control (RCH-H3).

1 Stop the air conditioner and press SET button and LOUVER button simultaneously for three seconds or more.
The following is displayed if the number of the indoor units connected to the remote control is one. Go to step **4**.

"DATA LOADING "
↓
"No.1 "

The following is displayed if the number of the indoor units connected to the remote controller are more than one

"SELECT I/U"
↓
"I/U000 "



2 Press ▲ or ▼ button. (selection of indoor unit)
Select the indoor unit of which the louver is set.
[EXAMPLE]
"I/U000 "⇔"I/U001 "⇔"I/U002 "⇔
"I/U003 "

3 Press SET button. (determination of indoor unit)
Selected indoor unit is fixed.
[EXAMPLE]
"I/U001 " (displayed for two seconds)
↓
"DATA LOADING "
↓
"No.1 "

4 Press ▲ or ▼ button. (selection of louver No.)
Select the louver No. to be set according to the right figure.
[EXAMPLE]
"No.1 "⇔"No.2 "⇔"No.3 "⇔
"No.4 "

5 Press SET button. (Determination of louver No.)
The louver No. to be set is confirmed and the display shows the upper limit of the movable range.
[EXAMPLE] If No.1 louver is selected,
"No.1 UPPER2 " ← current upper limit position

6 Press ▲ or ▼ button. (selection of upper limit position)
Select the upper limit of louver movable range.
"position 1" is the most horizontal, and "position 6" is the most downward.
"position --" is return to the factory setting. If you need to change the setting to the default setting, use "position --".

"No.1 UPPER1 " (the most horizontal)
⇔"No.1 UPPER2 "
⇔"No.1 UPPER3 "
⇔"No.1 UPPER4 "
⇔"No.1 UPPER5 "
⇔"No.1 UPPER6 " (the most downwards)
⇔"No.1 UPPER-- " (return to the default setting)

7 Press SET button. (Fixing of the upper limit position)
The upper limit position is fixed and the setting position is displayed for two seconds. Then proceed to lower limit position selection display.
[EXAMPLE]
No.1 UPPER2 (displayed for two seconds)
↓
No.1 LOWER5 (shows current setting)

8 Press ▲ or ▼ button. (Selection of lower limit position)
Select the lower limit position of louver.
"position 1" is the most horizontal, and "position 6" is the most downwards.
"position --" is return to the factory setting. If you need to change the setting to the default setting, use "position --".

No.1 LOWER1 (the most horizontal)
No.1 LOWER2
No.1 LOWER3
No.1 LOWER4
No.1 LOWER5
No.1 LOWER6 (the most downwards)
No.1 LOWER-- (return to the default setting)

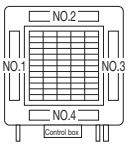
9 Press SET button. (Fixing of the lower limit position)
Upper limit position and lower limit position are fixed, and the set positions are displayed for two seconds, then setting is completed.
- After the setting is completed, the louver which was set moves from the original position to the lower limit position, and goes back to the original position again. (This operation is not performed if the indoor unit and/or indoor unit fan is in operation.)

[EXAMPLE]
No.1 U2 L6 (displayed for two seconds)
SET COMPLETE
No.1

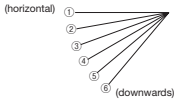
10 Press ON/OFF button.
Louver adjusting mode ends and returns to the original display.
For setting the swing range of other louvers, return to 1 and proceed same procedure respectively.

NOTICE

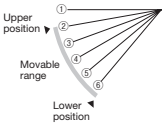
- In case the louver No to be set is uncertain, set any louver temporarily.
The louver will swing once when the setting is completed and it is possible to confirm the louver No and the position.
After that, choose the correct louver No and set the top and bottom position.



Louver No.



the position of the louver



Caution

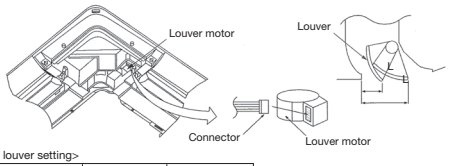
If the upper limit position number and the lower limit position number are set to the same position, the louver is fixed at that position auto swing does not function.

ATTENTION

If you press RESET button during settings, the display will return to previous display.
If you press ON/OFF button during settings, the mode will be ended and return to original display, and the settings that have not been completed will become invalid.

When plural remote control are connected, louver setting operation cannot be set by slave remote control.

If it is necessary to fix the louver position manually, follow the procedure mentioned below.
1. Shut off the main power switch.
2. Unplug the connector of the louver motor which you want to fix the position.
Make sure to insulate unplugged connectors electrically with a vinyl tape.
3. Adjust the louver position slowly by hand so as to be within the applicable range mentioned below table.



<Range of louver setting>

Vertical airflow direction	Horizontal 23°	Downwards 50°
Dimension L (mm)	40	24

※It can be set between 24~40mm freely.

Caution

- Any automatic control or operation from the remote control will be disabled on the louver whose position is fixed in the above way.
- Do not set a louver beyond the specified range. Failure to observe this instruction may result in dripping, dew condensation, the fouling of the ceiling and the malfunctioning of the unit.

(3) Ceiling suspended type (FDEN)

PFA012D621D B

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to the page 158. For remote control installation, refer to the page 166. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to the page 180.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown as follows:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage, referred by the formula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit, please consult the dealer and install the ventilation system, otherwise lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure, electric shock and fire due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause fire and electric shocks.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  - Places where flammable gas could leak.
  - Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  - Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  - Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  - On vehicles and ships
  - Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  - Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  - Highly salted area such as beach.
  - Heavy snow area
  - Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  - Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

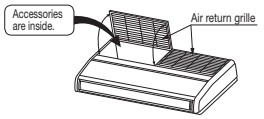
  It can affect performance or function and etc..
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

① Before installation

- Install correctly according to the installation manual.
- Confirm the following points:
  ○Unit type/Power source specification ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For unit hanging		For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe					For air return grille
Flat washer (M10)	Paper pattern	Pipe cover (large)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Drain hose (with clamp)	Hose clamp	Fixing bracket	Screw	Heay insulation	Screw
										
8	1	1	1	4	1	1	1	2	1	4
For unit hanging	For unit hanging and adjustment	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid pipe	For fixing of pipe cover	For drain pipe connection	For drain hose mounting	For fixing of drain hose	For installing of fixing bracket	For drain hose	For fixing air return grille



② Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

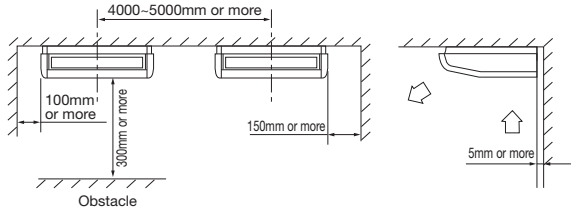
① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.
- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 23°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%. This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

② Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

③ If there are 2 units of wireless type, keep them away for more than 6m to avoid malfunction due to cross communication.

④ When plural indoor units are installed nearby, keep them away for more than 4 to 5m.

Space for installation and service



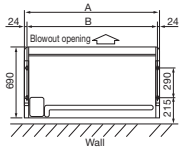
③ Preparation before installation

- If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.
  ○For grid ceiling
  When suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
  ○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.
  When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
- Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

③ Preparation before installation (continued)

Pitch of suspension bolts and pipe position

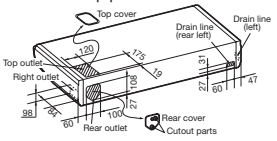
Pitch of suspension bolts



(mm)

Series	type	A	B
Single Split (PAC) series	40 to 50type	1070	1022
	60 to 71type	1320	1272
	100 to 140type	1620	1572
VRF (KX) series	36 to 56type	1070	1022
	71type	1320	1272
	112 to 140type	1620	1572

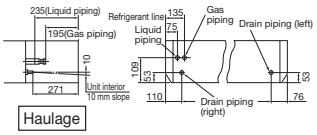
Location of pipe outlets



※The outlet through which the pipings are taken out is available in three directions.
※Pipes can be taken out in 3 directions (rear, right or top).
- Cut out holes using nippers, etc.
- Cut out holes to take out pipes along the cutoff line on the rear cover.
- Cut out the top face cover aligning to the piping position.
- When taking pipe out to right-hand side, cut out a hole along the groove at the inside of side panel.
- After installing pipes and wires, seal clearances around pipes and wires with putty, etc. to shut off dust.

Make sure to install the covers at rear and top in order to protect the inside of unit from intrusion of dust or protect wires from damages by sharp edges. When taking them out to the right-hand side, remove burrs or sharp edges from the cutout.

Pipe position

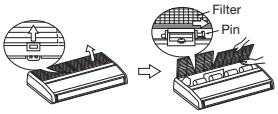


Haulage

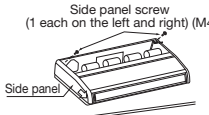
- Move the box as close to the installation area as possible packed.
- If it must be unpacked, wrap the unit with a nylon sling, and be careful not to damage the unit.
- If you need to lay the unit on a floor after unpacking, always put it with the intake grille facing upward.

Preparation before instalation

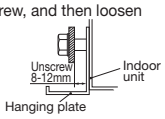
1. Remove the air return grille.
Slide stoppers (4 places) of the catches, then pull out the pins (4 or 6 places).

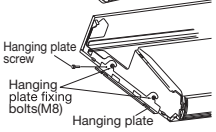


2. Remove the side panel.
Remove the screw and detach the side panel by sliding it toward the direction indicated by the arrow mark.



3. Remove the hanging plate.
Remove the screw, and then loosen the fixing bolts.





④ Remote control

Installation of remote control

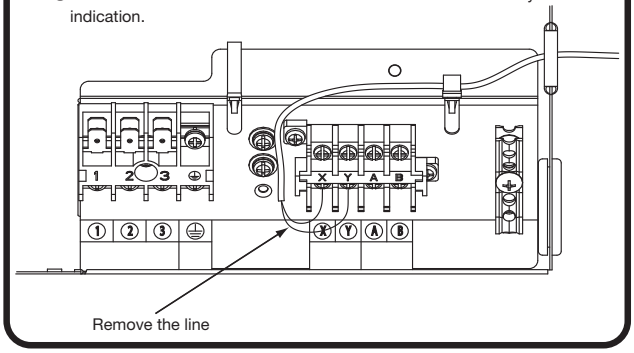
Up to two receiver or wired remote control can be installed in one indoor unit group.

● When both wired and wireless remote control are used
It is necessary to set wired or wireless remote control as slave.
(For the method of changing the setting, refer to the installtion manual attached to remote control or wireless kit.)

● When wired remote control are used only (wireless type)
It is necessary to remove the line that is connected to the receiver.
Remove signal line connected to the receiver from primary side of terminal block (X, Y).

ATTENTION

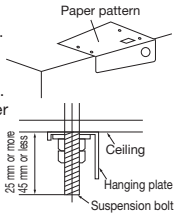
①Insulate with tape the removed line.
②The LED of that removed connector will not be able to make any indication.



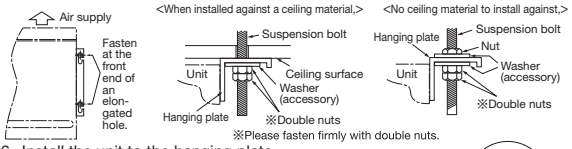
⑤ Installation of indoor unit

Work procedure

1. Select the suspension bolt locations and the pipe hole location.
   (1) Use enclosed paper pattern as a reference, and drill the holes for the suspension bolts and pipe.
   ※Decide the locations based on direct measurements.
   (2) Once the locations are properly placed, the paper pattern can be removed.
2. Install the suspension bolts in place.
3. Fix with 4 suspension bolts, which can endure load of 500N.
4. Check the measurements given at the right figure for the length of the suspension bolts.

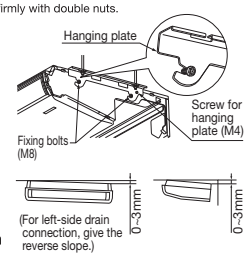


5. Fasten the hanging plate onto the suspension bolts.



※Please fasten firmly with double nuts.

6. Install the unit to the hanging plate.
   (1) Slide the unit in from front side to get it hanged on the hanging plate with the bolts.
   (2) Fasten the four fixing bolts (M8: 2 each on the left and right sides) firmly.
   (3) Fasten the two screws (M4: 1 each on the left and right sides).



⚠**WARNINIG** : Hang a side panel on from the panel side to the rear side and then fasten it securely onto the indoor unit with screws.

※To ensure smooth drain flow, install the unit with a descending slope toward the drain outlet.

⚠ **CAUTION** : Do not give the reversed slope, which may cause water leaks.

⑥ Refrigerant pipe

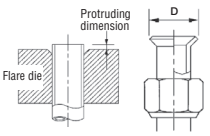
Caution

●Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product or a nut compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.

Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.

1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the one attached to the unit or compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.

2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R410A.



Pipe dia. d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N-m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 ~ 0.5	0.7 ~ 1.3	8.9 ~ 9.1	14 ~ 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 ~ 13.2	34 ~ 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 ~ 16.6	49 ~ 61
15.88	1			19.3 ~ 19.7	68 ~ 82
19.05	1.2			23.6 ~ 24.0	100 ~ 120

●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation. In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.

●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.

●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.

●Use special tools for R410A refrigerant.

Work procedure

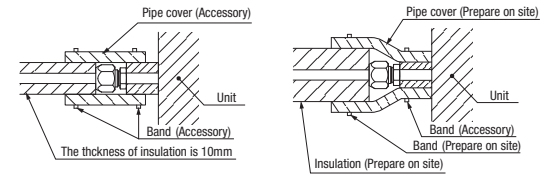
1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
   ※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
   ● Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
   ※Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
   ※Do a flare connection as follows:
   ● Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   ● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table above. Make sure to hold the pipe on the indoor unit securely by a spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   ● Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
   ※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
   ● Use heat-resistant (120 °C or more) insulations on the gas side pipes.
   ● In case of using at high humidity condition, reinforce insulation of refrigerant pipes.
   Surface of insulation may cause dew condition or water dropping, if insulations are not reinfoced.

⑥ Refrigerant pipe (continued)

4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

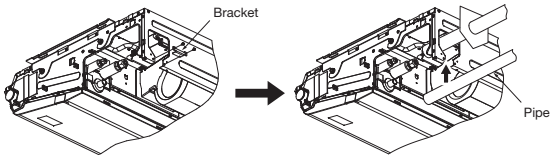
Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion.
Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.

<The case of using thicness of insulation is 10mm>
<The case of using reinfoced insulation>

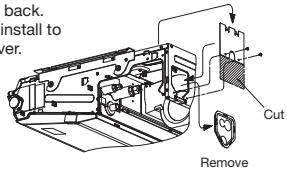


The pipe can be connected from three different directions. (back, reight, top)

● When the pipe is routed through the back.
If the bracket is removed, piping work will become easy.
※After piping, reinstall the removed bracket.



● When the pipe is routed through the back.
Cut the removed top cover, and install to the rear panel instead of rear cover.



⑦ Drain pipe

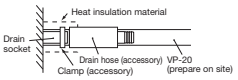
The drain pipes may face out towards the back to the left, or to the right side.

Caution

- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful andinflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

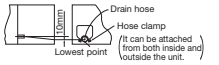
Work procedure

1. Insert drain hose completely to the base, and tighten the drain hose clamp securely. (adhesive must not be used.)
   ※When plumbing on the left side, move the rubber plug and the cylindrical insulating materials by the pipe connecting hole on the left side of the unit to the right side.

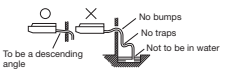


⚠ Beware of a possible outflow of water that may occur upon removal of a drain plug.

2. Fix the drain hose at the lowest point with a hose clamp supplied as an accessory.
   ※Give a drain hose a gradient of 10mm as illustrated in the right drawing by laying it without leaving a slack.



● Take head of electrical cables so that they may not run beneath the drain hose.
A drain hose must be clamped down with a hose clamp.



⚠ There is a possibility that drain water overflows.

3. Connect VP-20(prepare on site) to drain hose. (adhesive must not be used.)
   ※ Use commercially available rigid PVC general pipe VP-20 for drain pipe.
4. Do not to make the up-down bending and trap in the mid-way while assuming that the drain pipes is downhill. (more than 1/100)
   ● Never set up air vent.
5. Insulate the drain pipe.
   ● Insulate the drain hose clamp with the heat insulation supplied as accessories.
   ● When the unit is installed in a humid place, consider precautions against dew condensation such as heat insulation for the drain pipe.

⑦Drain pipe (continued)

Drain test

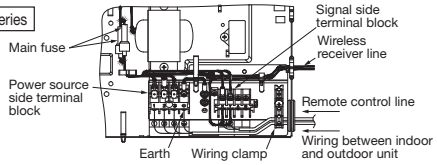
- After installation of drain pipe, make sure that drain system work in good condition and no water leakage from joint and drain pan.
- Do drain test even if installation of heating season.

⑧Wiring-out position and wiring connection

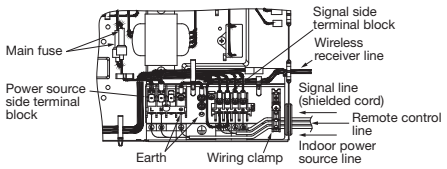
- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country. Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- Be sure to do D type earth work.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the electrical box (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and connect to a terminal block surely.
3. Fix the wiring by clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.

Single split (PAC) series



VRF(KX) series



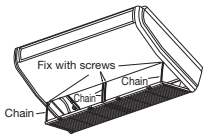
Main fuse specification

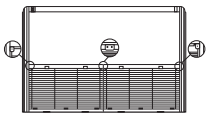
Specification	Port No.
T3.15A L250V	SSA564A116G

⑨Attaching the air return grille

- The air return grille must be attached when electrical cabling work is completed.

1. Fix the chains tied to the air return grille onto the indoor unit with screws supplied as accessories (4 pieces).
2. Close the air return grille. This completes the unit installtion work.





⑩Check list after installation

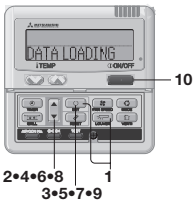
- Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

⑪How to set the airflow direction

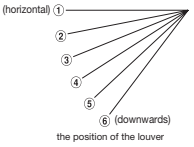
It is possible to change the movable range of the louver on the air outlet from the wired remote control. Once the top and bottom position is set, the louver will swing within the range between the top and the bottom when swing operation is chosen. It is also possible to apply different setting to each louver.

1. Stop the air conditioner and press SET button and LOUVER button simultaneously for three seconds or more.
   - The following is displayed if the number of the indoor units connected to the remote control is one. Go to step 4.
     "DATA LOADING" → "No.1 ▲"
   - The following is displayed if the number of the indoor units connected to the remote control are more than one.
     "SELECT I/U" → "I/U000 ▲"



2. Press ▲or▼button.(selection of indoor unit) ●Select the indoor unit of which the louver is set.
   [EXAMPLE] "I/U000 ▲" "I/U001 ◆" "I/U002 ◆" "I/U003 ◆"
3. Press SET button.(determination of indoor unit) ●Selected indoor unit is fixed.
   [EXAMPLE] "I/U001 " (displayed for two seconds) → "DATA LOADING" → "No.1 ▲"
4. Press▲or▼button.(selection of louver No.) ●Select the louver No. to be set according to the right figure.
   [EXAMPLE] "No.1 ▲" "No.2 ◆" "No.3 ◆" "No.4 ▼"
5. Press SET button.(Determination of louver No.)
   ●The louver No. to be set is confirmed and the display shows the upper limit of the movable range.
   [EXAMPLE] If No.1 louver is selected, "No.1 UPPER2 ◆" □ current upper limit position
6. Press▲or▼button.(selection of upper limit position)
   - Select the upper limit of louver movable range. "position 1" is the most horizontal, and "position 6" is the most downward. "position --" is to return to the factory setting. If you need to change the setting to the default setting, use "position --".

     "No.1 UPPER1 ▼" (the most horizotal)
     "No.1 UPPER2 ◆"
     "No.1 UPPER3 ◆"
     "No.1 UPPER4 ◆"
     "No.1 UPPER5 ◆"
     "No.1 UPPER6 ◆" (the most downwards)
     "No.1 UPPER-- ▲" (return to the default setting)

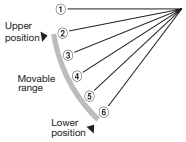


7. Press SET button.(Fixing of the upper limit position)
   ●The upper limit position is fixed and the setting position is displayed for two seconds. Then proceed to lower limit position selection display.
   [EXAMPLE] No.1 UPPER2 (displayed for two seconds) → No.1 LOWER5 ◆ (shows current setting)
8. Press▲or▼button.(Selection of lower limit position)
   - Select the lower limit position of louver. "position 1" is the most horizontal, and "position 6 "is the most downwards. "position --" is to return to the factory setting. If you need to change the setting to the default setting, use "position --".

     "No.1 LOWER1 ▼" (the most horizontal)
     "No.1 LOWER2 ◆"
     "No.1 LOWER3 ◆"
     "No.1 LOWER4 ◆"
     "No.1 LOWER5 ◆"
     "No.1 LOWER6 ◆" (the most downwards)
     "No.1 LOWER-- ▲" (return to the default setting)

9. Press SET button.(Fixing of the lower limit position)
   ●Upper limit position and lower limit position are fixed, and the set positions are displayed for two seconds, then setting is completed.
   - After the setting is completed, the louver which was set moves from the original position to the lower limit position, and goes back to the original position again. (This operation is not performed if the indoor unit and/or indoor unit fan is in operation.)

     [Example] No.1 U2 L6 (displayed for two seconds) → SET COMPLETE → No.1 ▲



10. Press ⏻ON/OFF button.
    ●Louver adjusting mode ends and returns to the original display.

Caution

If the upper limit position number and the lower limit position number are set to the same position, the louver is fixed at that position auto swing does not funtion.

ATTENTION

If you press RESET button during settings, the display will return to previous display.If you press ⏻ON/OFF button during settings, the mode will be ended and return to original display, and the settings that have not been completed will become invalid.

When plural remote controls are connected, louver setting operation cannot be set by slave remote control.

(4) Duct connected-High static pressure type (FDU)

PJG012D017

•This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit and an outdoor air processing unit (FDU-F).
•For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 158. For remote control installation, refer to page 166. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 180.
The case of FDU-F
•The total connection capacity of the other air conditioning units and the outdoor air processing units must be from 50% to 100% (the total includes the outdoor air processing unit).
The connection capacity of the outdoor air processing unit must not exceed 30% of the capacity of the outdoor unit.
•Single outdoor air processing unit can be used alone. The connection capacity of the outdoor air processing unit must be from 50% to 100% of the total capacity of the outdoor unit.
Maximum number of outdoor air processing units that can be connected to the outdoor unit is 2units.
•Capacities of the suction air processing units can be calculated with the forllowing formulas.
FDU1800FKXZE1 = 224, FDU2400FKXZE1 = 280

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

● Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
● The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
⚠WARNING: Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
●The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
●After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

●Installation should be performed by the specialist.
If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.

●Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.
Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

●Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).
If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.

●Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.
If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.

●Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.
If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.

●Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.
Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.

●Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.
Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.

●Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.
If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.

●Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.
Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.

●Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.

●Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.
Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.

●Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.
If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.

●Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.
Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.

●Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.
If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.

●Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.
Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.

●Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.
If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.

●Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.
If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.

●Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.
If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.

●Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.
Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.

●Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.
Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.

●Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.
If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.

●Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.
Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.

●Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.
It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

● Perform earth wiring surely.
Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock or fire due to a short circuit.

● Earth leakage breaker must be installed.
If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it could cause electric shocks or fire.

● Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.
Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.

● Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.
Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.

● Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.
If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.

● Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.
It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.

● Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.
Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.

● Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.
Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.

● Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.
It could cause the damage of the items.

● Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.
Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.

● Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.
It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.

● Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.
· Places where flammable gas could leak.
· Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
· Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
· Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
· On vehicles and ships
· Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
· Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
· Highly salted area such as beach.
· Heavy snow area
· Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
· Altitude over 1000m

● Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)
· Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
· Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
· Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
· Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
· Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
It can affect performance or function and etc..

● Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.
Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.

● Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.
It could cause the unit falling down and injury.

● Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.
If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.

● Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.
Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.

● Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.
Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.

● Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.
If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.

● For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.
Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.

● Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.
Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.

● Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.
Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.

● Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.
Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.

● Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.
Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.

● Do not operate the system without the air filter.
It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.

● Do not touch any button with wet hands.
It could cause electric shock.

● Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.
The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.

● Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.
It could cause electric shock.

● Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.
Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.

● Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.
It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

○This model is middle static ducted type air conditioning unit. Therefore, do not use this model for direct blow type air conditioning unit.

①Before installation

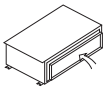
●Install correctly according to the installation manual.

●Confirm the following points:

○Unit type/Power source specification ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For hanging	For drain pipe					
	FDU · FDU-F		FDUA			
Flat washer (M10)	Hose clamp	Soket	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
						
8	2	1	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For drain soket mounting	For drain pipe mounting	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting



Accessory parts are stored inside this suction side.

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.

This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above. If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.

- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

② Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

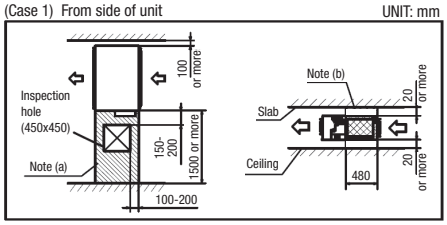
Space for installation and service

●Make installation altitude over 2.5m.

(Indoor Unit)

Select either of two cases to keep space for installation and services.

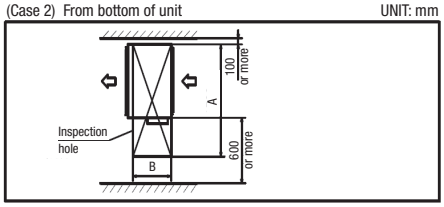
(Case 1) From side of unit UNIT: mm



Notes (a) There must not be obstacle to draw out fan motor. (marked area)

(b) Install refrigerant pipe, drain pipe, and wiring so as not to cross marked area.

(Case 2) From bottom of unit UNIT: mm

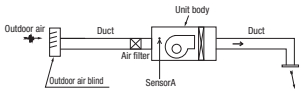


(Size of inspection hole) UNIT: mm

Single type	200-250
Multi type	224-280
FDU-F	1800-2400
A	1900
B	880

③Cautions for the handling and installation place of outdoor air processing unit

①This unit monitors the outdoor air temperature at the position of sensor A in the figure, and controls the start and stop with the thermostat based on the value of sensor A and the setting temperature by the remote control.



Remote control's setting temperature indicates the outdoor air temperature that controls the start and stop of operation by the thermostat.

When the thermostat is turned off, the operation is changed to the fan mode so that the outdoor air is blown out directly into the room. For example if the remote control is set to 22°C in cooling operation, and if the outdoor air temperature is 22°C or lower at that time, the unit will go into fan operation.

②When there is a difference between the air conditioning temperature in the room during cooling operation and the temperature of air blown out from the outdoor air processing unit, dewing water may drip from the unit. To prevent the dewing, provide a sufficient heat insulation means at the air blow outlet.

③Since the air blow outlet on the outdoor air processing unit may blow out the outdoor air directly, orient the outlet in such a way that it will not blow air directly to persons in the room.

④Since the unit controls the thermostat start and stop by monitoring the outdoor air temperature, it is prohibited to monitor the room temperature by means of the room temperature monitoring by changing the thermostat setting at the remote control side and the optional remote thermistor. Otherwise, dewing water may drip from the unit at lower outdoor air temperatures during cooling operation.

⑤Install the remote control of the outdoor air processing unit at a place closer to the administrator to avoid the end user from using the remote control.

When handing over the unit to the end user, make sure to explain sufficiently about the foregoing cautions, the installation place of the remote control for the outdoor air processing unit and the position of air blow outlet.

④Preparation before installation

●If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.

○For grid ceiling

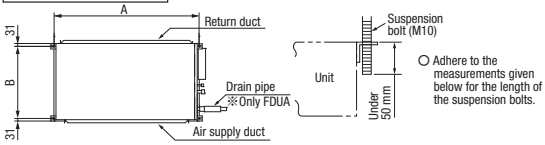
When the suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.

When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

●Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

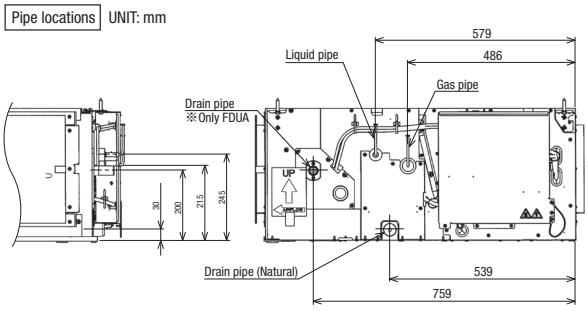
Suspension Bolt Location



UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1634
B	831

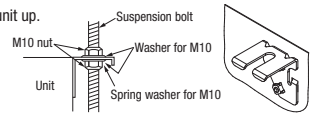
Pipe locations UNIT: mm



⑤Installation of indoor unit

Installation

[Hanging]
Hang the unit up.

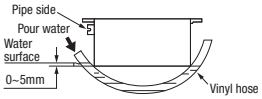


If the measurements between the unit and the ceiling hole do not match upon installation, it may be adjusted with the long holed installation tool.

Adjustment for horizontality

○Either use a level vial, or adjust the level according to the method below.

●Adjust so the bottom side of the unit will be leveled with the water surface as illustrated below.



Let the pipe side be slightly sloped.

○If the unit is not leveled, it may cause malfunctions or inoperation of the float switch.

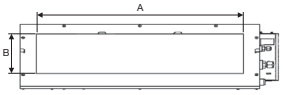
⑥Duct Work

①A corrugated board (for preventing sputtering) is attached to the main body of the air conditioner (on the outlet port). Do not remove it until connecting the duct.
●An air filter can be provided on the main body of the air conditioner (on the inlet port). Remove it when connecting the duct on the inlet port.

②Blowout duct
●Use rectangular duct to connect with unit.
●Duct size for each unit is as shown below.

UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1450
B	250

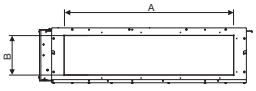


●Duct should be at their minimum length.
●We recommend to use sound and heat insulated duct to prevent it from condensation.
●Connect duct to unit before ceiling attachment.

③Inlet port
●When connecting the duct to the inlet port, remove the air filter if it is fitted to the inlet port.
●Inlet port size for each unit is as shown below.

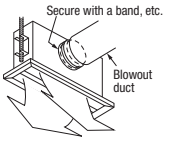
UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1450
B	250



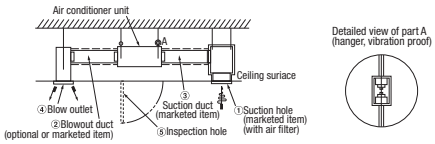
●Make sure to insulate the duct to prevent dewing on it.

④Install the specific blowout duct in a location where the air will circulate to the entire room.
●Conduct the installation of the specific blowout hole and the connection of the duct before attaching them to the ceiling.
●Insulate the area where the duct is secured by a band for dew condensation prevention.



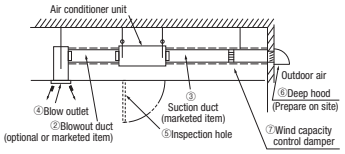
⑤Make sure provide an inspection hole on the ceiling. It is indispensable to service electric equipment, motor, functional components and cleaning of heat exchanger.

FDU · FDUA



⑥Duct Work (continued)

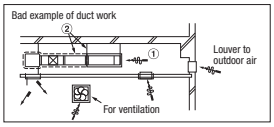
FDU-F



Bad example of duct work

①If a duct is not provided at the suction side but it is substituted with the space over the ceiling, humidity in the space will increase by the influence of capacity of ventilation fan, strength of wind blowing against the out door air louver, weather (rainy day) and others.
a)Moisture in air is likely to condense over the external plates of the unit and to drip on the ceiling. Unit should be operated under the conditions as listed in the above table and within the limitation of wind volume. When the building is a concrete structure, especially immediately after the construction, humidity tends to rise even if the space over the ceiling is not substituted in place of a duct. In such occasion, it is necessary to insulate the entire unit with glass wool (25mm). (Use a wire net or equivalent to hold the glass wool in place.)
b)It may run out the allowable limit of unit operation (Example: When outdoor air temperature is 35°C DB, suction air temperature is 27°C WB) and it could result in such troubles as compressor overload, etc..
c)There is a possibility that the blow air volume may exceed the allowable range of operation due to the capacity of ventilation fan or strength of wind blowing against external air louver so that drainage from be heat exchanger may fall to reach the drain pan but leak outside (Example: drip on to the ceiling) with consequential water leakage in the room.

②If vibration damping is not conducted between the unit and the duct, and between the unit and the slab, vibration will be transmitted to the duct and vibration noise may occur. Also, vibration may be transmitted from the unit to the slab. Vibration damping must be performed.



⑦Refrigerant pipe

Caution

●Use the new refrigerant pipe.
When re-using the existing pipe system for R22 or R407C, pay attention to the following items.
・Change the flare nuts with the attached ones (JIS category 2), and reprocess the flare parts.
・Do not use thin-walled pipes.
●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation.
In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
●Use special tools for R410 refrigerant.
●The indoor unit pipes allow the maintenance panel to be removed. Therefore, regardless of the piping direction, there should be a straight section of 400 mm or more.

Work procedure

1. When brazing work, perform it while cool down around the brazing port with wet towels to prevent the overheating.
2. After check the gas leak test, install the heat insulation (prepare on site) to the brazing port of the indoor unit.
●Be sure to perform the heat insulation both of gas side piping with liquid side piping.
※If heat insulation does not install to the pipes, dew condensation may occurs and it may cause the water leakage.
The thickness of the heat insulation should be more than 20mm.
3. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.
○The brazing port size of the indoor unit.

Single unit	Liquid/Gas	Size	Multi unit	Liquid/Gas	Size
Type 200	Liquid piping	ϕ 9.52	Type 224	Liquid piping	ϕ 9.52
	Gas piping	ϕ 25.4		Gas piping	ϕ 19.05
Type 250	Liquid piping	ϕ 12.7	Type 280	Liquid piping	ϕ 9.52
	Gas piping	ϕ 25.4		Gas piping	ϕ 22.22

※Please refer to the installation sheet of outdoor units for details.

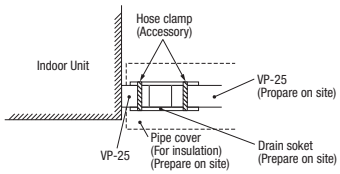
⑧Drain pipe

Caution

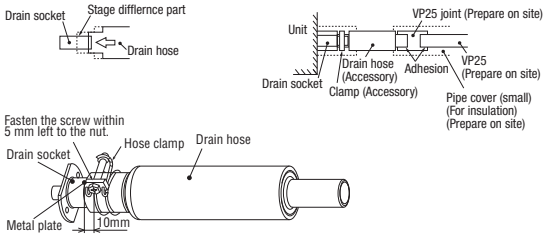
- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly.
  Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

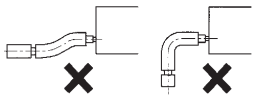
1. Insert the supplied drain hose (the end made of soft PVC) to the step of the drain socket on the indoor unit and fix it securely with the clamp.
   - Do not apply adhesives on this end.



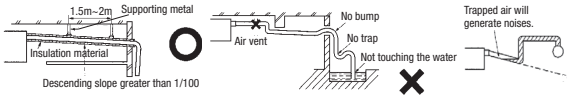
○The cases of FDUA and mouting a Drain-up KIT (option parts)
Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.
Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw within 5mm left to the nut.
- Do not apply adhesives on this end.
- Do not use acetone-based adhesives to connect to the drain socket.



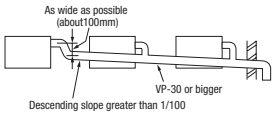
2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP-25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP-25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP-25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   - Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose.
     It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   - The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.



3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   - Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   - Do not set up air vent.



- When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP-30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.



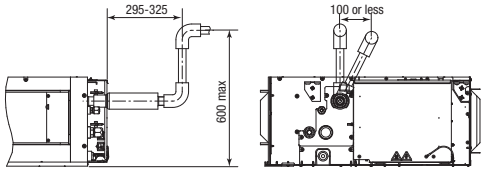
⑧Drain pipe (continued)

4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   - Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.

Drain up

○The cases of FDUA and mounting a drain-up KIT (option parts)

- The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 600mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.



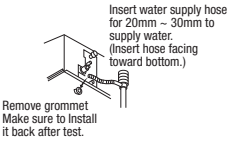
Otherwise, the construction point makes it same as drain pipe construction.

Drain test

1. Conduct a drain test after completion of the electrical work.
2. During the trail, make sure that drain flows properly through the piping and that no water leaks from connections.
3. In case of a new building, conduct the test before it is furnished with the ceiling.
4. Be sure to conduct this test even when the unit is installed in the heating season.

Procedures

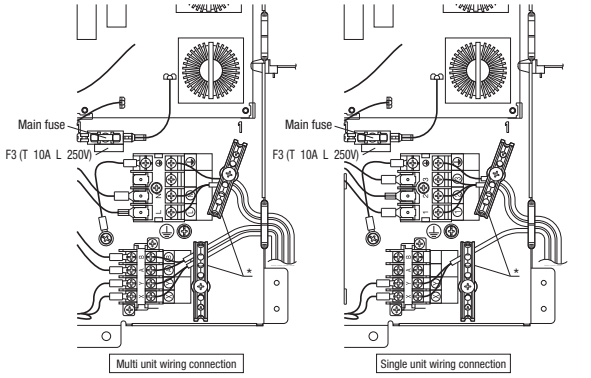
1. Supply about 2000 cc of water to the unit through the air outlet by using a feed water pump.
2. Check the drain while cooling operation.



⑨Wiring-out position and wiring connection

- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
  Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the control box (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and fasten them to terminal block securely.
3. Fix the wiring with clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.



* Please fix the wiring in the band not to move even if it pulls.

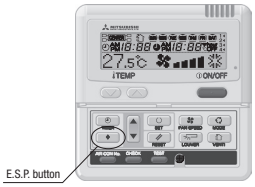
Main fuse specification

Specification	Part No.
T 10A L 250V	SSA 564A149AL

⑩External static pressure setting

You can set External Static Pressure (E.S.P.) by method of MANUAL SETTING on remote control. Indoor unit will control fan-speed to keep rated air flow volume at each fan speed setting (Lo-Uhi)
You can set required E.S.P. by wired remote control that calculated with the set air flow rate and pressure loss of the duct connected.

- How to set E.S.P. by wired remote control
  ① Push "◆" marked button(E.S.P. button).
  ② Select indoor unit No. by using ◆◆ button.
  ③ Select setting No. by using ◆◆ button and set E.S.P. by ( ) button.
  See detailed procedure in technical manual.



Notice
You can NOT set E.S.P. by wireless remote control.

With E.S.P. setting, confirm that actual E.S.P. agrees with E.S.P. setting.
When E.S.P. setting is higher than actual E.S.P., the airflow rate becomes excessively higher. This will cause water leakage if water splashes.
When E.S.P. setting is lower than actual E.S.P., the airflow rate becomes excessively lower and the cooling or heating may become ineffective.
In order to reduce the risk above the factory E.S.P. setting is set within the range of 80 – 150 Pa (E.S.P. setting No. 8 – 15). Be sure to use within the range of 80 – 150 Pa in actual operations. If actual E.S.P. is lower than 80 Pa, it may cause water leakage.

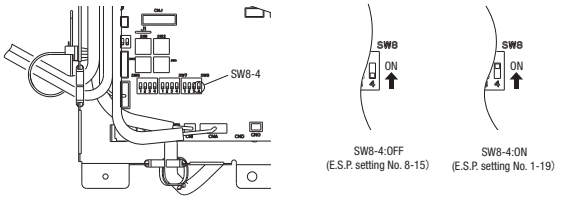
Setting No.	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
E.S.P (Pa)	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150

※ If 1 – 7 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 8.
If 16 – 20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 15.
Factory default is No. 8.

The Case of FDU-F

Setting No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
E.S.P. (Pa)	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120

※ If 13-20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 12.
※ Factory default is No. 8.



⑩External static pressure setting

If SW8-4 is turned to "ON", E.S.P. setting range can be changed to 10 – 200 Pa (E.S.P. setting No. 1 – 19). This should not be used when actual E.S.P. cannot be confirmed, because the risk above becomes higher.

Setting No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
E.S.P. (Pa)	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	200

※ If 20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 19.

⑪Check list after installation

●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
No mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	
Is setting of E.S.P finished?	Excessive air flow, water drop blow out	

(5) Duct connected-Low/Middle static pressure type (FDUM)

(a) Indoor unit

PJG012D008C D

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to the page 158. For remote control installation, refer to the page 166. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to the page 180.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock or fire due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it could cause electric shocks or fire.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect performance or function and etc..
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

○This model is middle static ducted type air conditioning unit. Therefore, do not use this model for direct blow type air conditioning unit.

①Before installation

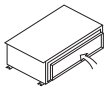
●Install correctly according to the installation manual.

●Confirm the following points:

○Unit type/Power source specification ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For hanging	For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe			
Flat washer (M10)	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
							
8	1	1	4	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid tube	For pipe cover fixing	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting



Accessory parts are stored inside this suction side.

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.

(This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above. If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.)

- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

② Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

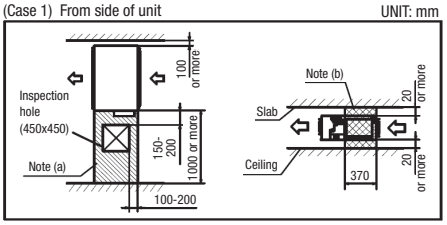
Space for installation and service

●Make installation altitude over 2.5m.

(Indoor Unit)

Select either of two cases to keep space for installation and services.

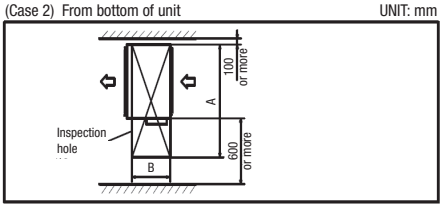
(Case 1) From side of unit UNIT: mm



Notes (a) There must not be obstacle to draw out fan motor. (marked area)

(b) Install refrigerant pipe, drain pipe, and wiring so as not to cross marked area.

(Case 2) From bottom of unit UNIT: mm



(Size of inspection hole) UNIT: mm

Single type	40-50	60-71	100-140
Multi type	22-56	71-90	112-160
A	1100	1300	1720
B	620		725

③Preparation before installation

●If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.

○For grid ceiling

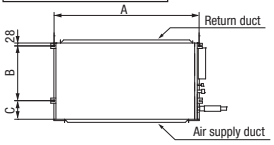
When the suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.

When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

●Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

Suspension Bolt Location

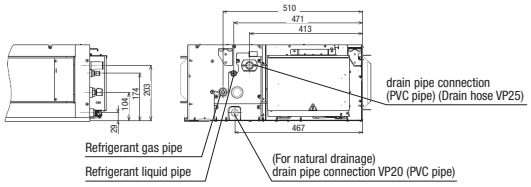


UNIT: mm

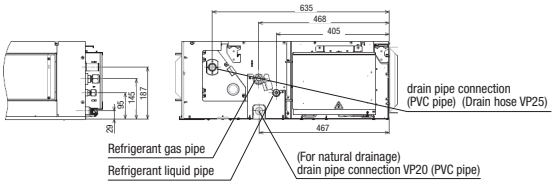
Multi type	22-56	71, 90	112-160
Single type	40-50	60, 71	100-140
A	786	986	1404
B	472	472	530
C	135	135	180

Pipe locations UNIT: mm

Multi type	22-90
Single type	40-71



Multi type	112-160
Single type	100-140

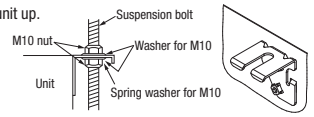


④Installation of indoor unit

Installation

[Hanging]

Hang the unit up.

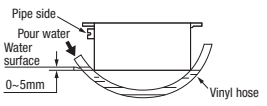


If the measurements between the unit and the ceiling hole do not match upon installation, it may be adjusted with the long holed installation tool.

Adjustment for horizontality

○Either use a level vial, or adjust the level according to the method below.

●Adjust so the bottom side of the unit will be leveled with the water surface as illustrated below.



Let the pipe side be slightly sloped.

○If the unit is not leveled, it may cause malfunctions or inoperation of the float switch.

⑤Duct Work

①A corrugated board (for preventing sputtering) is attached to the main body of the air conditioner (on the outlet port). Do not remove it until connecting the duct.

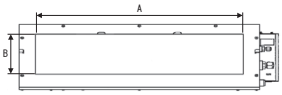
●An air filter can be provided on the main body of the air conditioner (on the inlet port). Remove it when connecting the duct on the inlet port.

②Blowout duct

●Use rectangular duct to connect with unit.
Duct size for each unit is as shown below.

UNIT: mm

Single type	40-50	60-71	100-140
Multi type	22-56	71-90	112-140
A	682	882	1202
B	172	172	172



●Duct should be at their minimum length.

●We recommend to use sound and heat insulated duct to prevent it from condensation.

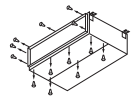
●Connect duct to unit before ceiling attachment.

③Inlet port

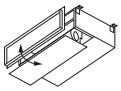
●When shipped the inlet port lies on the back.

●When connecting the duct to the inlet port, remove the air filter if it is fitted to the inlet port.

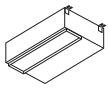
●When placing the inlet port to carry out suction from the bottom side, use the following procedure to replace the suction duct joint and the bottom plate.



●Remove the screws which fasten the bottom plate and the duct joint on the inlet port side of the unit.



●Replace the removed bottom plate and duct joint.



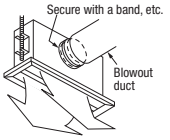
●Fit the duct join with a screw; fit the bottom plate.

●Make sure to insulate the duct to prevent dewing on it.

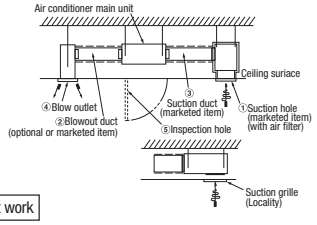
④Install the specific blowout duct in a location where the air will circulate to the entire room.

●Conduct the installation of the specific blowout hole and the connection of the duct before attaching them to the ceiling.

●Insulate the area where the duct is secured by a band for dew condensation prevention.



⑤Make sure provide an inspection hole on the ceiling. It is indispensable to service electric equipment, motor, functional components and cleaning of heat exchanger.



Bad example of duct work

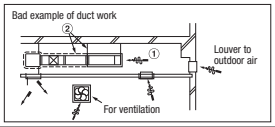
①If a duct is not provided at the suction side but it is substituted with the space over the ceiling, humidity in the space will increase by the influence of capacity of ventilation fan, strength of wind blowing against the out door air louver, weather (rainy day) and others.

a)Moisture in air is likely to condense over the external plates of the unit and to drip on the ceiling. Unit should be operated under the conditions as listed in the above table and within the limitation of wind volume. When the building is a concrete structure, especially immediately after the construction, humidity tends to rise even if the space over the ceiling is not substituted in place of a duct. In such occasion, it is necessary to insulate the entire unit with glass wool (25mm). (Use a wire net or equivalent to hold the glass wool in place.)

b)It may run out the allowable limit of unit operation (Example: When outdoor air temperature is 35°C DB, suction air temperature is 27°C WB) and it could result in such troubles as compressor overload, etc..

c)There is a possibility that the blow air volume may exceed the allowable range of operation due to the capacity of ventilation fan or strength of wind blowing against external air louver so that drainage from be heat exchanger may fall to reach the drain pan but leak outside (Example: drip on to the ceiling) with consequential water leakage in the room.

②If vibration damping is not conducted between the unit and the duct, and between the unit and the slab, vibration will be transmitted to the duct and vibration noise may occur. Also, vibration may be transmitted from the unit to the slab. Vibration damping must be performed.



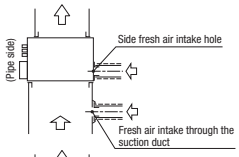
⑤Duct Work (continued)

Connecting the air intake/vent ducts

①Fresh Air Intake

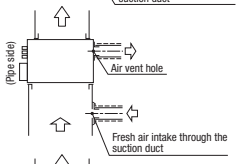
[for air intake duct only]

○Use the side fresh air intake hole, or supply through a part of the suction duct.



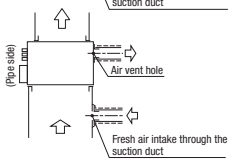
[for simultaneous air intake/vent]

○Intake air through the suction duct.
(the side cannot be used)



②Air Vent

○Use the side air vent hole.
(always use together with the air intake)

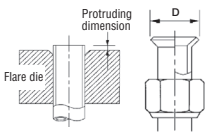


○Insulate the duct to protect it from dew condensation.

⑥Refrigerant pipe

Caution

●Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product or a nut compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.
1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the one attached to the unit or compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R410A.



Pipe dia. d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N·m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 ~ 0.5	0.7 ~ 1.3	8.9 ~ 9.1	14 ~ 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 ~ 13.2	34 ~ 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 ~ 16.6	49 ~ 61
15.88	1			19.3 ~ 19.7	68 ~ 82
19.05	1.2			23.6 ~ 24.0	100 ~ 120

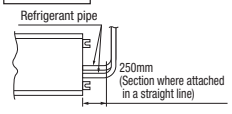
●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation.
In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.

●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.

●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.

●Use special tools for R410A refrigerant.

Piping work



When conducting piping work, make sure to allow the pipes to be aligned in a straight line for at least 250 mm, as shown in the left illustration. (This is necessary for the drain pump to function)

Work procedure

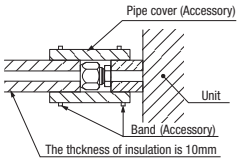
1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
● Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
※Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
※Do a flare connection as follows:
● Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table above. Make sure to hold the pipe on the indoor unit securely by a spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
● Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
● Use heat-resistant (120 °C or more) insulations on the gas side pipes.
● In case of using at high humidity condition, reinforce insulation of refrigerant pipes. Surface of insulation may cause dew condition or water dropping, if insulations are not reinfoced.

⑥Refrigerant pipe (continued)

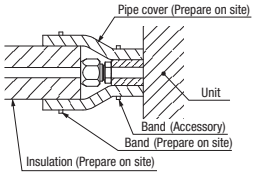
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion.
Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.

<The case of using thicness of insulation is 10mm>



<The case of using reinfoced insulation>



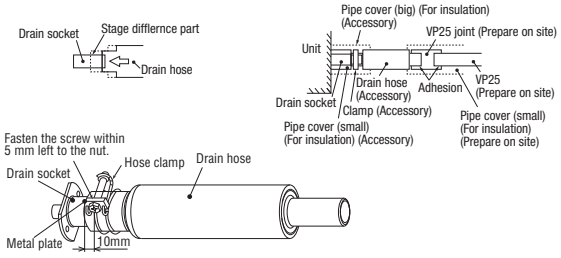
⑦Drain pipe

Caution

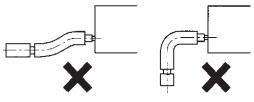
- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly.
  Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen).
  In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

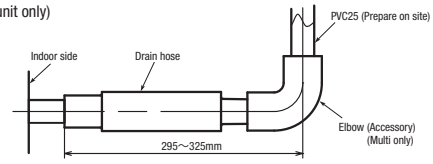
1. Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.
   Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw within 5mm left to the nut.
   ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.
   ●Do not use acetone-based adhesives to connect to the drain socket.



2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP-25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP-25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP-25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   ● Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose.
   It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   ● The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.

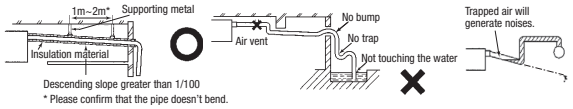


   ●As for drain pipe, apply VP25 (OD32).
   If apply PVC25 (OD25), connect the expanded connector to the drain hose, with adhesive. (Multi unit only)

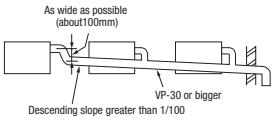


⑦Drain pipe (continued)

3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   ●Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   ●Do not set up air vent.



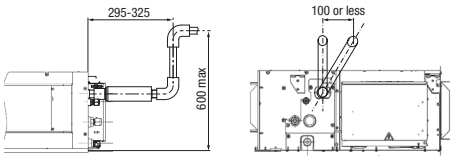
●When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP-30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.



4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   ●Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.
   ※After drainage test implementation, cover the drain socket part with pipe cover (small size), then use the pipe cover (big size) to cover the pipe cover (small size), clamps and part of the drain hose, and fix and wrap it with tapes to wrap and make joint part gapless.

Drain up

- The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 600mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.



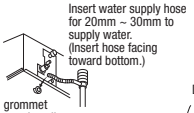
Otherwise, the construction point makes it same as drain pipe construction.

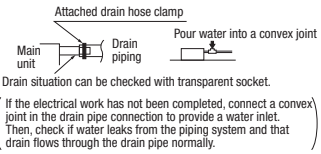
Drain test

1. Conduct a drain test after completion of the electrical work.
2. During the trail, make sure that drain flows properly through the piping and that no water leaks from connections.
3. In case of a new building, conduct the test before it is furnished with the ceiling.
4. Be sure to conduct this test even when the unit is installed in the heating season.

Procedures

1. Supply about 1000 cc of water to the unit through the air outlet by using a feed water pump.
2. Check the drain while cooling operation.

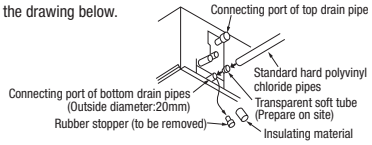




(If the electrical work has not been completed, connect a convex joint in the drain pipe connection to provide a water inlet. Then, check if water leaks from the piping system and that drain flows through the drain pipe normally.)

Outline of bottom drain piping work

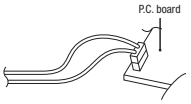
- If the bottom drain piping can be done with a descending gradient (1/50-1/100), it is possible to connect the pipes as shown in the drawing below.



Uncoupling the drain motor connector

- Uncouple the connector CNR for the drain motor as illustrated in the drawing on the right.

(Note: If the unit is run with the connector coupled, drain water will be discharged from the upper drain pipe joint, causing a water leak.)

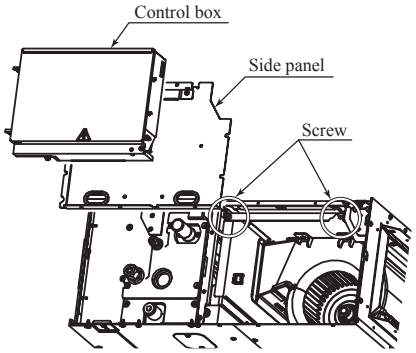


(b) Replacement procedure of the fan unit

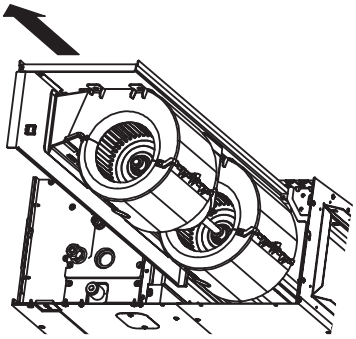
Notes(1) The unit is a heavy item. It must be supported securely and handled with care not to drop when it is necessary to replace.
(2) For the maintenance space, refer to page 149.

(i) Model FDUM71VF1

1) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) in the figure.

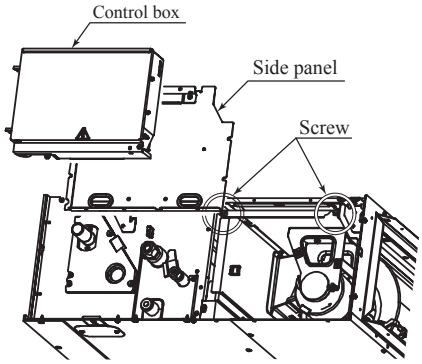


2) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.

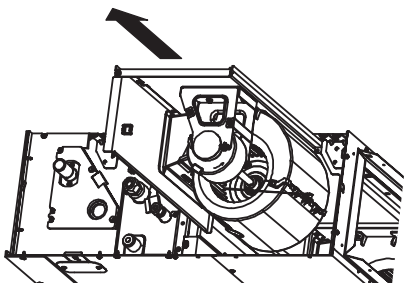


(ii) Models FDUM100VF1, 125VF

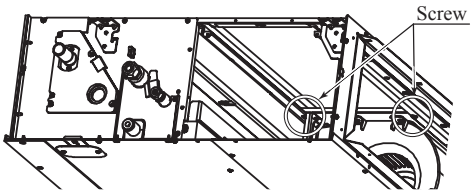
1) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the unit located at the near side.



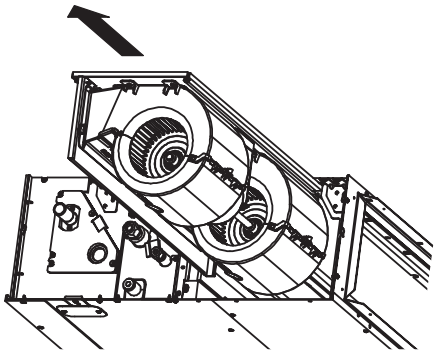
2) Take out the fan unit located at the near side in the arrow direction.



3) Remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the fan unit located at the far side.



4) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.



(6) Floor standing type (FDF)

PGA012D404A A

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to the page 162. For remote control installation, refer to the page 166. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to the page 180.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Imperfect earth work (grounding) could cause an electric shock or fire if some trouble or earth leakage occurs.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  Unless the earth leakage circuit breaker is provided, if could cause a fire or electric shock.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  - Places where flammable gas could leak.
  - Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  - Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  - Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  - On vehicles and ships
  - Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  - Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  - Highly salted area such as beach.
  - Heavy snow area
  - Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  - Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

  It can affect performance or function and etc..
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

①Before installation

○ Install the unit properly according to this instruction manual.
○ Is it in accordance with the construction plan?

Model and power supply specification → Check.

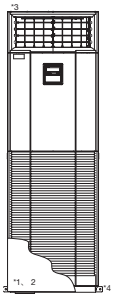
Pipes, wires and small parts → Accessory

(1) **For heat insulation of flare nut** *1

1	Pipe cover		1 pc	For gas side
2	Pipe cover		1 pc	For liquid side
3	Strap		4 pcs	

(2) **For installation** Note) Nos. 1 and 5 are used also as hardware for packing.

1	Fall-prevention fitting		1 pc	*3
2	Wood screw		2 pcs	For No. 1
3	Washer		2 pcs	For No. 2 wood screw
4	Rubber bushing		1 pc	For refrigerant and drain pipes
5	L fitting		2 pcs	*4



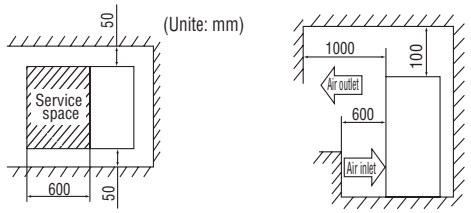
Where the accessories are put in

*1. Open the air inlet grill and Nos. (1) will be found in the unit.
*2. Nos. (2)-2-4 will be found at the same place as 1.
*3. Fall-prevention fitting is mounting on the top panel of the unit.
*4. L-fittings are mounted on the bottom part of the unit.

②Selection of installation place for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.
・Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
・Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
・Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
・Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
・Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
・Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
・Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
・Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
・Areas where dew point is lower than around 23°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.
This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above.
If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
・Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
・Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
・Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
・Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
・Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation. (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)
・When operating the suction air processing unit independently, it operates in the outdoor air processing mode.
Blowout temperatures are not same at the standard unit operation and the outdoor air processing mode operations.
Since the temperatures become higher during cooling or lower during heating, take care of the direction of blowout outlet.
Avoid directing the blowout outlet to the space where people are present.
② Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

Space for installation and service



• Secure sufficient spaces for inspection and maintenance.

⚠WARNING
• Install the unit securely on a floor that can endure its weight sufficiently Insufficient strength or incorrect installation could result in injuries if the unit falls.

ATTENTION: Select a place for installation where the following conditions are fulfilled with customer's consent.
• Where cool or hot air can be blown sufficiently and widely.
• Where the piping and wiring work to outdoor unit can be done easily.
• Where drainage water can run off completely.
• Where the installation floor is strong enough.
• Where the unit its protected from direct exposure to sunlight.
• Where there is no obstacle at he air inlet and air outlet.
• Where the fire alarm apparatus will not be activated by malfunction. Where There is no risk for short-circuit of air.

③Carrying-in and installation of the unit

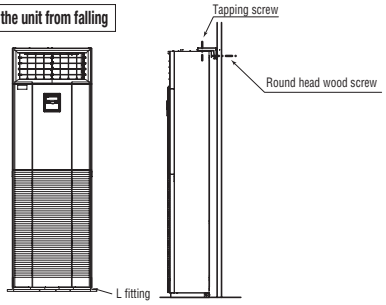
Carrying-in

Carry with the front face at top.

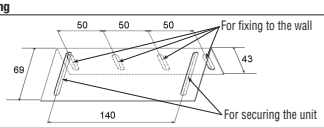
ATTENTION:
• Carry in the unit kept in a package as near as possible to the installation place.
• When it is necessary to unpack the unit before carrying in, sufficient care must be taken not to damage it by using nylon slings or the like.
Note) Do not hold on the air inlet grill, air outlet louver or other sections made of plastics.
• When placing the unit on the floor after unpacking, be sure to have its front face at the top.

ATTENTION:
• Be sure to fix the unit with L-fittings and the fall-prevention fitting.
・Since the unit is tall, secure the unit no sooner than setting it in place.

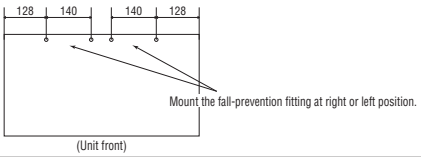
Procedure for preventing the unit from falling



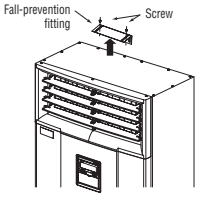
Fall-prevention fitting



Top panel

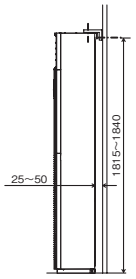
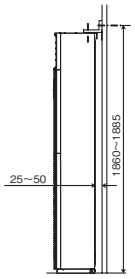


(1) Fixing the unit with the fall-prevention fitting



①Loosen screws (2 pcs) and remove the fall-prevention fitting.
②Select a position to fix the fall-prevention fitting as illustrated and fix it to the top of unit and the wall.
・The fixing positon of the fall-prevention fitting is as illastrated below.

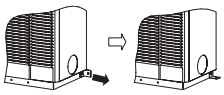
Fixing position (Fall-prevention fitting)

Fitting facing upward	Fitting facing downward
	
25~50 / 1815~1840	25~50 / 1860~1885

• Dimensions indicate the allowance for adjustment between the unit and the wall or floor.
• Fix the longer side of fitting to the unit.
• When the fitting is faced downward, fix it to the wall first.

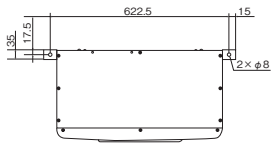
③Carrying-in and installation of the unit (Continued)

(2) Fixing the unit with the L-fittings



①Remove the L-fittings mounted on the unit with screws.
②Turn over the L-fitting and fix it to the unit and either the floor or the wall as illustrated.
• Fixing position of the L-fittings are as illustrated below.

Fixing position (L fitting)

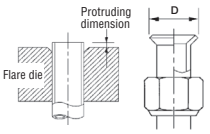


ATTENTION:
• Install the unit on the level.
Inclination must be less than 1°in fore-aft and right-left directions.

④Refrigerant piping

Caution

●Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product or a nut compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.
1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the one attached to the unit or compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R410A.



Pipe dia. d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N·m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 ~ 0.5	0.7 ~ 1.3	8.9 ~ 9.1	14 ~ 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 ~ 13.2	34 ~ 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 ~ 16.6	49 ~ 61
15.88	1			19.3 ~ 19.7	68 ~ 82
19.05	1.2			23.6 ~ 24.0	100 ~ 120

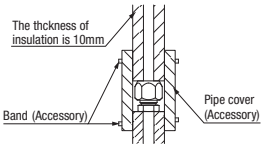
●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation.
In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
●Use special tools for R410A refrigerant.

Work procedure

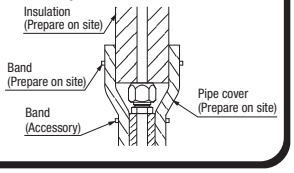
1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
● Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
※Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
※Do a flare connection as follows:
● Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table above. Make sure to hold the pipe on the indoor unit securely by a spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
● Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
● Use heat-resistant (120 °C or more) insulations on the gas side pipes.
● In case of using at high humidity condition, reinforce insulation of refrigerant pipes.
Surface of insulation may cause dew condition or water dropping, if insulations are not reinfoced.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion.
Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.

〈The case of using thicness of insulation is 10mm〉

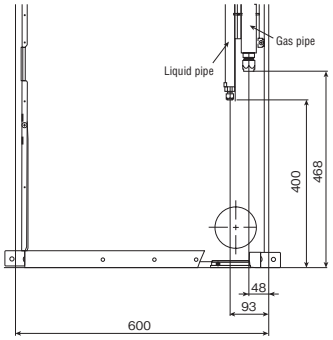


〈The case of using reinfoced insulation〉



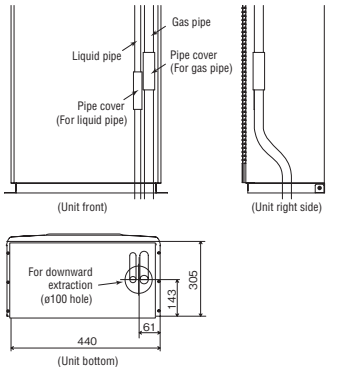
④Refrigerant piping (Continued)

◆ **Pipe and wire extracting position**

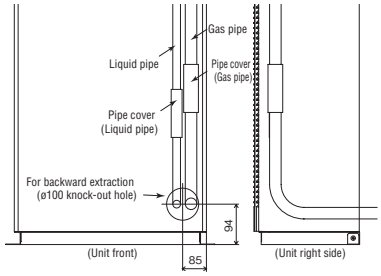


ATTENTION:
• Do not cut off the flange at the hole on the base plate for the downward extraction.

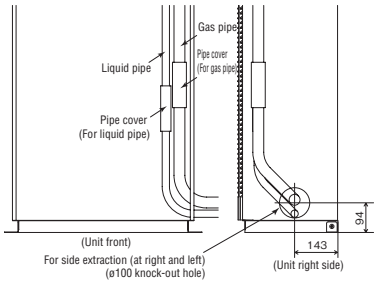
Downward extraction



Backward extraction



Sideward extraction



⑤Drain pipe

⚠WARNING

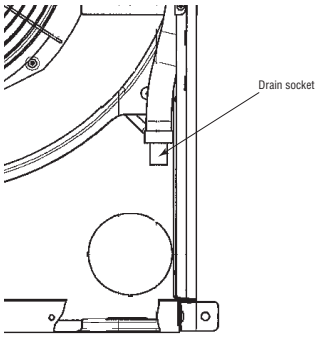
- Do not insert the drain pipe directly in the drain ditch where toxic gases such as sulffuric gas are produced.
  Toxic gas may flow into the room.

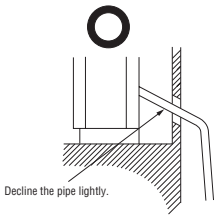
⚠CAUTION

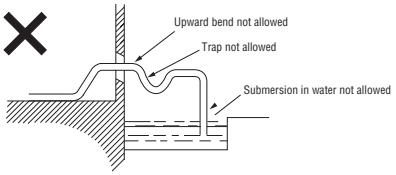
- Install the drain pipe properly according to the installation manu And insulate it to prevent from dew condensation.
  Improper installation of drain pipe may cause damage of furniture drainage water leaked or dew condensation.

Procedure

1. Connect the drain socket to the drain pipe (VP-20) provided at site and fix the joint with adhesive tape, or the like.
2. When the pipe provided at site runs through a room, insulate the pipe with a commercial insulator (Polyethylene foam: Specific gravity 0.03, thickness 15 mm or more) to prevent dewing.







ATTENTION:

- Insulate the drain pipe to prevent dewing. (Especially in room and unit)
- Incline the drain pipe downward to the outlet (1/50 – 1/100). Upward bend or trap is not allowed on the way.
- Use a commercial hard polyvinyl chloride pipe, PV-20, for the drain pipe.

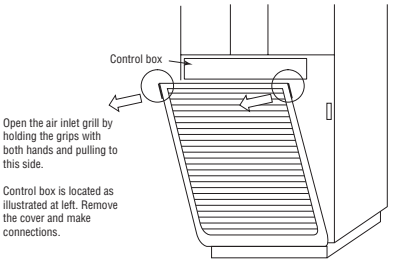
<Use of adhesive agent is prohibited.>

⑥Wire extracting position and wire connecton

Control box position and power cable connection

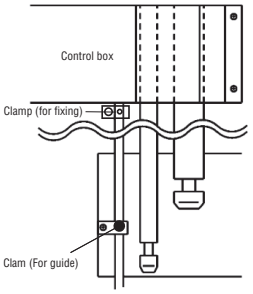
- Electric work must be made by qualified electricians according to the "Engineering standards concerning electric equipment", "Extension wiring regulations" and the electric wiring work manual. Be sure to use dedicated electric circuits.
- Make sure to use specified wires for wiring, and connect them securely. Clamp the wires to protect the terminal connection from external force.
- Make sure to protect the unit with the D-type grounding work.
- For details of wiring work, refer to the attached electric wiring work manual.

⑥Wire extracting position and wire connecton (Continued)

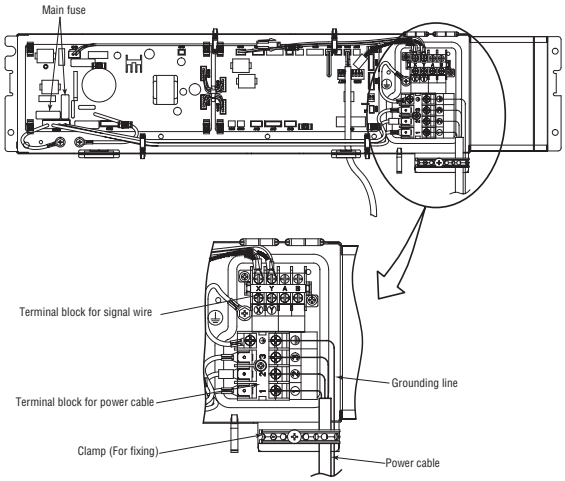


Procedure

①Remove the control box cover (fixed with a screw).
②Introduce wires in the unit and connect securely on the terminals.
③Fix each wire with a clamp (for fixing).
④Install removed parts as they were.



- Make sure to pass the power cable through the clamp (for guide).



Main fuse specification

Specification	Part No.
T3.15A L250V	SSA564A149AF

⑦Check list after installation

●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if;	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for gas leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

(7) Effective range of cool/hot wind (Reference)

(a) FDT series

Guideline for ceiling height

Fan Speed Setting	Model			
	FDT50VF,60VF	FDT71VF1	FDT100VF1	FDT125VF
Hi	2.7m	3.0m	3.2m	3.6m
PHi	3.5m	3.8m	4.3m	4.5m

Notes (1) If the ceiling height is over 3m, please consider to add circulators.
This table shows reference values in case of four outlet.
If you shut some outlets, they are different.
Fan speed setting can be changed by using a wired remote control.

(b) FDEN series

Model	Effective range
FDEN50VF	7.5m
FDEN60VF, 71VF1	8.0m
FDEN100VF1, 125VF	9.0m

[Conditions]
1. Height of unit: 2.4 – 3.0 (m) above floor level
2. Fan speed : Hi
3. Location: Free space without obstacles
4. The effective range means the horizontal distance for wind to reach the floor.
5. Wind speed at the effective range: 0.5 m/s

(c) FDF series

Model	Effective range
FDF100VD1, 125VD	8m

[Conditions]
1. Fan speed : Hi
2. Location: Free space without obstacles
3. The effective range means the horizontal distance for the wind to reach the floor.
4. Wind speed at the effective range: 0.5 m/s

5.2 Electric wiring work installation

(1) FDT, FDTC, FDEN, FDU, FDUM series

PSB012D999

Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electrician qualified by a local power provider according to the electrical installation technical standards and interior wiring regulations applicable to the installation site.

Security instructions

- **Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.**
- **The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .**
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- **The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:**
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- **Accord with following items. Otherwise, there will be the risks of electric shock and fire caused by overheating or short circuit.**

⚠WARNING

- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire. ❗
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire. ❗
- **Use the genuine option parts. And installation should be performed by a specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it could cause water leakage, electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ⃠
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ❗
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan. ❗
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running. ❗

⚠CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short circuit. ⏚
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks. ❗
- **Make sure to install earth leakage breaker on power source line. (countermeasure thing to high harmonics.)**
  Absence of breaker could cause electric shock. ❗
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire. ❗
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire. ⃠
- **Use power source line of correct capacity.**
  Using incorrect capacity one could cause electric leak, abnormal heat generation and fire. ❗
- **Do not mingle solid cord and stranded cord on power source and signal side terminal block.**
  In addition, do not mingle difference capacity solid or stranded cord.
  Inappropriate cord setting could cause loosing screw on terminal block, bad electrical contact, smoke and fire. ⃠
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown. ⃠
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury. ⃠

Control mode switching

- The control content of indoor units can be switched in following way. (▭ is the default setting)

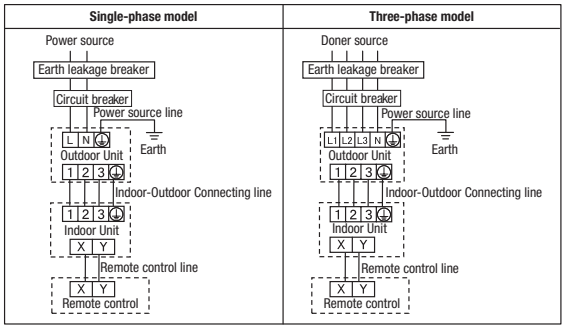
Switch No.	Control Content	
SW2	Indoor unit address (0-Fh)	
SW5-1	Master/Slave Switching (plural /Slave unit Setting)	
SW5-2		
SW6-1～4	Model capacity setting	
SW7－1	ON	Operation check, Drain motor test run
	OFF	Normal operation

①Electrical Wiring Connection

- Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electlician an qualified by a local power provider. These wiring specifications are determined on the assumption that the following instructions are observed:
  ① Do not use cords other than copper ones.
  Do not use any supply line lighter than one specified in parentheses for each type below.
  – braided cord (code designation 60245 IEC 51), if allowed in the relevant part 2;
  – ordinary tough rubber sheathed cord (code designation 60245 IEC 53);
  – flat twin tinsel cord (code designation 60227 IEC 41);
  – ordinary polyvinyl chloride sheathed cord (code designation 60227 IEC 53);
  ② Connect the power source to the outdoor unit.
  ③ Pay extra attention so as not to confuse signal line and power source line connection, because an error in their connection can be burn all the boards at once.
- Screw the line to terminal block without any looseness, certainly.
- Do not turn on the switch of power source, before all of line work is done.
- Provide a dedicated branching circuit and never share a branching circuit with other equipment. If shared, disconnection at the circuit breaker may occur, which can cause secondary damage.
- Use three-core cable as wiring between indoor and outdoor unit. As for detail, refer to "INSTALLATION MANUAL" of outdoor Unit.
- Set earth of D-type.
- Do not add cord in the middle of line (of indoor power source, remote control and signal) route on outside of unit. If connecting point is flooded, it could cause problem as for electric or communication.
  (In the case that it is necessary to set connecting point on the signal line way, perform thorough waterproof measurement.)
- Run the lines (power source, remote control and "between indoor and outdoor unit") upper ceiling through iron pipe or other tube protection to avoid the damage by mouse and so on.
- Keep "remote control line" and "power source line" away from each other on constructing of unit outside.
- Do not connect the power source line [220V/240V/380V/415V] to signal side terminal block. Otherwise, it could cause failure.
- Connection of the line ("Between indoor and outdoor unit", Earth and Remote control)
  ① Remove lid of control box before connect the above lines, and connect the lines to terminal block according to number pointed on label of terminal block.
  In addition, pay enough attention to confirm the number to lines, because there is electrical polarity except earth line.
  Furthermore, connect earth line to earth position of terminal block of power source.
  ② Install earth leakage breaker on power source line. In addition, select the type of breaker for inverter circuit as earth leakage breaker.
  ③ If the function of selected earth leakage breaker is only for earth-fault protection, hand switch (switch itself and type "B" fuse) or circuit breaker is required in series with the earth leakage breaker.
  ④ Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.
  The isolator should be set in the box with key to prevent touching by another person when servicing.

Cable connection for single unit installation

①As for connecting method of power source, select from following connecting patterns. In principle, do not directly connect power source line to inside unit.
※As for exceptional connecting method of power source, discuss with the power provider of the country with referring to technical documents, and follow its instruction.
②For cable size and circuit breaker selection, refer to the outdoor unit installation manual.

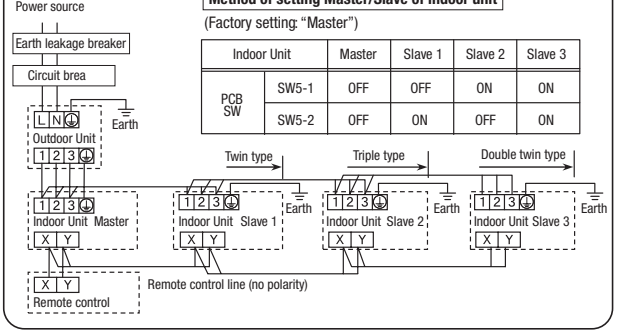


Cable connection for a V multi configuration installation

①Connect the same pairs number of terminal block "①, ②, and ③"and "Ⓧ and Ⓨ " between master and slave indoor units.
②Do the same address setting of all inside units belong to same refrigerant system by rotary switch SW2 on indoor unit's PCB (Printed circuit board).
③Set slave indoor unit as "slave 1" through "slave 3" by address switch SW5-1, 5-2 on PCB.
④When the AIR CON NO. button on the remote control unit is pressed after turning on the power, an indoor unit's address number will be displayed. Do not fail to confirm that the connected indoor unit's numbers are displayed on the remote control unit by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.

Method of setting Master/Slave of indoor unit
(Factory setting: "Master")

Indoor Unit		Master	Slave 1	Slave 2	Slave 3
PCB SW	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON



② Remote Control, Wiring and functions

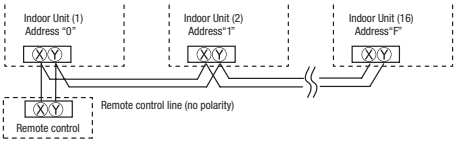
●DO NOT install it on the following places
①Places exposed to direct sunlight
②Places near heat devices
③High humidity places
④Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
⑤Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
⑥Uneven surface

Installation and wiring of remote control

①Install remote control referring to the attached installation manual.
②Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm^2 ×2 core wires or cables.
The insulation thickness is 1mm or more. (on-site configuration)
③Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm^2 . Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
100 - 200m ..... 0.5mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 300m ..... 0.75mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 400m ..... 1.25mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 600m ..... 2.0mm^2 × 2 cores
④Avoid using multi-core cables to prevent malfunction.
⑤Keep remote control line away from earth (frame or any metal of building).
⑥Make sure to connect remote control line to the remote control and terminal block of indoor unit. (No polarity)

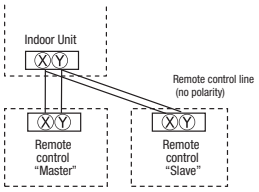
Control plural indoor units by a single remote control.

①A remote control can control plural indoor units (Up to 16).
In above setting, all plural indoor units will operate under same mode and temperature setting.
②Connect all indoor units with 2 core remote control line.
③Set unique remote control communication address from "0" to "F" to each inside unit by the rotary switch SW2 on the indoor unit's PCB.



Master/ slave setting when more than one remote control unit are used

A maximum of two remote control units can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)
The air-conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/slave setting of it.
Acceptable combination is "two (2) wired remote controls", "one (1) wired remote control and one (1) wireless kit" or "two (2) wireless kits".
Set one to "Master" and the other to "Slave".
Note:The setting "Remote control unit sensor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control unit in the position where you want to check room temperature.



③ Operation and confirmation from remote control

Operation from RC-EX1A	Operation from RC-E5

1 Check the number of units connected in the remote control system.
It checks sub units of twin, triple or W-twin connection.

"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Service & Maintenance"⇒ "Input password"⇒"IU address"	Press AIR CON NO button to display the IU address. Press the ▼ or ▲ button and check addresses of connected indoor units one by one.

2 Check if each unit is connected properly in the remote control system.
It cannot check main and sub units of twin, triple or W-twin connection.

When the operation is stopped, "Menu"⇒ "Next"⇒"Service & Maintenance"⇒ "Input password"⇒"IU address"⇒"check run mode"	If AIR CON NO. button is pressed when the operation is stopped, the indoor unit address is displayed. If you select one of addresses for connected indoor units by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button and press the (MODE) button, the unit starts to blow air.

3 Setting main/slave remote controls

"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"R/C function settings"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Main/Sub of R/C"	Set SW1 to "Slave" for the slave remote control unit.

4 Checking operation data

"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Service & Maintenance"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Operation data"	Press the CHECK button. ⇒ "OPER DATA ▼" is displayed. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Press the "SELECT I/U" button. ⇒ Select one of addresses for connected indoor units by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Select data by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.

5 Checking inspection display

"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Service & Maintenance"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Inspection display"	Press the CHECK button. ⇒ ▼ button. ⇒ ERR DATA.⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Data.

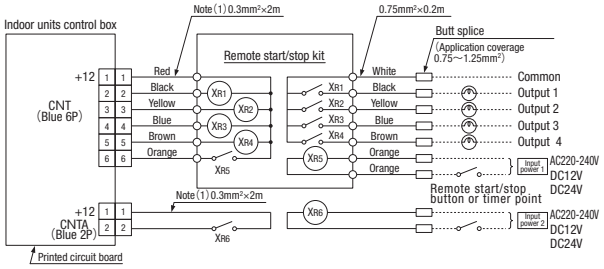
6 Cooling test run from remote control

"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Installation settings"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Test run"⇒ "Cooling test run"⇒"Start"	①Start the system by pressing the ON/OFF button. ②Select " (Cool)" with the (MODE) button. ③Press the TEST button for 3 seconds or longer. The screen display will switch "TEST RUN ▼ " ④When the (SET) button is pressed while " TEST RUN ▼" is indicated, a cooling test run will start. The screen display will switch "TEST RUN ".

7 Trial operation of drain pump from remote control

"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Installation settings"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Test run"⇒ "Drain pump test run"⇒"Run"	①Press the TEST button for three seconds or longer. The display will change " TEST RUN ▼" ②Press the ▼ button once and cause " DRAIN PUMP " to be displayed. ③When the (SET) button is pressed, a drain pump operation will start. Display: " TO STOP "

④ Function of CNT connector of indoor printed circuit board



Note (1): Do not use the length over 2 meter

●CNT connector (local) vendor model
Connector : Made by molex 5264-06
Terminals : Made by molex 5263 T

●Function

Output 1	Air-conditioner operation output (When the air-conditioner ON: X_{61} = ON)	
Output 2	Heating output	
Output 3	Thermostat ON output (When the thermostat ON: X_{R3} = ON)	
Output 4	Air-conditioner check ON (When checking air-conditioner: X_{R4} = ON)	
Input	At shipping	X_{R5} OFF ⇒ ON: Air-conditioner operates.
		X_{R5} ON ⇒ OFF: Air-conditioner stops.
	*Functions and controls may vary depending on the switching at site.	
Input 2 (FDT etc.)	At shipping	X_{R6} OFF ⇒ ON: Air-conditioner operates.
		X_{R6} ON ⇒ OFF: Air-conditioner stops.
	*Functions and controls may vary depending on the switching at site.	

* Refer to I/U settings.

●CNTA connector is installed on FDT, etc. Refer to the spec. drawings.
CNTA connector (local) vendor model
Connector : Made by JST XAP02V-1-E
Terminals : Made by JST SXA-01T-P0.6

⑥Operation and setting from remote control

A: Refer to the instruction manual for RC-EX series.
B: Refer to the installation manual for RC-EX series.
C: Loading a utility software vie Internet
○: Nearly same function setting and operations are possible.
△: Similar function setting and operations are possible.

	Setting & display item	Description	RC-EX series	RC-E5
1. Remote Control network				
1	Control plural indoor units by a single remote control	A remote control can control plural indoor units up to 16 (in one group of remote control network). An address is set to each indoor unit.	○	○
2	Master/slave setting of remote controls	A maximum of two remote controls (include option wireless) can be connected to one indoor unit. Set one to "Master" and the other to "Slave".	B	○
2. TOP screen, Switch manipulation			A	
1	Menu	"Control", "Settings", or "Details" can be selected. (3.-19.)	A	
2	Operation mode	"Cooling", "Heating", "Fan", "Dry" or "Auto" can be set.	A	○
3	Set temp.	"Set temperature" can be set by 0.5℃ interval.	A	○
4	Air flow direction	"Air flow direction". [Individual flap control setting] can be set.	A	○
5	Fan speed	"Fan speed" can be set.	A	○
6	Timer setting	"Timer operation" can be set.	A	○
7	ON/OFF	"On/Off operation of the system" can be done.	A	○
8	High power SW	"High power operation" or "Normal operation" can be selected.	A	
9	Energy-saving SW	"Energy-saving operation" or "Normal operation" can be selected.	A	
3. Energy-saving settin			A	
1	Auto OFF timer [Administrator password]	For preventing the timer from keeping ON, set hours to stop operation automatically with this timer. ・The selectable range of setting time is from 30 to 240 minutes (10minutes interval) ・When setting is "Valid", this timer will activate whenever the ON timer is set.	A	△
2	Peak-cut timer [Administrator password]	Power consumption can be reduced by restricting the maximum capacity. Set the [Start time], the [End time] and the capacity limit % (Peak-cut %). ・4-operation patterns per day can be set at maximum. ・The setting time can be changed by 5-minutes interval. ・The selectable range of capacity limit % (Peak-cut %) is from 0% to 40-80% (20% interval). ・Holiday setting is available.	A	
3	Automatic temp. set back [Administrator password]	After the elapse of the set time period, the current set temp. will be set back to the [Set back temp.] ・The setting can be done in cooling and heating mode respectively. ・The selectable range of the set time is from 20 min. to 120 min. (10 min. interval). ・Set the [Set back temp.] by 1℃ interval.	A	△
4. Individual flap control setting			A	
	Individual flap control setting	The moving range (the positions of upper limit and lower limit) of the flap for individual air outlet port can be set.	A	○
5. Ventilation				
1	External ventilation (In combination with ventilator)	On/Off operation of the external ventilator can be done. ・The settings of [Interlock] with AC (air-conditioner), [Single operation] of ventilator or operation [invalid] of ventilation can be done through [Ventilation settings] in the [Remote control] menu.	A	○
6.Filter sign reset			A	○
1	Filter sign reset	The filter sign can be reset.	B	
2	Setting next cleaning date	The next cleaning date can be set.	A	
7.Initial settings				
1	Clock setting	The current date and time can be set or revised.	A	△
2	Date and time display	[Display] or [Hide] the date and/or time can be set, and the [12H] or [24H] display can be set.	A	
3	Summer time	When select [Valid], the +1hour adjustment of current time can be set.When select [Invalid], the [Summer time] adjustment can be reset.	A	
4	Contrast	The contrast of LCD can be adjusted higher or lower.	A	
5	Backlight	Switching on/off a light can be set and the period of the lighting time can be set within the range of 5sec-90sec (5sec interval).	A	
6	Control sound	It can set with or without [Control sound (beep sound)] at touching panel.	A	
8.Timer settings			A	
1	Set On timer by hour	The period of time to start operation after stopping can be set. ・The period of set time can be set within the range of 1hour-12hours (1hr interval). ・The operation mode, set temp and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
2	Set Off timer by hour	The period of time to stop operation after starting can be set. ・The period of set time can be set within the range of 1hour-12hours (1hr interval).	A	△
3	Set On timer by clock	The clock time to start operation can be set. ・The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・[Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched. ・The operation mode, set temp and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
4	Set Off timer by clock	The clock time to stop operation can be set. ・The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・[Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched.	A	△
5	Confirmation of timer settings	Status of timer settings can be seen.	A	
9.Weekly timer				
1	Weekly timer [Administrator password]	On timer and Off timer on weekly basis can be set. ・8-operation patterns per day can be set at a maximum. ・The setting clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・Holiday setting is available. ・The operation mode, set temp and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△ △ △
10.Home leave mode				
1	Home leave mode [Administrator password]	When leaving home for a long period like a vacation leave, the unit can be operated to maintain the room temperature not to be hotter in summer or not to be colder in winter. ・The judgment to switch the operation mode (Cooling⇔Heating) is done by the both factors of the set temp. and outdoor air temp. ・The set temp. and fan speed can be set.	A	

⑥Operation and setting from remote control (continued)

Setting & display item		Description	RC-EX series	RC-E5
11. Administrator settings		[Administrator password]	A	
1	Enable/Disable setting	・Enable/Disable setting of operation can be set. [On/Off] [Change set temp.] [Change operation mode] [Change air flow direction] [Individual flap control setting][Fan speed] [High power operation] [Energy-saving operation] [Timer settings] [Weekly timer setting] ・Request for administrator password can be set. [Individual flap control setting][Weekly timer][Energy-saving setting][Home leave mode][Administrator settings]	A	△
2	Silent mode timer	The period of time to operate the outdoor unit by prioritizing the quietness can be set. ・The [Start time] and the [End time] for operating outdoor unit in silent mode can be set. ・The period of the operation time can be set once a day by 5 minutes interval.	A	△
3	Setting temp. range	The upper/lower limit of indoor temp. setting range can be set. ・The limitation of indoor temp. setting range can be set for each operation mode in cooling and heating.	A	△
4	Temp. increment setting	The temp increment setting can be changed by 0.5℃ or 1.0℃.	A	
5	RC display setting	Register [Room name] [Name of I/U] Display [indoor temp.] or not. Display [inspection code] or not. Display [Heating stand-by] [Defrost operation] [Auto cooling/heating] or not	A	 ○ △ ○
6	Change administrator password	The administrator password can be changed. (Default setting is "0000") The administrator password can be reset.	A B	
12.Installer settings		[Service password]	B	
1	Installation date	The [Installation date] can be registered. ・When registering the [Installation date], the [Next service date] is displayed automatically. (For changing the [Next service date]. please refer the item of [Service & Maintenance].)	B	
2	Service contact	The [Service contact] can be registered and can be displayed on the RC. ・The [Contact company] can be registered within 10 characters. ・The [Contact phone] can be registered within 13 digits.	B	
3	Test run	On/Off operation of the test run can be done.	B	
	Cooling test run	The [Cooling test run] can be done at 5℃ of set temp. for 30 minutes.		○
	Drain pump test run	Only the drain pump can be operated.		○
	Compressor Hz fixed operation	The [Test run] operation can be done with fixed compressor Hz set by installer.		○
4	Static pressure adjustment	In case of combination with only the ducted indoor unit which has a function of static pressure adjustment, the static pressure is adjustable.	B	
5	Change auto-address	The set address of each indoor unit decided by auto-address setting method can be changed to any other address. (For multiple KX units only)	B	△
6	Address setting of Main IU	Main indoor unit address can be set. ・Only the Main indoor unit can change operation mode and the Sub indoor units dominated by the Main indoor unit shall follow. ・The Main indoor unit can domain 10 indoor units at a maximum.	B	△
13.RC function settings		[Service password]	B	
1	Main/Sub RC setting	The setting of [Main/Sub RC] can be changed.	B	○
2	RC sensor	The offset value of [RC sensor] sensing temp. can be set respectively in heating and cooling.	B	○
3	9 RC sensor adjustment	The offset value of [RC sensor] sensing temp. can be set respectively in heating and cooling. ・The setting range of offset value is ±3℃ both in cooling and heating.	B	△
4	12 Operation mode	The [Valid/Invalid] setting of [Auto][Cooling][Heating] and [Dry] can be done respectively.	B	○
5	13 Fan speed	The setting of [Fan speed] can be done from following patterns.・1-speed, 2-speeds (Hi-Me), 2-speeds (Hi-Lo), 3-speeds, 4-speeds.	B	○
6	14 External input	The applicable range ([Individual] or [All units]) of CnT input to the multiple indoor units connected in one control system. ・[Individual] : Only the unit received CnT input signal.・[All units] : All the units connected to one control system received CnT input signal.	B	○
7	15 Ventilation setting	The setting of [Invalid] operation of ventilator, [Interlock] with AC or [Independent] of ventilator can be selected. ・When setting [Interlock], the operation of external ventilator is interlocked with the operation of AC ・When setting [Independent], only the operation of external ventilator is available.	B	○
8	16 Flap control	The [Flap control] method can be switched to[Stop at fixed position] or [Stop at any position]・[Stop at fixed position] : Stop the flap at a certain position among the designated 4 positions.・[Stop at any position] : Stop the flap at any arbitrary position just after the stopping command from RC was sent.	B	○
9	17 Auto-restart	The operation control method after recovery of power blackout happened during operation can be set.	B	○
10	18 Auto temp. setting	[Valid] or [Invalid] of [Auto temp. setting] can be selected.	B	
11	19 Auto fan speed setting	[Valid] or [Invalid] of [Auto fan speed setting] can be selected.	B	
14. I/U settings		[Service password]	B	
1	High ceiling	The fan tap of indoor fan can be changed. ・[Standard] [High ceiling 1] [High ceiling 2] can be selected.	B	○
2	Filter sign	The setting of filter sign display timer can be done from following patterns.	B	○
3	External input 1	The content of control by external input can be changed.・The selectable contents of control are [On/Off] [Permission/Prohibition] [Cooling/heating] [Emergency stop]	B	○
4	External input 1 signal	The type of external input signal ([Level input]/[Pulse input]) can be changed.	B	○
5	External input 2	・The selectable contents of control are [On/Off] [Permission/Prohibition] [Cooling/heating] [Emergency stop]	B	
6	External input 2 signal	The type of external input signal ([Level input]/[Pulse input]) can be changed.	B	
7	Heating thermo-off temp. adjust.	The judgment temp. of heating thermo-off can be adjusted within the range from 0 to +3℃ (1℃ interval)	B	△
8	Return air sensor adjust.	The sensing temp. of return air temp. sensor built in the indoor unit can be adjusted within the range of ±2℃.	B	△
9	Fan control in heating thermo OFF	The fan control method at heating thermo-off can be changed.・The selectable fan control methods are [Low] [Set fan speed] [Intermittent] [Stop].	B	○
10	Anti-frost temp.	The judgment temp. of anti-frost control for the indoor unit in cooling can be changed to [Temp. High] or [Temp. Low].	B	○
11	Anti-frost control	When the anti-frost control of indoor unit in cooling is activated, the fan speed can be changed.	B	○
12	Drain pump operation	In any operation mode in addition to cooling and dry mode, the setting of drain pump operation can be done.	B	○
13	Residual fan operation in cooling	The time period of residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in cooling mode can be set.	B	○
14	Residual fan operation in heating	The time period of residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in heating mode can be set.	B	○
15	Intermittent fan operation in heating	The fan operation rule following the residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in heating mode can be set.	B	○
16	Fan circulator operation	In case that the fan is operated as the circulator, the fan control rule can be set.	B	
17	Control pressure adjust. (For OA processing unit only)	When only the OA processing units are operated, control pressure value can be changed.	B	○
18	Auto operation mode	The [Auto rule selection] for switching the operation mode automatically can be selected from 3 patterns.	B	
19	Thermo. rule setting	When selecting [Outdoor air temp. control], the judgment temp can be offset by outdoor temp..	B	
20	Auto fan speed control	Under the [Auto fan speed control] mode, the switching range of fan speed can be selected from following 2 patterns [Auto 1] [Auto 2]. ・[Auto 1] : Hi ⇔Me⇔Lo・[Auto 2] : P-hi⇔Hi⇔Me⇔Lo	B	
15.Service & Maintenance		[Service password]	B	
1	IU address No.	Max. 16 indoor units can be connected to one remote control, and all address No. of the connected indoor units can be displayed. ・The indoor unit conforming to the address No. can be identified by selecting the address No. and tapping [Check] to operate the indoor fan.	B	○
2	Next service date	The [Next service date] can be registered.・The [Next service date] and [Service contact] is displayed on the [Periodical check] message screen.	AB	
3	Operation data	Total 39 items of [Operation data] for indoor unit and outdoor unit can be displayed.	B	○
4	Error history	[Date and time of error occurred] [I/U address] [Error code] for Max. 16 latest cases of error history can be displayed.	B	△
	Display anomaly data	The operation data just before the latest error stop can be displayed.	B	
	Reset periodical check	The timer for the periodical check can be reset.	B	○
5	Saving I/U settings	The I/U settings memorized in the indoor PCB connected to the remote control can be saved in the memory of the remote control.	B	
6	Special settings	[Erase I/U address] [CPU reset] [Initializing] [Touch panel calibration]	B	△
16.Inspection			A	△
	Confirmation of Inspection	The address No, of anomalous indoor/outdoor unit and error code are displayed.		
17.PC connection			C	
	USB connection	Weekly timer setting and etc., can be set from PC.		

(2) FDF series

PGA012D405

Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electrician qualified by a local power provider according to the electrical installation technical standards and interior wiring regulations applicable to the installation site.

Security instructions

- **Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.**
- **The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .**
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- **The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:**
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. | ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- **Accord with following items. Otherwise, there will be the risks of electric shock and fire caused by overheating or short circuit.**

⚠WARNING

- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire. ❗
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire. ❗
- **Use the genuine optional parts. And installation should be performed by a specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it could cause water leakage, electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ⃠
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ❗
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan. ❗
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running. ❗

⚠CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short circuit. ⏚
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks. ❗
- **Make sure to install earth leakage breaker on power source line. (countermeasure thing to high harmonics.)**
  Absence of breaker could cause electric shock. ❗
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire. ❗
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire. ⃠
- **Use power source line of correct capacity.**
  Using incorrect capacity one could cause electric leak, abnormal heat generation and fire. ❗
- **Do not mingle solid cord and stranded cord on power source and signal side terminal block.**
  In addition, do not mingle difference capacity solid or stranded cord.
  Inappropriate cord setting could cause loosing screw on terminal block, bad electrical contact, smoke and fire. ⃠
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown. ⃠
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury. ⃠

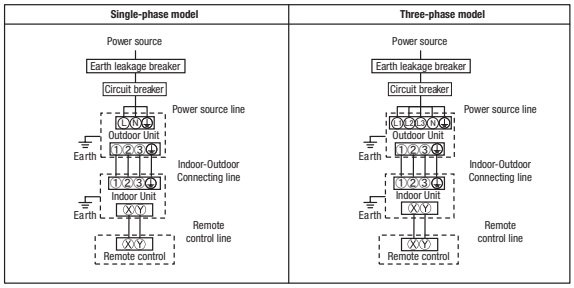
①Electrical Wiring Connection

- Use three-core cable as wiring between indoor and outdoor unit. As for detail, refer to "INSTALLATION MANUAL" of outdoor Unit.
- Set earth of D-type.
- Keep "remote controller line" and "power source line" away from each other on constructing of unit outside.
- Run the lines (power source, remote controller and "between indoor and outdoor unit") upper ceiling through iron pipe or other tube protection to avoid the damage by mouse and so on.
- Do not add cord in the middle of line route (of power source, remote control and "between indoor and outdoor unit") on outside of unit. If connecting point is flooded, it could cause problem as for electric or communication. (In the case that it is necessary to set connecting point on the way, perform thorough waterproof measurement.)
- Do not connect the power source line [220V/240V/380V/415V] to signal side terminal block. Otherwise, it could cause failure.
- Screw the line to terminal block without any looseness, certainly.
- Do not turn on the switch of power source, before all of line work is done.
- Connection of the line ("Between indoor and outdoor unit", Earth and Remote controller)

①Remove lid of control box before connect the above lines, and connect the lines to terminal block according to number pointed on label of terminal block.
In addition, pay enough attention to confirm the number to lines, because there is electrical polarity except earth line. Furthermore, connect earth line to earth position of terminal block of power source.
②Install earth leakage breaker on power source line. In addition, select the type of breaker for inverter circuit as earth leakage breaker.
③If the function of selected earth leakage breaker is only for earth-fault protection, hand switch (switch itself and type "B" fuse) or circuit breaker is required in series with the earth leakage breaker.
④Install the local switch near the unit.

Cable connection for single unit installation

①As for connecting method of power source, select from following connecting patterns. In principle, do not directly connect power souce line to inside unit.
※ As for exceptional connecting method of power souce, discuss with the power provider of the country with referring to technical documents, and follow its instruction.
②For cable size and circuit breaker selection, refer to the outdoor unit installation manual.

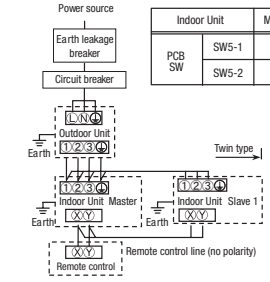


Cable connection for a V multi configuration installation

①Connect the same pairs number of terminal block "①, ②, and ③"and "ⓍandⓎ" between master and slave indoor units.
②Do the same address setting of all inside units belong to same refrigerant system by rotary switch SW2 on indoor unit's PCB (Printed circuit board).
③Set slave indoor unit as "slave 1" through "slave 3" by address switch SW5-1, 5-2 on PCB.
④When the AIR CON NO. button on the remote control unit is pressed after turning on the power, an indoor unit's address number will be displayed. Do not fail to confirm that the connected indoor unit's numbers are displayed on the remote control unit by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.

Method of setting Master/Slave of indoor unit

(Factory setting: "Master")



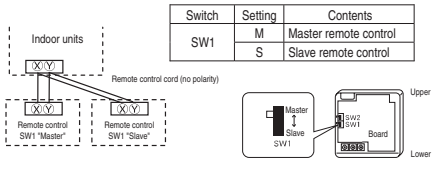
Indoor Unit		Master	Slave 1	Slave 2	Slave 3
PCB SW	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON

Switch and wiring specification

Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

②Wiring for the remote control

- For each indoor unit, one more remote control can be connected in addition to the one which is built in the main unit.



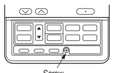
Switch	Setting	Contents
SW1	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control

Set SW1 to "Slave" for the slave remote control. It was factory set to "Master" for shipment.
Note: The setting "Remote control thermistor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control in the position where you want to check room temperature.
The air conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/ slave setting of it.

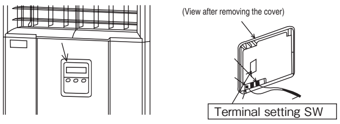
* When setting the remote control built in the main unit to the "Slave":
Remove the cover and change the setting of switch as follows.

②Wiring for the remote control (Continued)

① Open the remote control cover and remove the screw without fail.



② Remove the upper case of remote control. Attach a flat head screwdriver at the upper part of remote control and pry lightly. It will come off easily.
Use some cushion to protect the center panel.



③Function Setting by Remote Control

Installation and wiring of remote control

①Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm^2 × 2 core wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
②Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm^2 . Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.

100 - 200m·························0.5mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 300m ·······················0.75mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 400m ·······················1.25mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 600m ·······················2.0mm^2 × 2 cores

The indication when power source is supplied

When power source is turned on, the following is displayed on the remote control until the communication between the remote control and indoor unit settled.

Master remote control : " WAIT "M
Slave remote control : " WAIT "S

At the same time, a mark or a number will be displayed for two seconds first.
This is the software's administration number of the remote control, not an error cord.

06 AC
WAIT M

※The left mark is only an example. Other marks may appear.

When remote control cannot communicate with the indoor unit for half an hour, the below indication willappear.
Check wiring of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit etc.

INSPECT I/U

How to set function

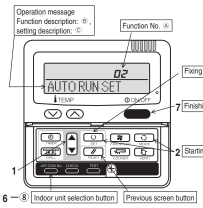
1. **Stop air-conditioner and press (SET) (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds, and the "FUNCTION SET ▼" will be displayed.**

FUNCTION SET ▼

2. **Press (SET) button.**
3. **Make sure which do you want to set, " FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION ▲" (indoor unit function).**
4. **Press or button.**
Selecct " FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION▲" (indoor unit function).

FUNCTION ▼
I/U FUNCTION ▲

5. **Press (SET) button.**



6. **【On the occasion of remote control function selection】**
① "DATA LOADING" (Indication with blinking) → Display is changed to "01 GRILLE ↑↓SET".
② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function"are indicated by turns on the remote control function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)

02 ← Function No.
AUTO RUN SET ← Function

③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(for example) "AUTO RUN ON" ← If "02 AUTO RUN SET" is selected

02
AUTO RUN ON ← Setting

④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.

02 AUTO RUN ON ⟷ 02 UTO RUN OFF A

⑤ Press (SET) button.
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, Set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously ,and if to finish, go to 7.

02
SET COMPLETE

【On the occasion of indoor unit function selection】
① "DATA LOADING" (Blinking for 2 to 23 seconds to read the data)
↓
Indication is changed to "02 FAN SPEED SET". Go to ②.

[Note]
(1) If plural indoor units are connected to a remote controller, the indication is "I/U 000" (blinking) ← The lowest number of the indoor unit connected is indicated.

I/U000 ▲

(2) Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the number of the indoor unit you are to set
If you select "ALL UNIT ▼", you can set the same setting with all unites.

(3) Press (SET) button.

② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function" are indicated by turns on the indoor unit function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)

02 ← Function No.
FAN SPEED SET ← Function

③Function Setting by Remote Control (Continued)

③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(For example) "STANDARD" ← If "02 FAN SPEED SET" is selected.

02
STANDARD ← Setting

④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.

⑤ Press (SET) button.
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously , and if to finish, go to 7.

02
SET COMPLETE

※ When plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, press the AIRCON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen. (example "I/U 000 ") ▲

7. Press ON/OFF button.
Setting is finished.

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.
- Setting is memorized in the control and it is saved independently of power failure.

【How to check the current setting】
When you select from "No. and funcion" and press set button by the previous operation, the "Setting" displayed first is the current setting.
(But, if you select "ALL UNIT ▼", the setting of the lowest number indoor unit is displayed.)

The functional setting

●The initial function setting for typical using is performed automatically by the indoor unit connected, when remote controller and indoor unit are connected.
As long as they are used in a typical manner, there will be no need to change the initial settings.
If you would like to change the initial setting marked " ○", set your desired setting as for the selected item.
The procedure of functional setting is shown as the following diagram.

Sequence of the function setting is as follows.

The range of temperature setting

When shipped, the range of set temperature differs depending on the operation mode as below.
Heating : 16~30ûC (55~86ûF)
Except heating (cooling, fan, dry, automatic) : 18~30ûC (62~86ûF)

●Upper limit and lower limit of set temperature can be changed with remote controller.
Upper limit setting: valid during heating operation. Possible to set in the range of 20 to 30ûC (68 to 86ûF).
Lower limit setting: valid except heating (automatic, cooling, fan, dry) Possible to set in the range of 18 to 26ûC (62 to 79ûF).
When you set upper and lower limit by this function, control as below.

1. When ⑫TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "INDN CHANGE" (factory setting),
【If upper limit value is set】
During heating, you cannot set the value exceeding the upper limit.

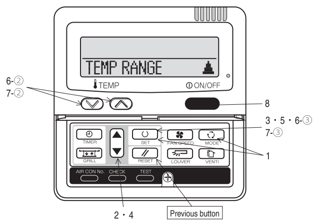
【If lower limit value is set 】
During operation mode except heating, you cannot set the value below the lower limit.

2. When ⑫ TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "NO INDN CHANGE"
【If upper limit value is set】
During heating, even if the value exceeding the upper limit is set, upper limit value will be sent to the indoor unit.
But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.
【If lower limit value is set 】
During except heating, even if the value lower than the lower limit is set, lower limit value will be sent to the indoor unit.
But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

●How to set upper and lower limit value

1. Stop the air-conditioner, and press (SET) and (MODE) button at the same time for over three seconds .
The indication changes to "FUNCTION SET ▼".
2. Press ▼ button once, and change to the "TEMP RANGE ▲ " indication.
3. Press (SET) button, and enter the temperature range setting mode.
4. Select "UPPER LIMIT ▼" or "LOWER LIMIT▲" by using ▲ ▼ button.
5. Press (SET) button to fix.
6. When "UPPER LIMIT ▼" is selected (valid during heating)
① Indication: " ∨ ∧ SET UP" → "UPPER 30ûC ∨ "
② Select the upper limit value with temperature setting button ∨ ∧ . Indication example: "UPPER 26ûC∨ ∧" (blinking)
③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication example: "UPPER 26ûC" (Displayed for two seconds)
After the fixed upper limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "UPPER LIMIT ▼".
7. When "LOWER LIMIT ▲" is selected (valid during cooling, dry, fan, automatic)
① Indication: " ∨ ∧ SET UP" → "LOWER 18ûC ∧ "
② Select the lower limit value with temperature setting button ∨ ∧ . Indication example: "LOWER 24ûC∨ ∧" (blinking)
③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication for example: "LOWER 24ûC" (Displayed for two seconds)
After the fixed lower limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "LOWER LIMIT ▼".
8. Press ON/OFF button to finish.

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.



Note 1: Fan setting of "HIGH SPEED"

Fan tap		Indoor unit air flow setting			
		✲▮▮▮▮ - ✲▮▮▮ - ✲▮▮▮ - ✲▮▯▯	✲▮▮▮ - ✲▮▮▯ - ✲▮▯▯	✲▮▮▮ - ✲▮▯▯	✲▮▮▮ - ✲▮▮▯
FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	UH - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me
	HIGH SPEED1, 2	UH - UH - Hi - Me	UH - Hi - Me	UH - Me	UH - Hi

Initial function setting of some indoor unit is "HIGH SPEED"

Note 2: As for plural indoor unit, set indoor functions to each master and slave indoor unit.
But only master indoor unit is received the setting change of indoor unit function "05 EXTERNAL INPUT" and "06 PERMISSION / PROHIBISHION".

③Function Setting by Remote Control (Continued)

[Flow of function setting]

Start : While indoor unit do not operate, press " ○ " (SET) and " ⟲ " (MODE) button for 3 seconds at the same time.
Finalize : Press " ○ " (SET) button.
Reset : Press " ⌀ " (RESET) button.
Select : Press ▲ ▼ button.
End : Press ⏻ON/OFF button.

It is possible to finish above setting on the way, and unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
" ○ " : Initial settings
" ※ " : Automatic criterion
As for detail, refer to the installation manual of remote control.

During air-conditioner stopping push ○ (SET) + ⟲ (MODE) button simultaneously for 3 seconds

Consult the technical data etc for each control details

Record and save the setting

FUNCTION SET ▼

FUNCTION ▼ (Remote control function)

Function	setting		
01 GRILLE ↑↓ SET			
	↑↓ INVALID	○	
	50Hz ZONE ONLY		When you use at 50Hz area
	60Hz ZONE ONLY		When you use at 60Hz area
02 AUTO RUN SET			
	AUTO RUN ON	★	
	AUTO RUN OFF	○	Automatic operation is impossible
03 TEMP SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Temperature setting button is not working
04 MODE SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Mode button is not working
05 ON/OFF SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		On/Off button is not working
06 FAN SPEED SW			
	VALID	※	
	INVALID	※	Fan speed button is not working
07 LOUVER SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID	★	Louver button is not working
08 TIMER SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Timer button is not working
09 SENSOR SET			
	SENSOR OFF	○	Remote thermistor is not working.
	SENSOR ON		Remote thermistor is working.
	SENSOR +3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +3.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +2.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +1.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -1.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -2.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -3.0°C increase in temperature.
10 AUTO RESTART			
	INVALID	○	
	VALID		
11 VENT LINK SET			
	NO VENT	○	
	VENT LINK		Connect the Single split series and the VRF series to the indoor board CNT and indoor board CND respectively. If a ventilation device is connected, been geared with the motion of indoor device, the ventilation device is operated/stopped. By connecting the ventilation device with the Single split series device to indoor board CNT, the VRF series device to CND, you can operate/stop the ventilation device independently by the handling of ventilation button.
	NO VENT LINK		
12 TEMP RANGE SET			
	INDIV CHANGE	○	If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will vary following the control.
	NO INDIV CHANGE		If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will not vary following the control, and keep the set temperature.
13 I/U FAN			
	HI-MID-LO	○	Airflow of fan becomes the three speed of ※ - ※ - ※ or ※ - ※ - ※.
	HI-LO	★	
	HI-MID	★	
	1 FAN SPEED	★	
14 POSITION			
	4POSITION STOP	★	
	FREE STOP	○	The louver can stop at any position.
15 MODEL TYPE			
	HEAT PUMP	※	
	COOLING ONLY	※	
16 EXTERNAL CONTROL SET			
	INDIVIDUAL	○	If you input into the indoor printed circuit board CNT from outside, the indoor device will be operated independently following the input from outside.
	FOR ALL UNITS		If you input into indoor printed circuit board CNT from outside, All units which share the same one remote control network work following the input from outside.
17 ROOM TEMP INDICATION SET			
	INDICATION OFF	○	
	INDICATION ON		In normal working indication, indoor unit temperature is indicated instead of airflow. (Only the master remote control can be indicated.)
18 ※ INDICATION			
	INDICATION ON	○	
	INDICATION OFF		Heating preparation indication should not be indicated.
19 ℃/℉ SET			
	℃	○	Temperature indication is by degree C
	℉		Temperature indication is by degree F

(Indoor unit function) I/U FUNCTION ▲

Only when plural indoor units are connected
Indoor No. selection
(Note3)

I/0000 ▲
I/0001 ↕
I/0002 ↕
I/0003 ↕
I/0004 ↕

If to change re-set with other indoor unit, push AIRCON NO. button, and indoor selection indication (for example: I/U 000) is set back.

Function	setting		
02 FAN SPEED SET			
	STANDARD	※	
	HIGH SPEED 1	※	(Note2)
	HIGH SPEED 2		
03 FILTER SIGN SET			
	INDICATION OFF		
	TYPE 1	○	The filter sign is indicated after running for 180 hours.
	TYPE 2		The filter sign is indicated after running for 600 hours.
	TYPE 3		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours.
	TYPE 4		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours, then it will be stopped by compulsion after 24 hours.
04 POSITION			
	4POSITION STOP	★	
	FREE STOP	○	The louver can stop at any positon.
05 EXTERNAL INPUT			
	LEVEL INPUT	○	
	PULSE INPUT		
06 OPERATION PERMISSION/PROHIBITION			
	INVALID	○	
	VALID		Make permission/prohibition control of function be in effect.
07 EMERGENCY STOP			
	INVALID	○	
	VALID		With the VRF series, it is used to stop all indoor units connected with the same outdoor unit immediately. When stop signal is inputed from remote on-off terminal "CNT-6", all indoor units are stopped immediately.
08 ※ SP OFFSET			
	OFFSET +3.0℃		To be reset for producing +3.0°C increase in temperature during heating.
	OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset for producing +2.0°C increase in temperature during heating.
	OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset for producing +1.0°C increase in temperature during heating.
	NO OFFSET	○	
09 RETURN AIR TEMP			
	OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset producing +2.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET +1.5℃		To be reset producing +1.5°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset producing +1.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	NO OFFSET	○	
	OFFSET -1.0℃		To be reset producing -1.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET -1.5℃		To be reset producing -1.5°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET -2.0℃		To be reset producing -2.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
10 ※ FAN CONTROL			
	LOW FAN SPEED	○	When heating thermostat is off, to be operated with low fan speed. (or with ultra low fan speed in case of some models)
	SET FAN SPEED		When heating thermostat is off, to be operated with set fan speed.
	INTERMITTENCE		When heating thermostat is off, to be operated intermittently.
	FAN OFF		When heating thermostat is off, the fan stops. When the remote thermistor is working, "FAN OFF" is set automatically. Do not set when the indoor unit's thermistor is working.
11 FROST PREVENTION TEMP			Change of indoor heat exchanger temperature to start frost prevention control.
	TEMP HIGH		
	TEMP LOW	○	
12 FROST PREVENTION CONTROL			Working only with the single split series. To control frost prevention, the indoor fan tap is raised.
	FAN CONTROL ON	○	
	FAN CONTROL OFF		
13 DRAIN PUMP LINK			
	※	○	Drain pump is on during cooling and dry.
	※ AND ※		Drain pump is on during cooling, dry and heating.
	※ AND ※ AND ≋		Drain pump is on during cooling, dry, heating and fan.
	※ AND ≋		Drain pump is on during cooling, dry and fan.
14 ※ FAN REMAINING			
	NO REMAINING	○	After cooling is stopped or cooling thermostat is off, the fan does not perform extra operation.
	0.5 HOUR		After cooling is stopped or cooling thermostat is off, the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
	1 HOUR		After cooling is stopped or cooling thermostat is off, the fan perform extra operation for an hour.
	6 HOUR		After cooling is stopped or cooling thermostat is off, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
15 ※ FAN REMAINING			
	NO REMAINING	○	After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan does not perform extra operation.
	0.5 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off,the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
	2 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off,the fan perform extra operation for two hours.
	6 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
16 ※ FAN INTERMITTENCE			
	NO REMAINING	○	
	20minOFF 5minON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes after twenty minutes' off with low airflow.
	5minOFF 5minON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes after five minutes' off with low airflow.

⏻ON/OFF button (finished)

Items marked with ★ are not available on the floor standing FDF.
Do not change the initial setting

④Trial operation

The method of trial cooling operation

Operate the remote control unit as follows.

1. Starting a cooling test run.

①Start the system by pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button.

②Select " ※ (Cool)" with the ⟲ (MODE) button.

③Press the TEST button for 3 seconds or longer.

The screen display will switch to※ TEST RUN ▼ ".

④When the ○ (SET) button is pressed while " ※ TEST RUN ▼ " is indicated, a cooling test run will start.

The screen display will switch to※ TEST RUN ".

2. Ending a cooling test run.

Pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button, the ⌒ (TEMP) button or ⟲ (MODE) button will end a cooling test run. (Cooling test run will end after 30 minutes pass.)

" ※ TEST RUN " shown on the screen will go off.

④Trial operation (Continued)

Checking operation data

Operation data can be checked with remote control unit operation.

1. Press the CHECK button.
   The display change " OPER DATA ▼ "
2. Press the (SET) button while
   OPER DATA ▼ " is displayed.
3. When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control, " DATA LOADING " is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
   Next, operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed. Skip to step 7.
4. When plural indoor units is connected, the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
   [Example]:
   SELECT I/U " (blinking 1 seconds)
   I/U000 ♟ " blinking.
5. Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.
6. Determine the indoor unit number with the (SET) button.
   (The indoor unit number changes from blinking indication to continuous indication)
   I/U000 " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
   ↓
   " DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
   Next, the operation data of the indoor unit is indicated.
7. Upon operation of the ▲ ▼ button, the current operation data is displayed in order from data number 01.
   The items displayed are in the above table.
   ※Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.
8. To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen.
9. Pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.
   Pressing the (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

◎If two (2) remote control are connected to one (1) inside unit, only the master controller is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

Number	Data Item	
01		(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP.___℃	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR___℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR___℃	(Remote Control Thermistor Temperature)
05	THI-R1___℃	(Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2___℃	(Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3___℃	(Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV_____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Valve)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN____H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
21	OUTDOOR___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1___℃	(Outdoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
23	THO-R2___℃	(Outdoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
24	COMP___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP____MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM___℃	(Comp Bottom Temperature)
29	CT___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.__	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED___	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN___H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEV1)
39	O/U EEV2____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEV2)

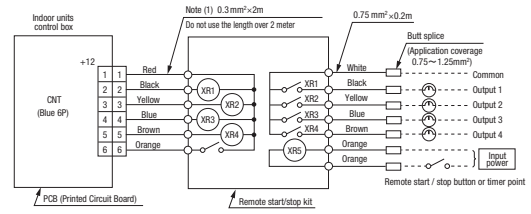
※Depending on outdoor unit model, there are data not shown.

⑤Control mode switching

●The control content of indoor units can be switched in following way.
(▭ is the default setting)

Switch No.	Control Content	
SW2	Indoor unit address (0-Fh)	
SW5-1 SW5-2	Master/Slave Switching (plural /Slave unit Setting)	
SW6-1～4	Model capacity setting	
SW7－1	ON	Operation check, Drain motor test run
	OFF	Normal operation

⑥Function of CNT connector of indoor printed circuit board



●CNT connector (local) vendor model
Connector : Made by molex 5264 - 06
Terminals : Made by molex 5263T

●Function

Output 1	Operation output (there is output when unit is in operation.)
Output 2	Heating output (there is output when operation MODE is HEATING.)
Output 3	Compressor ON output (there is output when compressor is in operation.)
Output 4	Inspection output (there is output when unit is stopped by error.)
Input 5	Remote operation input (Volt-free contact) (Inputted to operate unit)

⑦Troubleshooting

The operation data is saved when the situation of abnormal operation happen, and the data can be confirmed by remote controller.

Error Code of indoor unit

Display on remote controller	LED on indoor circuit board		Content
	red (checking)	green (normal)	
Off	Off	Continuous blinking	Normal
	Off	Off	Fault on power, indoor power off or lack phase
E1	Off	Continuous blinking	Fault on the transmission between indoor circuit board and remote control
	Not sure	Not sure	Indoor computer abnormal
E5	Blinking twice	Continuous blinking	Fault on outdoor-indoor transmission
E6	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Indoor heat exchange sensor interrupted or short-circuit
E7	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Indoor air inhaling sensor broken or short-circuit
E8	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	The temperature of heat exchange abnormal
E9	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Float SW actions (only with FS)
E10	Off	Continuous blinking	Excess number of remote control connections
E14	Blinking for three times	Continuous blinking	The communication fault for master/slave indoor units
E16	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Fan motor abnormal
E19	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Configuration fault on running checking model
E28	Off	Continuous blinking	Remote control sensor interrupted
Over E30	Off	Continuous blinking	Outdoor unit checking (outdoor circuit board LED checking)

[Operating procedure]

1. Press the CHECK button.
   The display change " OPER DATA ▼ "
2. Once, press the ▼ button, and the display change
   ERROR DATA ♟ ".
3. Press the (SET) button and abnormal operation data mode is started.
4. When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control, following is displayed.
   ①The case that there is history of abnormal operation.
   → Error code and " DATA LOADING " is displayed.
   [Example]: [E8] (ERROR CODE)
   " DATA LOADING" is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
   Next, the abnormal operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed. Skip to step 8.
   ②The case that there is not history of abnormal operation.
   → " NO ERROR " is displayed for 3 seconds and this mode is closed.
5. When plural indoor units is connected, following is displayed.
   ①The case that there is history of abnormal operation.
   →Error code and the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
   [Example]: [E8] (ERROR CODE)
   " I/U000 ♟ " blinking
   ②The case that there is not history of abnormal operation.
   →Only address number is displayed.
6. Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.
7. Determine the indoor unit number with the (SET) button.
   [Example]: [E8] (ERROR CODE)
   " I/U000 ♟ " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
   ↓
   [E8] " DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
   Next, the abnormal operation data is indicated.
   If the indoor unit doing normal operation is selected, " NO ERROR " is displayed for 3 seconds and address of indoor unit is displayed.
8. By the ▲ ▼ button, the abnormal operation data is displayed.
   Displayed data item is based on ③ Trial operation .
   ※Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.
9. To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON No. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit slection screen.
10. Pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.

Pressing the (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

◎If two (2) remote control are connected to one (1) indoor unit, only the master controller is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

5.3 Installation of wired remote control (option)

PJZ012D077B

(1) Model RC-EX1A

eco touch REMOTE CONTROL RC-EX1A
INSTALLATION MANUAL

1 . Safety precautions

This installation manual describes the installation methods and precautions related to the remote control. Use this manual together with the user's manuals for the indoor unit, outdoor unit and other option equipment. Please read this manual carefully before starting the installation work to install the unit properly.

Safety precautions

●Please read this manual carefully before starting installation work to install the unit properly.
Every one of the followings is important information to be observed strictly.

⚠WARNING	Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in serious consequences such as death, severe injury, etc..
⚠CAUTION	Failure to follow these instructions properly may cause injury or property damage.

It could have serious consequences depending on the circumstances.

●The following pictograms are used in the text.

	Never do.		Always follow the instructions given.

●Keep this manual at a safe place where you can consult with whenever necessary. Show this manual to installers when moving or repairing the unit. When the ownership of the unit is transferred, the "Installation Manual" should be given to a new owner.

⚠WARNING

Ask a professional contractor to carry out installation work according to the installation manual.
Improper installation work may result in electric shocks, fire or break-down.

Shut OFF the main power source before starting electrical work.
Otherwise, it could result in electric shocks, break-down or malfunction.

Do not install the unit in appropriate environment or where inflammable gas could generate, flow in, accumulate or leak.
If the unit is used at places where air contains dense oil mist, steam, organic solvent vapor, corrosive gas (ammonium, sulfuric compound, acid, etc) or where acidic or alkaline solution, special spray, etc. are used, it could cause electric shocks, break-down, smoke or fire as a result of significant deterioration of its performance or corrosion.

Do not install the unit where water vapor is generated excessively or condensation occurs.
It could cause electric shocks, fire or break-down.

Use the specified cables for wiring, and connect them securely with care to protect electronic parts from external forces.
Improper connections or fixing could cause heat generation, fire, etc.

Seal the inlet hole for remote control cable with putty.
If dew, water, insect, etc. enters through the hole, it could cause electric shocks, fire or break-down.

When installing the unit at a hospital, telecommunication facility, etc., take measures to suppress electric noises.

It could cause malfunction or break-down due to hazardous effects on the inverter, private power generator, high frequency medical equipment, radio communication equipment, etc.

The influences transmitted from the remote control to medical or communication equipment could disrupt medical activities, video broadcasting or cause noise interference.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install the remote control at following places.

It could cause break-down or deformation of remote control.

(1) Where it is exposed to direct sunlight
(2) Near the equipment to generate heat
(3) Where the surface is not flat

Do not leave the remote control with its upper case removed.

When the upper case is removed, put it in a packing box or packing bag to protect internal PCBs or other parts from dust, moisture, etc.

2 . Accessories & prepare on site

Accessories	R/C main unit, wood screw (ø3.5 x 16) 2 pcs User's Manual, Installation Manual

Parts procured at site

Item name	Q'ty	Remark
Switch box For 1 piece or 2 pieces (JIS C 8340 or equivalent)	1	These are not required when installing directly on a wall.
Thin wall steel pipe for electric appliance (JIS C 8305 or equivalent)	As required	
Lock nut, bushing (JIS C 8330 or equivalent)	As required	
Lacing (JIS C 8425 or equivalent)	As required	Necessary to run R/C cable on the wall.
Putty	Suitably	For sealing gaps
Molly anchor	As required	
R/C cable (0.3 mm^2 x 2 pcs)	As required	See right table when longer than 100 m

When the cable length is longer than 100 m, the max size for wires used in the R/C case is 0.5 mm^2 . Connect them to wires of larger size near the outside of R/C. When wires are connected, take measures to prevent water, etc. from entering inside.

< 200 m	0.5 mm^2 x 2-core
< 300 m	0.75 mm^2 x 2-core
< 400 m	1.25 mm^2 x 2-core
< 600 m	2.0 mm^2 x 2-core

3. Remote control installation procedure

Determine where to install the remote control

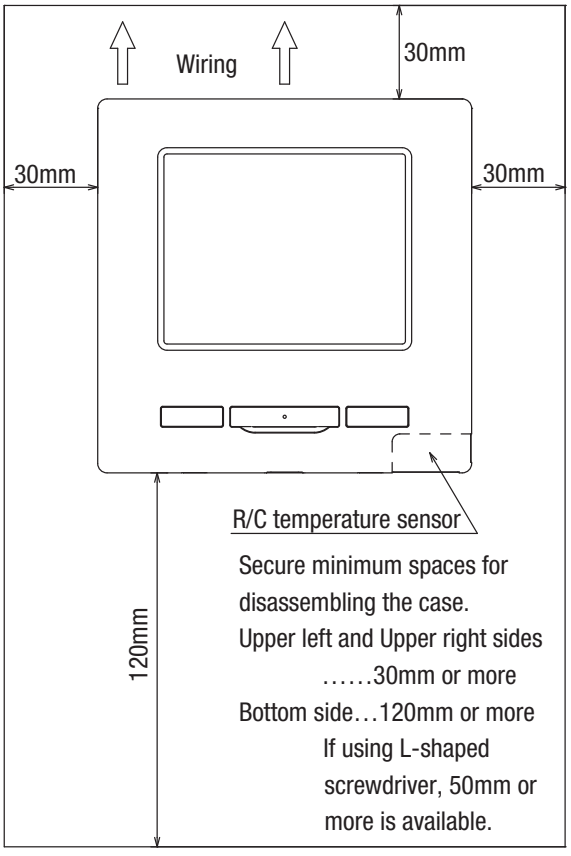
Installation "Using a switch box"
"Installed directly on a wall"
Wiring direction "Backward"
"Upper center", "Upper left"

Cautions for selecting installation place

(1) Installation surface must be flat and sufficiently strong. R/C case must not be deformed.
(2) Where the R/C can detect room temperatures accurately. This is a must when detecting room temperatures with the temperature sensor of R/C.
- Install the R/C where it can detect the average temperature in the room.
- Install the R/C separated from a heat source sufficiently.
- Install the R/C where it will not be influenced by the turbulence of air when the door is opened or closed.

Select a place where the R/C is not exposed to direct sunlight or blown by winds from the air-conditioner or temperatures on the wall surface will not deviate largely from actual room temperature.

Installation space



Request

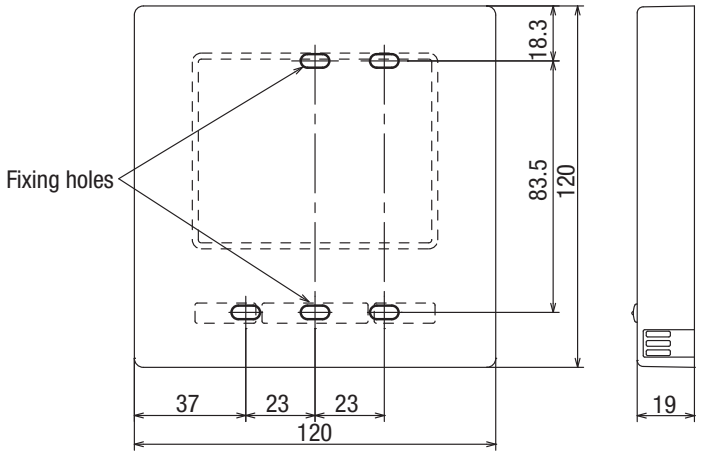
Be sure not to install R/C at a place where temperatures around the installation surface of R/C may differ largely from actual room temperature.
Difference between detected temperature and actual room temperature could cause troubles.
The correction for detected temperature by the R/C cannot offset such temperature difference because it corrects the detected temperatures itself.

Request

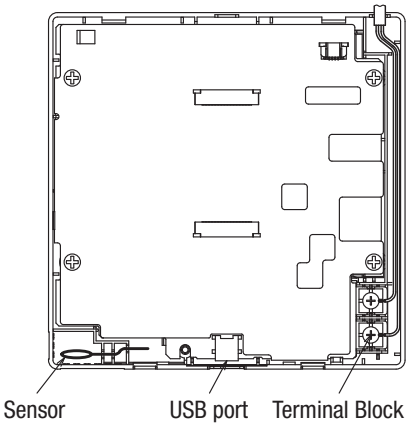
Do not install the R/C at a place where it is exposed to direct sunlight or where surrounding air temperature exceeds 40°C or drops below 0°C.
It could cause discoloration, deformation, malfunction or breakdown.

Installation procedure

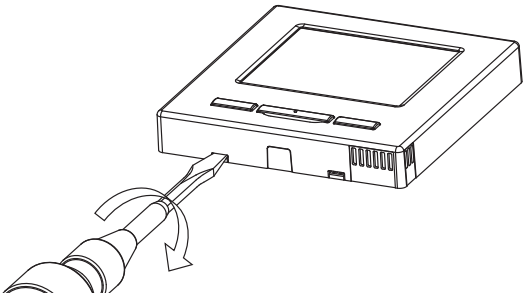
Dimensions (Viewed from front)



PCB side (Viewed from rear)



① To remove the upper case from the bottom cases of R/C
· Insert the tip of flat head screwdriver or the like in the recess at the lower part of R/C and twist it lightly to remove.

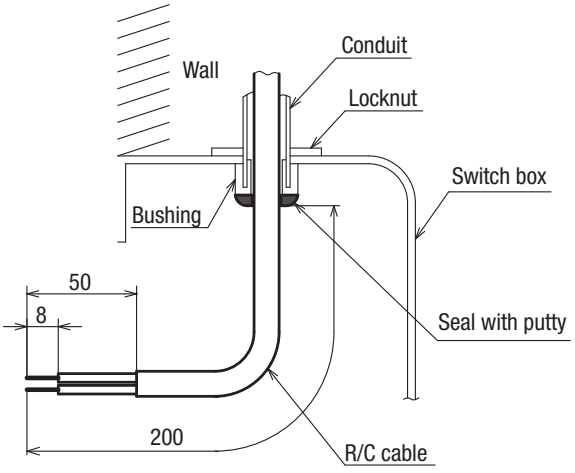


Take care to protect the removed upper case from moisture or dust.

② Connect wires from X and Y terminals of R/C to X and Y terminals of indoor unit.
R/C wires (X, Y) have no polarity.

In case of embedding wiring (When the wiring is retrieved "Backward")

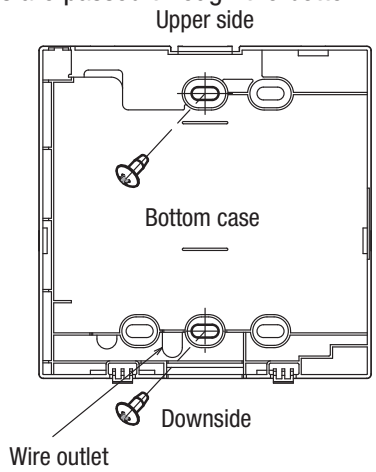
③ Embed the switch box and the R/C wires beforehand.



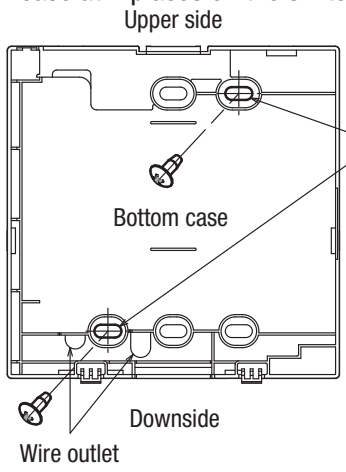
Seal the inlet hole for the R/C wiring with putty.
● If dust or insect enters, it could cause electric shocks, fire or breakdown.

④ When wires are passed through the bottom case, fix the bottom case at 2 places on the switch box.

Switch box for 1 pc



Switch box for 2 pcs



Cut out the thin wall part at the screw mounting section with a knife or the like before tightening the screw.

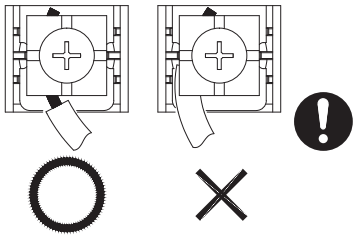
⑤ When fixing the bottom case diagonally at 2 places, cut out the thin wall section on the case.

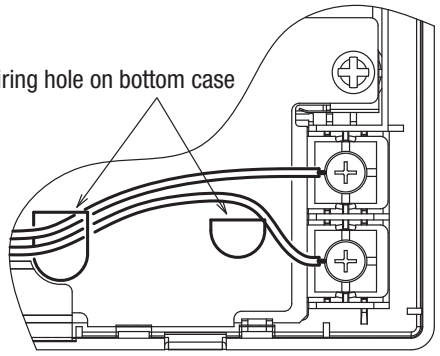
⑥ Fix wires such that the wires will run around the terminal screws on the top case of R/C.

Cautions for wire connection

Use wires of no larger than 0.5 mm^2 for wiring running through the remote control case, Take care not to pinch the sheath.

Tighten by hand (0.7 N·m or less) the wire connection. If the wire is connected using an electric driver, it may cause failure or deformation.

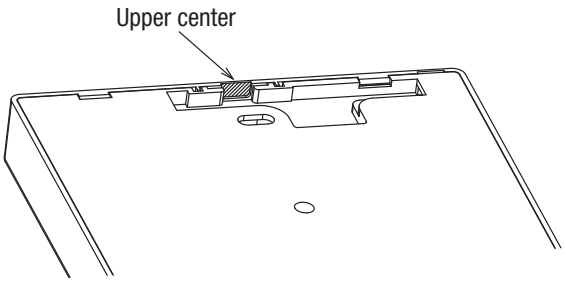




⑦ Install the upper case with care not to pinch wires of R/C.

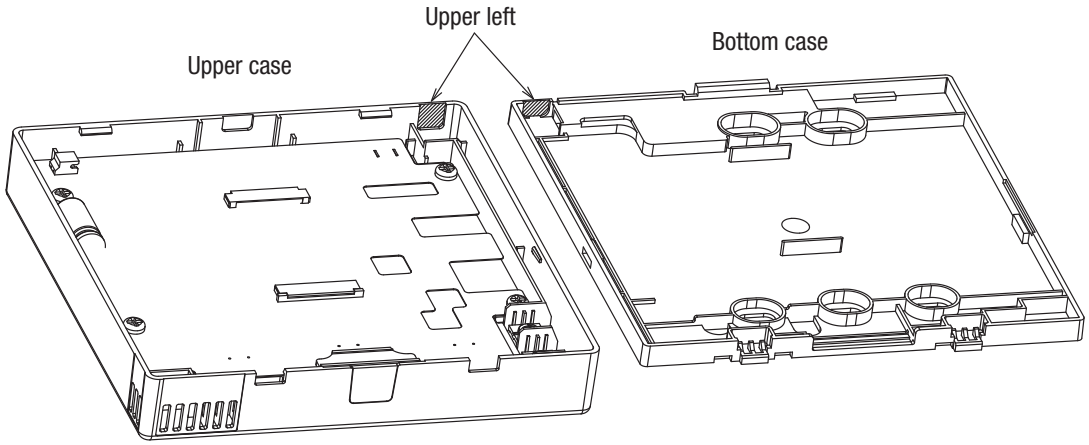
In case of exposing wiring (When the wiring is taken out from the “upper center” or “upper left” of R/C)

③ Cut out the thin wall sections on the cases for the size of wire.



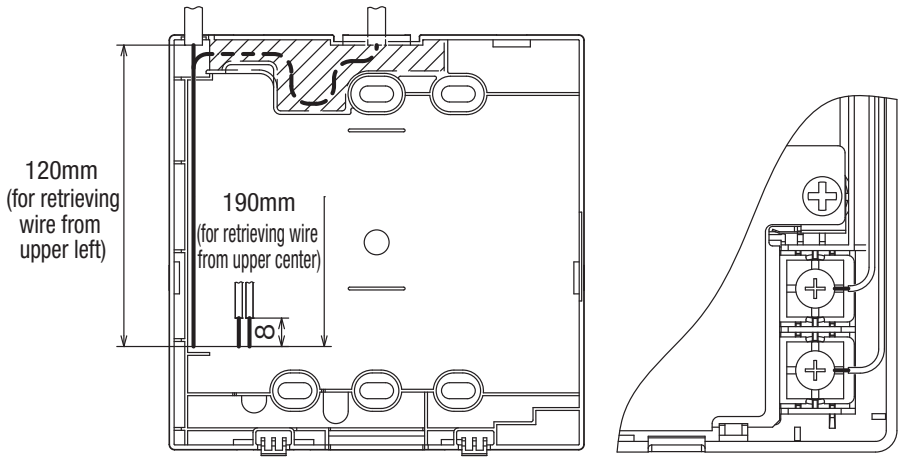
When taking the wiring out from the upper center, open a hole before separating the upper and bottom cases. This will reduce risk of damaging the PCB and facilitate subsequent work.

When taking the wiring out from the upper left, take care not to damage the PCB and not to leave any chips of cut thin wall inside.



If the hole is cut too large, moisture, dust or insects may enter.
Seal gaps with putty or the like.

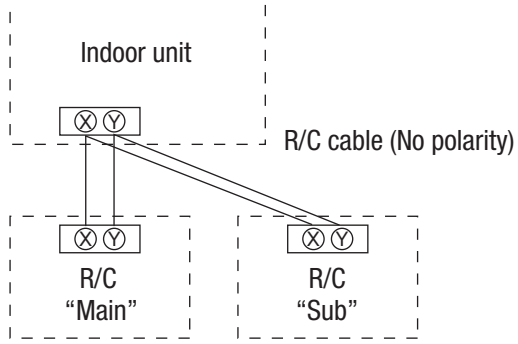
④ Fix the bottom R/C case on a flat surface with wood screws.
⑤ In case of the upper center, pass the wiring behind the bottom case. (Hatched section)
⑥ Fix wires such that the wires will run around the terminal screw of the top case of R/C.
⑦ Install the top case with care not to pinch wires of R/C.



Main/Sub setting when more than one remote control are used

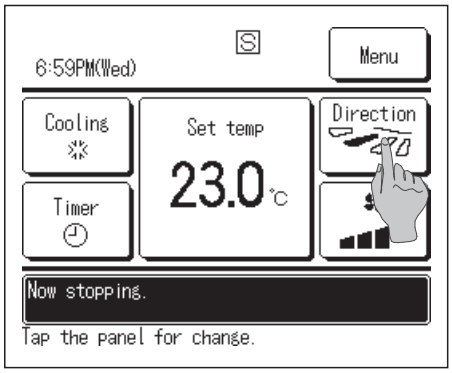
Main-Sub setting for use of two or more R/C

Up to two units of R/C can be used at the maximum for 1 indoor unit or 1 group.
One is main R/C and the other is sub R/C.
Operating range is different depending on the main or sub R/C.



Set the "Main" and "Sub" as described at Section 7 of installtion manual attached to the remote control.

R/C function	Main	Sub
Run/Stop, setting temperature, fan speed and flap direction operations	○	○
High power and energy-saving operations	○	○
Energy-saving setting	○	—
R/C sensor	○	—
Test run menu operation	○	—
Room temperature range setting	○	—
Indoor unit settings	○	—
Individual flap control	○	—
Operation data display	○	—
Error history display	○	○



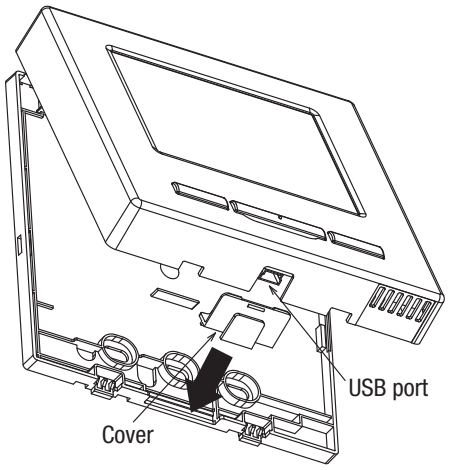
Note: Connection to personal computer

It can be set from a personal computer via the USB port (mini-B).
Connect after removing the cover for USB port of upper case.

Replace the cover after use.
If dust, insect, etc. enters, it could cause electric shocks or breakdown.

Special software is necessary for the connection.
For details, view the web site or refer to the engineering data.

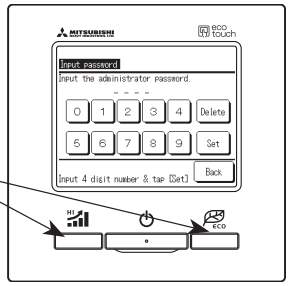
Do not connect to a personal computer without using the special software.
Do not connect the personal computer to the USB simultaneously with other USB devices.
It could cause malfunction or breakdown of R/C or personal computer.



Note: Initializing of password

Administrator password (for daily setting items) and service password (for installation, test run and maintenance) are used.

- The administrator password at factory default is “0000”. This setting can be changed (Refer to User's Manual). When the administrator password is forgotten, it can be initialized, if the [Highpower] and the [Energy-saving] buttons are pushed simultaneously for 5 seconds on the administrator password input screen.
- Service password is “9999”, which cannot be changed.
  When the administrator password is input, the service password is also accepted.



(2) Model RC-E5

PJA012D730

Read together with indoor unit's installation manual.

⚠WARNING

- Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
  Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.
- Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work.
  Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.

⚠CAUTION

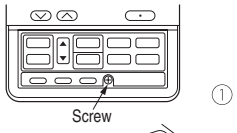
- DO NOT install the remote control at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.
  (1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
  (2) Places near heat devices
  (3) High humidity places
  (4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
  (5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
  (6) Uneven surface
- DO NOT leave the remote control without the upper case.
  In case the upper cace needs to be detached, protect the remote control with a packaging box or bag in order to keep it away from water and dust.

Accessories	Remote control, wood screw (ø3.5×16) 2 pieces
Prepare on site	Remote control cord (2 cores) the insulation thickness in 1mm or more. [In case of embedding cord] Erectrical box, M4 screw (2 pieces) [In case of exposing cord] Cord clamp (if needed)

Installation procedure

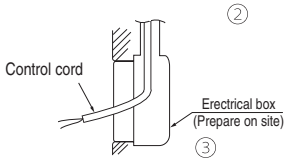
① Open the cover of remote control, and remove the screw under the buttons without fail.

② Remove the upper case of remote control.
Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into the dented part of the upper part of the remote control, and wrench slightly.

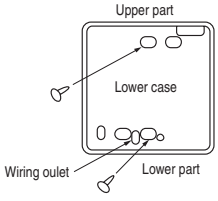


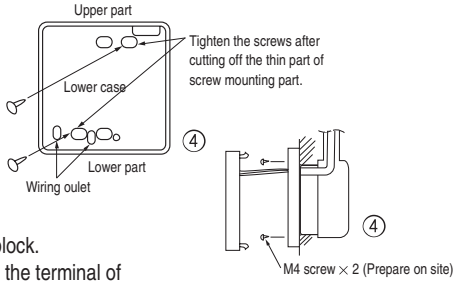
[In case of embedding cord]

③ Embed the erectrical box and remote control cord beforehand.



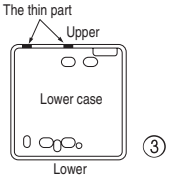
④ Prepare two M4 screws (recommended length is 12-16mm) on site, and install the lower case to erectrical box.
Choose either of the following two positions in fixing it with screws.





⑤ Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block.
Connect the terminal of remote control (X,Y) with the terminal of indoor unit (X,Y). (X and Y are no polarity)

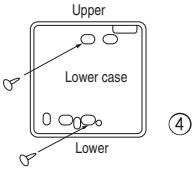
⑥ Install the upper case as before so as not to catch up the remote control cord, and tighten with the screws.



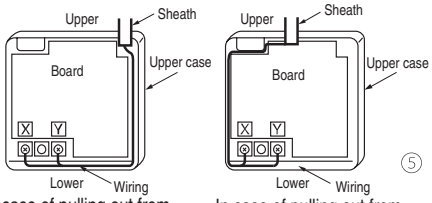
[In case of exposing cord]

③ You can pull out the remote control cord from left upper part or center upper part.
Cut off the upper thin part of remote control lower case with a nipper or knife, and grind burrs with a file etc.

④ Install the lower case to the flat wall with attached two wooden screws.

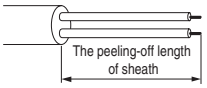


⑤ Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block.
Connect the terminal of remote control (X,Y) with the terminal of indoor unit (X,Y).
(X and Y are no polarity)
Wiring route is as shown in the right diagram depending on the pulling out direction.



The wiring inside the remote control case should be within 0.3mm^2 (recommended) to 0.5mm^2.
The sheath should be peeled off inside the remote control case.
The peeling-off length of each wire is as below.

Pulling out from upper left	Pulling out from upper center
X wiring : 215mm Y wiring : 195mm	X wiring : 170mm Y wiring : 190mm



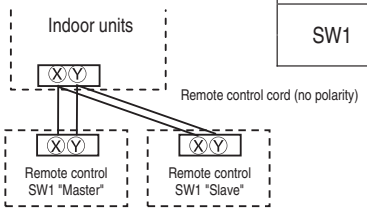
⑥ Install the upper case as before so as not to catch up the remote control cord, and tighten with the screws.
⑦ In case of exposing cord, fix the cord on the wall with cord clamp so as not to slack.

Installation and wiring of remote control

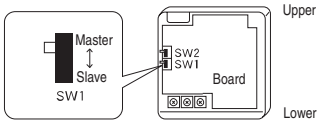
① Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm^2 × 2 core wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
② Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm^2 . Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
100 - 200m·····0.5mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 300m·····0.75mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 400m·····1.25mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 600m·····2.0mm^2 × 2 cores

Master/ slave setting when more than one remote controls are used

A maximum of two remote controls can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)



Switch	Setting	Contents
SW1	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control



Set SW1 to "Slave" for the slave remote control. It was factory set to "Master" for shipment.
Note: The setting "Remote control thermistor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control in the position where you want to check room temperature.
The air conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/ slave setting of it.

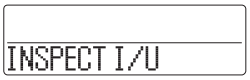
The indication when power source is supplied

When power source is turned on, the following is displayed on the remote control until the communication between the remote control and indoor unit settled.
Master remote control : "WAIT M"
Slave remote control : "WAIT S"

At the same time, a mark or a number will be displayed for two seconds first.
This is the software's administration number of the remote control, not an error cord.

※ The left mark is only an example. Other marks may appear.

When remote control cannot communicate with the indoor unit for half an hour, the below indication will appear.
Check wiring of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit etc.



The range of temperature setting

When shipped, the range of set temperature differs depending on the operation mode as below.

Heating : 16~30˚C (55~86˚F)

Except heating (cooling, fan, dry, automatic) : 18~30˚C (62~86˚F)

●Upper limit and lower limit of set temperature can be changed with remote control.

Upper limit setting: valid during heating operation. Possible to set in the range of 20 to 30˚C (68 to 86˚F).

Lower limit setting: valid except heating (automatic, cooling, fan, dry) Possible to set in the range of 18 to 26°C (62 to 79°F).

When you set upper and lower limit by this function, control as below.

1. When ⑫TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "INDN CHANGE" (factory setting),
   【If upper limit value is set】
   During heating, you cannot set the value exceeding the upper limit.

   【If lower limit value is set 】
   During operation mode except heating, you cannot set the value below the lower limit.

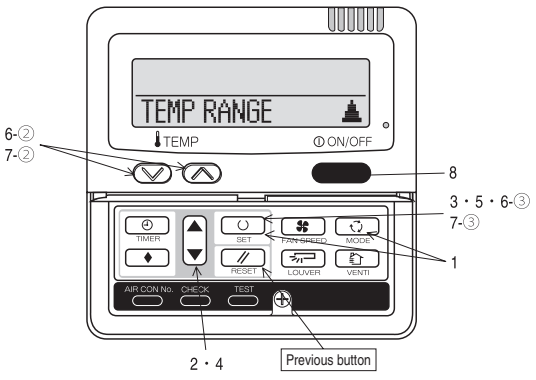
2. When ⑫TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "NO INDN CHANGE"
   【If upper limit value is set】
   During heating, even if the value exceeding the upper limit is set, upper limit value will be sent to the indoor unit. But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

   【If lower limit value is set 】
   During except heating, even if the value lower than the lower limit is set, lower limit value will be sent to the indoor unit. But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

●How to set upper and lower limit value

1. Stop the air-conditioner, and press (SET) and (MODE) button at the same time for over three seconds.
   The indication changes to "FUNCTION SET ▼".
2. Press ▼ button once, and change to the "TEMP RANGE ▲ " indication.
3. Press (SET) button, and enter the temperature range setting mode.
4. Select "UPPER LIMIT ▼" or "LOWER LIMIT ▲" by using ▲ ▼ button.
5. Press (SET) button to fix.
6. When "UPPER LIMIT ▼" is selected (valid during heating)
   ① Indication: " ∨ ∧ SET UP" → "UPPER 30˚C ∨"
   ② Select the upper limit value with temperature setting button ∨ ∧. Indication example: "UPPER 26˚C ∨ ∧" (blinking)
   ③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication example: "UPPER 26˚C" (Displayed for two seconds)
   After the fixed upper limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "UPPER LIMIT ▼".
7. When "LOWER LIMIT ▲" is selected (valid during cooling, dry, fan, automatic)
   ① Indication: " ∨ ∧ SET UP" → "LOWER 18˚C ∧"
   ② Select the lower limit value with temperature setting button ∨ ∧. Indication example: "LOWER 24˚C ∨ ∧" (blinking)
   ③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication for example: "LOWER 24˚C" (Displayed for two seconds)
   After the fixed lower limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "LOWER LIMIT ▼".
8. Press ON/OFF button to finish.

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.



The functional setting

●The initial function setting for typical using is performed automatically by the indoor unit connected, when remote control and indoor unit are connected.
As long as they are used in a typical manner, there wiil be no need to change the initial settings.
If you would like to change the initial setting marked " ○ ", set your desired setting as for the selected item.
The procedure of functional setting is shown as the following diagram.

[Flow of function setting]

Start : Stop air-conditioner and press "(SET)" (SET) and "(MODE)" (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds.
Finalize : Press "(SET)" (SET) button.
Reset : Press "(RESET)" (RESET) button.
Select : Press ▲ ▼ button.
End : Press ON/OFF button.
It is possible to finish above setting on the way, and unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
" ○ " : Initial settings
" ※ " : Automatic criterion

Record and keep the setting

Consult the technical data etc. for each control details

Stop air-conditioner and press (SET) + (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds.

FUNCTION SET ▼

To next page

FUNCTION ▼ (Remote control function)

Function	setting		
01 ESP SET			
	ESP VALID	○	Validate setting of ESP:External Static Pressure
	ESP INVALID		Invalidate setting of ESP
02 AUTO RUN SET			
	AUTO RUN ON	※	
	AUTO RUN OFF	※	Automatical operation is impossible
03 TEMP SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Temperature setting button is not working
04 MODE SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Mode button is not working
05 ON/OFF SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		On/Off button is not working
06 FAN SPEED SW			
	VALID	※	
	INVALID	※	Fan speed button is not working
07 LOUVER SW			
	VALID	※	
	INVALID	※	Louver button is not working
08 TIMER SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Timer button is not working
09 SENSOR SET			
	SENSOR OFF	○	Remote thermistor is not working.
	SENSOR ON		Remote thermistor is working.
	SENSOR +3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +3.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +2.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +1.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -1.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -2.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -3.0˚C increase in temperature.
10 AUTO RESTART			
	INVALID	○	
	VALID		
11 VENT LINK SET			
	NO VENT	○	
	VENT LINK		In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CNT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CND of the indoor printed circuit board), the operation of ventilation device is linked with the operation of indoor unit.
	NO VENT LINK		In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CNT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CND of the indoor printed circuit board), you can operate /stop the ventilation device independently by (VENT) button.
12 TEMP RANGE SET			
	INDN CHANGE	○	If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will vary following the control.
	NO INDN CHANGE		If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will not vary following the control, and keep the set temperature.
13 I/U FAN			
	HI-MID-LO	※	Airflow of fan becomes of ※- ※- ※ for the four speed of ※- ※- ※- ※.
	HI-LO	※	Airflow of fan becomes of ※- ※.
	HI-MID		Airflow of fan becomes of ※- ※.
	1 FAN SPEED	※	Airflow of fan is fixed at one speed.
14 POSITION			If you change the remote control function "14 POSITION ", you must change the indoor function "04 POSITION" accordingly.
	4POSITION STOP	○	You can select the louver stop position in the four.
	FREE STOP		The louver can stop at any position.
15 MODEL TYPE			
	HEAT PUMP	※	
	COOLING ONLY	※	
16 EXTERNAL CONTROL SET			
	INDIVIDUAL	○	If you input signal into CNT of the indoor printed circuit board from external, the indoor unit will be operated independently according to the input from external.
	FOR ALL UNITS		If you input into CNT of the indoor printed circuit board from external, all units which connect to the same remote control are operated according to the input from external.
17 ROOM TEMP INDICATION SET			
	INDICATION OFF	○	
	INDICATION ON		In normal working indication, indoor unit temperature is indicated instead of airflow. (Only the master remote control can be indicated.)
18 ※ INDICATION			
	INDICATION ON	○	
	INDICATION OFF		Heating preparation indication should not be indicated.
19 ℃/℉ SET			
	℃	○	Temperature indication is by degree C
	℉		Temperature indication is by degree F

To next page

ON/OFF button (finished)

Note 1: The initial setting marked "※" is decided by connected indoor and outdoor unit, and is automatically defined as following table.

Function No.	Item	Default	Model
Remote control function02	AUTO RUN SET	AUTO RUN ON	"Auto-RUN" mode selectable indoor unit.
		AUTO RUN OFF	Indoor unit without "Auto-RUN" mode
Remote control function06	FAN SPEED SW	VALID	Indoor unit with two or three step of air flow setting
		INVALID	Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting
Remote control function07	LOUVER SW	VALID	Indoor unit with automatically swing louver
		INVALID	Indoor unit without automatically swing louver
Remote control function13	I/U FAN	HI-MID-LO	Indoor unit with three step of air flow setting
		HI-LO	Indoor unit with two step of air flow setting
		HI-MID	
		1 FAN SPEED	Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting
Remote control function15	MODEL TYPE	HEAT PUMP	Heat pump unit
		COOLING ONLY	Exclusive cooling unit

Note 3: As for plural indoor unit, set indoor functions to each master and slave indoor unit.
But only master indoor unit is received the setting change of indoor unit function "05 EXTERNAL INPUT" and "06 PERMISSION / PROHIBISHION".

From previous page

(Indoor unit function) I/U FUNCTION ▲

Indoor unit No. are indicated only when plural indoor units are connected.

I/U000 ▲
I/U001 ⇕
I/U002 ⇕
I/U003 ⇕
I/U004 ⇕

To set other indoor unit, press AIRCON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen (for example: I/U 000 ▲).

Function	setting		
02 FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	※	
	HIGH SPEED 1	※	
	HIGH SPEED 2		
03 FILTER SIGN SET	INDICATION OFF		
	TYPE 1	○	The filter sign is indicated after running for 180 hours.
	TYPE 2		The filter sign is indicated after running for 600 hours.
	TYPE 3		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours.
	TYPE 4		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours, then the indoor unit will be stopped by compulsion after 24 hours.
04 POSITION			If you change the indoor function "04 POSITION", you must change the remote control function "14 POSITION" accordingly.
	4POSITION STOP	○	You can select the louver stop position in the four.
	FREE STOP		The louver can stop at any position.
05 EXTERNAL INPUT	LEVEL INPUT	○	
	PULSE INPUT		
06 OPERATION PERMISSION/PROHIBITION	INVALID	○	
	VALID		Permission/prohibition control of operation will be valid.
07 EMERGENCY STOP	INVALID	○	
	VALID		With the VRF series, it is used to stop all indoor units connected with the same outdoor unit immediately. When stop signal is inputed from remote on-off terminal "CNT-6", all indoor units are stopped immediately.
08 ※ SP OFFSET	OFFSET +3.0℃		To be reset for producing +3.0˚C increase in temperature during heating.
	OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset for producing +2.0˚C increase in temperature during heating.
	OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset for producing +1.0˚C increase in temperature during heating.
	NO OFFSET	○	
09 RETURN AIR TEMP	OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset producing +2.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET +1.5℃		To be reset producing +1.5˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset producing +1.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	NO OFFSET	○	
	OFFSET -1.0℃		To be reset producing -1.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET -1.5℃		To be reset producing -1.5˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET -2.0℃		To be reset producing -2.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
10 ※ FAN CONTROL	LOW FAN SPEED	○	When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is low speed.
	SET FAN SPEED		When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is set speed.
	INTERMITTENCE		When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is operated intermittently.
	FAN OFF		When heating thermostat is OFF, the fan is stopped. When the remote thermistor is working, "FAN OFF" is set automatically. Do not set "FAN OFF" when the indoor unit's thermistor is working.
11 FROST PREVENTION TEMP			Change of indoor heat exchanger temperature to start frost prevention control.
	TEMP HIGH		
	TEMP LOW	○	
12 FROST PREVENTION CONTROL			Working only with the Single split series.
	FAN CONTROL ON	○	To control frost prevention, the indoor fan tap is raised.
	FAN CONTROL OFF		
13 DRAIN PUMP LINK	❄◇	○	Drain pump is run during cooling and dry.
	❄◇ AND ※		Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and heating.
	❄◇ AND ※ AND ≋		Drain pump is run during cooling, dry, heating and fan.
	❄◇ AND ≋		Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and fan.
14 ❄ FAN REMAINING	NO REMAINING	○	After cooling is stopped, the fan does not perform extra operation.
	0.5 HOUR		After cooling is stopped, the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
	1 HOUR		After cooling is stopped, the fan perform extra operation for an hour.
	6 HOUR		After cooling is stopped, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
15 ※ FAN REMAINING	NO REMAINING	○	After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan does not perform extra operation.
	0.5 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
	2 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for two hours.
	6 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
16 ※ FAN INTERMITTENCE	NO REMAINING	○	
	20minOFF 5minON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes with low fan speed after twenty minutes' OFF.
	5minOFF 5minON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes with low fan speed after five minutes' OFF.
17 PRESSURE CONTROL	STANDARD	※	
	TYPE1	※	Connected "OA Processing" type indoor unit, and is automatically defined.

From previous page

Note2: Fan setting of "HIGH SPEED"

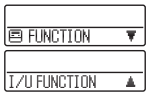
Fan tap		Indoor unit air flow setting				
		❄❄❄ - ❄❄❄ - ❄❄(❄) - ❄(❄)	❄❄❄ - ❄❄(❄) - ❄(❄)	❄❄❄ - ❄(❄)	❄❄❄ - ❄❄(❄)
FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	UH - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me
	HIGH SPEED1, 2	UH - UH - Hi - Me	UH - Hi - Me	UH - Me	UH - Hi

Initial function setting of some indoor unit is "HIGH SPEED".
4 speed is not able to be set with wireless remote control.

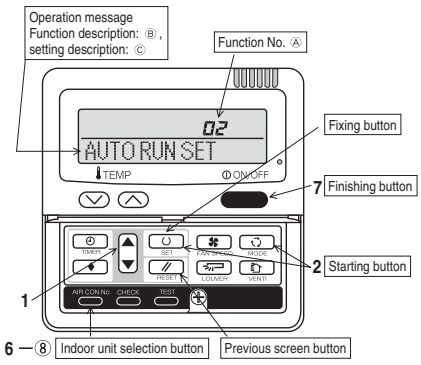
How to set function

1. **Stop air-conditioner and press (SET) (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds, and the "FUNCTION SET ▼" will be displayed.**

2. **Press (SET) button.**
3. **Make sure which do you want to set, "FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION▲ " (indoor unit function).**
4. **Press ▲ or ▼ button.**
   Selecct "FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION ▲" (indoor unit function).



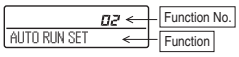
5. **Press (SET) button.**



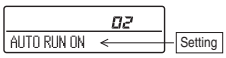
6. **【On the occasion of remote control function selection】**

① "DATA LOADING" (Indication with blinking)
↓
Display is changed to "01 ECO SET".

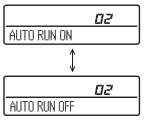
② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function"are indicated by turns on the remote control function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)



③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(for example) "AUTO RUN ON" ← If "02 AUTO RUN SET" is selected



④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.



⑤ Press (SET)
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, Set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously ,and if to finish, go to 7.

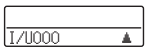
7. **Press ON/OFF button.**
   Setting is finished.

【On the occasion of indoor unit function selection】

① "DATA LOADING" (Blinking for 2 to 23 seconds to read the data)
↓
Indication is changed to "02 FAN SPEED SET".
Go to ②.

[Note]

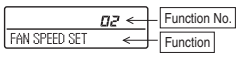
(1) If plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, the indication is "I/U 000" (blinking) ← The lowest number of the indoor unit connected is indicated.



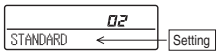
(2) Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the number of the indoor unit you are to set
If you select "ALL UNIT ▼", you can set the same setting with all unites.

(3) Press (SET) button.

② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function" are indicated by turns on the indoor unit function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)



③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(For example) "STANDARD" ← If "02 FAN SPEED SET" is selected.



④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.

⑤ Press (SET) button.
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously , and if to finish, go to 7.

※ When plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, press the AIRCON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen. (example "I/U 000 ▲")

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.
- Setting is memorized in the control and it is saved independently of power failure.

【How to check the current setting】

When you select from "No. and funcion" and press set button by the previous operation, the "Setting" displayed first is the current setting.
(But, if you select "ALL UNIT ▼", the setting of the lowest number indoor unit is displayed.)

Inverter driven split PAC
FDC200VSA, 250VSA (200V, 250V)
FDCA160VSA, 200VSA (A160V, A200V)
Designed for R410A refrigerant

5.4 Installation of outdoor unit

◎This installation manual deals with outdoor units and general installation specifications only. For indoor units, refer to page 126.
◎When install the unit, be sure to check whether the selection of installation place, power source specifications, usage limitation (piping length, height differences between indoor and outdoor units, power source voltage and etc.) and installation spaces

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

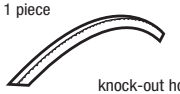
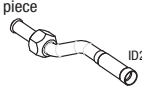
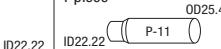
- We recommend you to read this "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully before the installation work in order to gain full advantage of the functions of the unit and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling.
- The precautions described below are divided into ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION. The matters with possibilities leading to serious consequences such as death or serious personal injury due to erroneous handling are listed in the ⚠WARNING and the matters with possibilities leading to personal injury or damage of the unit due to erroneous handling including probability leading to serious consequences in some cases are listed in ⚠CAUTION. **These are very important precautions for safety. Be sure to observe all of them without fail.**
- The meaning of "Marks" used here are as shown below.

⃠	Never do it under any circumstance.	❗ ⏚	Always do it according to the instruction

- For 3 phase power source outdoor unit,EN61000-3-2 is not applicable if consent by the utility company or nortification to the utility company is given before usage.
- 3phase power source unit, both indoor and outdoor, is suitable for installation in a commercial and light industrial environment. If installed as a house-hold appliance it could cause electromagnetic interference.
- Be sure to confirm no anomaly on the equipment by commissioning after completed installation and explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the owner's manual.
- Keep the installation manual together with owner's manual at a place where any user can read at any time. Moreover if necessary, ask to hand them to a new user.

Check before installation work

[Accessory]

Edging	Accessory pipe	
1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
 knock-out hole protection	 ID22.22 Accessory pipe A	 OD25.4 ID22.22 P-11 Accessory pipe B

- Model name and power source
- Refrigerant piping length
- Piping, wiring and miscellaneous small parts
- Indoor unit installation manual

⚠ WARNING

- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it may cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury, as a result of a system malfunction.
- **Install the system in full accordance with the instruction manual.**
  Incorrect installation may cause bursts, personal injury, water leaks, electric shocks and fire.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for installation.**
  If parts other than those prescribed by us are used, It may cause fall of the unit, water leaks, electric shocks, fire, refrigerant leak, substandard performance, control failure and personal injury.
- **When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage accordance with ISO5149.**
  Consult the expert about prevention measures. If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of leakage, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Ventilate the working area well in the event of refrigerant leakage during installation.**
  If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gas is produced.
- **After completed installation, check that no refrigerant leaks from the system.**
  If refrigerant leaks into the room and comes into contact with an oven or other hot surface, poisonous gas is produced.
- **Hang up the unit at the specified points with ropes which can support the weight in lifting for portage. And to avoid jolting out of alignment, be sure to hang up the unit at 4-point support.**
  An improper manner of portage such as 3-point support can cause death or serious personal injury due to falling of the unit
- **Install the unit in a location with good support.**
  Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.
- **Ensure the unit is stable when installed, so that it can withstand earthquakes and strong winds.**
  Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.
- **The electrical installation must be carried out by the qualified electrician in accordance with "the norm for electrical work" and "national wiring regulation", and the system must be connected to the dedicated circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and incorrect function done by improper work can cause electric shocks and fire,
- **Be sure to shut off the power before starting electrical work.**
  Failure to shut off the power can cause electric shocks, unit failure or incorrect function of equipment.
- **Be sure to use the cables conformed to safety standard and cable ampacity for power distribution work.**
  Unconformable cables can cause electric leak, anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Use the prescribed cables for electrical connection, tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables correctly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
  Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Arrange the wiring in the control box so that it cannot be pushed up further into the box. Install the service panel correctly.**
  Incorrect installation may result in overheating and fire.

- **Do not perform brazing work in the airtight room**
  It can cause lack of oxygen.
- **Use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause the unit failure and serious accidents due to burst of the refrigerant circuit.
- **Tighten the flare nut by using double spanners and torque wrench according to prescribed method. Be sure not to tighten the flare nut too much.**
  Loose flare connection or damage on the flare part by tightening with excess torque can cause burst or refrigerant leaks which may result in lack of oxygen.
- **Do not open the service valves for liquid line and gas line until completed refrigerant piping work, air tightness test and evacuation.**
  If the compressor is operated in state of opening service valves before completed connection of refrigerant piping work, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked into refrigerant circuit, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not perform any change of protective device itself or its setup condition**
  The forced operation by short-circuiting protective device of pressure switch and temperature controller or the use of non specified component can cause fire or burst.
- **Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, inspection or servicing.**
  If the power source is not shut off, there is a risk of electric shocks, unit failure or personal injury due to the unexpected start of fan.
- **Consult the dealer or an expert regarding removal of the unit.**
  Incorrect installation can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.
- **Stop the compressor before closing valve and disconnecting refrigerant pipes in case of pump down operation.**
  If disconnecting refrigerant pipes in state of opening service valves before compressor stopping, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant circuit

- **Ensure that no air enters in the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
  If air enters in the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit becomes too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections**
  Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shocks.
- **Be sure to fix up the service panels.**
  Incorrect fixing can cause electric shocks or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Do not perform any repairs or modifications by yourself. Consult the dealer if the unit requires repair.**
  If you repair or modify the unit, it can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Carry out the electrical work for ground lead with care**
  Do not connect the ground lead to the gas line, water line, lightning conductor or telephone line's ground lead. Incorrect grounding can cause unit faults such as electric shocks due to short-circuiting. Never connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe because if gas leaks,it could cause explosion or ignition.
- **Use the circuit breaker for all pole with correct capacity.**
  Using the incorrect circuit breaker, it can cause the unit malfunction and fire.
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
  The isolator should be locked in accordanced with EN60204-1.
- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
  If the unit weights more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry by the plastic straps, always use the carry handle when carrying the unit by hand. Use gloves to minimize the risk of cuts by the aluminum fins.
- **Dispose of any packing materials correctly.**
  Any remaining packing materials can cause personal injury as it contains nails and wood. And to avoid danger of suffocation, be sure to keep the plastic wrapper away from children and to dispose after tear it up.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld spatter when welding work is done near the indoor unit.**
  If weld spatter entered into the indoor unit during welding work, it can cause pin-hole in drain pan and result in water leakage. To prevent such damage, keep the indoor unit in its packing or cover it.
- **Be sure to insulate the refrigerant pipes so as not to condense the ambient air moisture on them.**
  Insufficient insulation can cause condensation, which can lead to moisture damage on the ceiling, floor, furniture and any other valuables.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Perform installation work properly according to this installation manual.**
  Improper installation can cause abnormal vibrations or increased noise generation.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause fire or electric shocks.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse with the correct rating in the location where fuses are to be used.**
  Connecting the circuit with copper wire or other metal thread can cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of combustible gases can occur.**
  If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire.
- **Do not install the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or combustible gas (such as thinner and petroleum gases) can accumulate or collect, or where volatile combustible substances are handled.**
  Corrosive gas can cause corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts and etc. And combustible gas can cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **When the outdoor unit is installed on a roof or a high place, provide permanent ladders and handrails along the access route and fences and handrails around the outdoor unit.**
  If safety facilities are not provided, it can cause personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not install nor use the system close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic fields or high frequency harmonics**
  Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
  Insects and small animals can enter the electric parts and cause damage or fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Do not use the base frame for outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged due to long periods of operation.**
  Using an old and damage base frame can cause the unit falling down and cause personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations listed below**
  - Locations where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floating.
  - Locations where any substances that can affect the unit such as sulphide gas, chloride gas, acid and alkaline can occur.
  - Vehicles and ships
  - Locations where cosmetic or special sprays are often used.
  - Locations with direct exposure of oil mist and steam such as kitchen and machine plant.
  - Locations where any machines which generate high frequency harmonics are used.
  - Locations with salty atmospheres such as coastlines
  - Locations with heavy snow (If installed, be sure to provide base frame and snow hood mentioned in the manual)
  - Locations where the unit is exposed to chimney smoke
  - Locations at high altitude (more than 1000m high)
  - Locations with ammonic atmospheres (e.g. organic fertilizer).
  - Locations with calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent).
  - Locations where heat radiation from other heat source can affect the unit
  - Locations without good air circulation.
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  - Locations where short circuit of air can occur (in case of multiple units installation)
  - Locations where strong air blows against the air outlet of outdoor unit

  It can cause remarkable decrease in performance, corrosion and damage of components, malfunction and fire.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in the locations listed below.**
  - Locations where discharged hot air or operating sound of the outdoor unit can bother neighborhood.
  - Locations where outlet air of the outdoor unit blows directly to an animal or plants. The outlet air can affect adversely to the plant etc.
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified and transmitted due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where vibration and operation sound generated by the outdoor unit can affect seriously. (on the wall or at the place near bed room)
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

  It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim
- **Do not use the unit for special purposes such as storing foods, cooling precision instruments and preservation of animals, plants or art.**
  It can cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not touch any buttons with wet hands**
  It can cause electric shocks
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipes with your hands when the system is in operation.**
  During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending the operating condition, and it can cause burn injury or frost injury.
- **Do not clean up the unit with water**
  It can cause electric shocks
- **Do not operate the outdoor unit with any article placed on it.**
  You may incur property damage or personal injure from a fall of the article.
- **Do not step onto the outdoor unit.**
  You may incur injury from a drop or fall.

Notabilia as a unit designed for R410A

- Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A. R410A will rise to pressure about 1.6 times higher than that of a conventional refrigerant. A cylinder containing R410A has a pink indication mark on the top.
- A unit designed for R410A has adopted a different size indoor unit service valve charge port and a different size check joint provided in the unit to prevent the charging of a wrong refrigerant by mistake. The processed dimension of the flared part of a refrigerant pipe and a flare nut's parallel side measurement have also been altered to raise strength against pressure. Accordingly, you are required to arrange dedicated R410A tools listed in the table on the right before installing or servicing this unit.
- Do not use a charge cylinder. The use of a charge cylinder will cause the refrigerant composition to change, which results in performance degradation.
- In charging refrigerant, always take it out from a cylinder in the liquid phase.
- All indoor units must be models designed exclusively for R410A. Check connectable indoor unit models in a catalog, etc. (A wrong indoor unit, if connected into the system, will impair proper system operation)

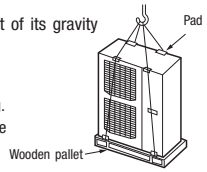
	Dedicated R410A tools
a)	Gauge manifold
b)	Charge hose
c)	Electronic scale for refrigerant charging
d)	Torque wrench
e)	Flare tool
f)	Protrusion control copper pipe gauge
g)	Vacuum pump adapter
h)	Gas leak detector

1. HAULAGE AND INSTALLATION (Take particular care in carrying in or moving the unit, and always perform such an operation with two or more persons.)

⚠CAUTION When a unit is hoisted with slings for haulage, take into consideration the offset of its gravity center position.
If not properly balanced, the unit can be thrown off-balance and fall.

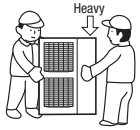
1) Delivery

- Deliver the unit as close as possible to the installation site before removing it from the packaging.
- When some compelling reason necessitates the unpacking of the unit before it is carried in, use nylon slings or protective wood pieces so as not to damage the unit by ropes lifting it.



2) Portage

- The right hand side of the unit as viewed from the front (diffuser side) is heavier. A person carrying the right hand side must take heed of this fact. A person carrying the left hand side must hold with his right hand the handle provided on the front panel of the unit and with his left hand the corner column section.



3) Selection of installation location for the outdoor unit

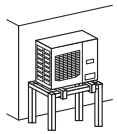
Be sure to select a suitable installation place in consideration of following conditions.

- ○ A place where it is horizontal, stable and can endure the unit weight and will not allow vibration transmittance of the unit.
- ○ A place where it can be free from possibility of bothering neighbors due to noise or exhaust air from the unit
- ○ A place where the unit is not exposed to oil splashes.
- ○ A place where it can be free from danger of flammable gas leakage.
- ○ A place where drain water can be disposed without any trouble.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by heat radiation from other heat source.
- ○ A place where snow will not accumulate.
- ○ A place where the unit can be kept away 5m or more from TV set and/or radio receiver in order to avoid any radio or TV interference.
- ○ A place where good air circulation can be secured, and enough service space can be secured for maintenance and service of the unit safely.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves generated by other equipment.
- ○ A place where chemical substances like sulfuric gas, chloric gas, acid and alkali (including ammonia), which can harm the unit, will not be generated and not remain.
- ○ A place where strong wind will not blow against the outlet air blow of the unit.
  Do not install the unit in places which exposed to sea breeze (e.g. coastal area) or calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent), exposed to ammonia substance (e.g. organic fertilizer).

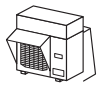
4) Caution about selection of installation location

(1) If the unit is installed in the area where the snow will accumulate, following measures are required.
The bottom plate of unit and intake, outlet may be blocked by snow.

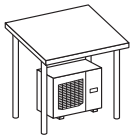
1.Install the unit on the base so that the bottom is higher than snow cover surface.



2.Provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site. Regarding outline of a snow hood, refer to our technical manual.



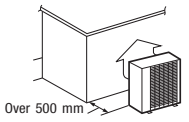
3.Install the unit under eaves or providen the roof on site.



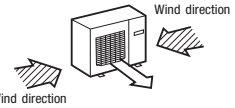
Since drain water generated by defrost control may freeze, following measures are required.
- Don't execute drain piping work by using a drain elbow and drain grommets (optional parts). [Refer to Drain piping work.]
- Recommend setting Defrost Control (SW3-1) and Snow Guard Fan Control (SW3-2). [Refer to Setting SW3-1, SW3-2.]
- Attach heater on a base plate on site, if there is possibility to freeze drain water.
  In case that the product has a corrective drainage system, the drainage paths should have suitable measure against freezing but be sure not to melt the material of drainage paths with heat.

(2) If the unit can be affected by strong wind, following measures are required.
Strong wind can cause damage of fan (fan motor), or can cause performance degradation, or can trigger anomalous stop of the unit due to rising of high pressure.

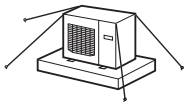
1.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit to face a wall of building, or provide a fence or a windbreak screen.



2.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit in a position perpendicular to the direction of wind.



3.The unit should be installed on the stable and level foundation. If the foundation is not level, tie down the unit with wires.

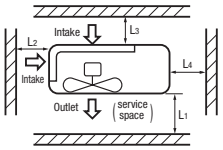


5) Installation space

- Walls surrounding the unit in the four sides are not acceptable.
- There must be a 1-meter or larger space in the above.
- Where a danger of short-circuiting exists, install guide louvers.
- When more than one unit are installed, provide sufficient intake space consciously so that short-circuiting may not occur.
- Where piling snow can bury the outdoor unit, provide proper snow guards.
- A barrier wall placed in front of the exhaust diffuser must not be higher than the unit.

(mm)

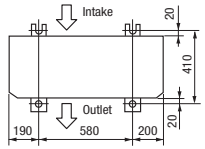
Size \ Example installation	I	II	III
L1	Open	Open	500
L2	300	5	Open
L3	150	300	150
L4 ※1	5	5	5
L4 ※2	250 (5)	250 (5)	250 (5)



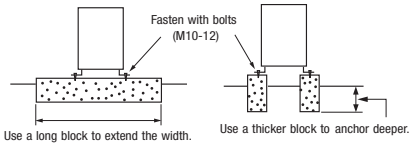
※1 In case of 200V model
※2 In case of 250V, A160V, A200V model. If unit is installed in L4 space with ( )'s condition, secure space of 250mm in lateral (L4) by unit movement at the time of exchange work of compressor.

6) Installation

① Anchor bolt fixed position



② Notabilia for installation



- In installing the unit, fix the unit's legs with bolts specified on the left.
- The protrusion of an anchor bolt on the front side must be kept within 15 mm.
- Securely install the unit so that it does not fall over during earthquakes or strong winds, etc.
- Refer to the left illustrations for information regarding concrete foundations.
- Install the unit in a level area. (With a gradient of 5 mm or less.)
  Improper installation can result in a compressor failure, broken piping within the unit and abnormal noise generation.

7) To run the unit for a cooling operation, when the outdoor temperature is –5°C or lower.

- When the outdoor air temperature is -5°C or lower, provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site.
  So that strong wind will not blow against the outdoor heat exchanger directly. Regarding outline of a snow hood, refer to our technical manual.

2. REFRIGERANT PIPING WORK

1) Restrictions on unit installation and use

- Check the following points in light of the indoor unit specifications and the installation site.
- Observe the following restrictions on unit installation and use. Improper installation can result in a compressor failure or performance degradation.

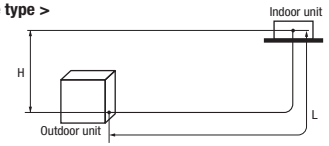
Restrictions	One-way pipe length difference from the first branching point to the indoor unit				Marks appearing in the drawing				
	Model for outdoor units			Dimensional restrictions	Single type	Twin type	< 3m	≧ 3m	W-twin type
							Triple type A	Triple type B	
One-way pipe length of refrigerant piping	200V	Liquid Piping	φ9.52	≦ 40m	L	L+L1 L+L2	200V: L+L1, L+L2, L+L3 250V: L+L1, L+La+L2, L+La+L3 (2) (type B)	200V: L+L1 (1) 250V: Prohibitation of the use	L+La+L1, L+La+L2 L+Lb+L3, L+Lb+L4
			φ12.7	40~70m					
	200V·250V,A160V,A200V	Gas piping	φ25.4 or φ28.58	35~70m					
			φ22.22	≦ 35m					
Main pipe length	200V	Liquid Piping	φ9.52	≦ 40m	—	L	200V: L 250V: L (type B)	200V: L 250V: Prohibitation of the use	L
			φ12.7	40~70m					
	200V·250V,A160V,A200V	Gas piping	φ25.4 or φ28.58	35~70m					
			φ22.22	≦ 35m					
One-way pipe length between the first branching point from to the second branching point	200V			≦ 5m	—	—	—	La	—
	250V,A160V,A200V						La (type B)	Prohibitation of the use	
One-way pipe length after the first branching point	200V			≦ 30m	—	L1, L2	L1, L2, L3	L1 (1)	La+L1, La+L2 Lb+L3, Lb+L4
	250V,A160V,A200V						L1, La+L2, La+L3 (2) (type B)	Prohibitation of the use	
One-way pipe length from the first branching point to indoor units through the second branching point	200V			≦ 27m	—	—	—	La+L2, La+L3 (1)	—
One-way pipe length difference from the first branching point to the indoor unit	Twin type			≦ 10m	—	| L1—L2 |	—	—	—
	Triple type	200V		≦ 3m			| L1—L2 | , | L2—L3 | , | L3—L1 |		
				≦ 10m			—	L1—(La+L2), L1—(La+L3) (1)	
		250V,A160V,A200V		≦ 3m			| L1—(La+L2) | , | L1—(La+L3) | , | L2—L3 | (2) (type B)	Prohibitation of the use	
	W-twin type	200V·250V,A160V,A200V		≦ 10m			—	—	| L1—L2 | , | L3—L4 | | (L1+La)—(L3+Lb) | , | (L1+La)—(L4+Lb) | | (L2+La)—(L3+Lb) | , | (L2+La)—(L4+Lb) |
One-way pipe length difference from the second branching point to the indoor unit	200V			≦ 10m	—	—	—	| L2—L3 |	| L1—L2 | , | L3—L4 |
Total pipe length after the second branching point				≦ 15m	—	—	—	—	L1+L2, L3+L4
Elevation difference between indoor and outdoor units	When the outdoor unit is positioned higher,			≦ 30m	H	H	H	H	H
	When the outdoor unit is positioned lower,			≦ 15m					
Elevation difference between indoor units				≦ 0.5m	—	h	h1, h2, h3	h1, h2, h3	h1, h2, h3, h4, h5, h6

⚠CAUTION

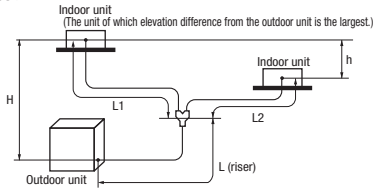
- For model 200V, **always use φ 12.7mm liquid main pipe** when the one way piping length exceeds 40m. If φ 9.52mm pipes are used in an installation having over 40m piping, they can cause performance degradation and/or water leaks from an indoor unit. Use φ 9.52mm liquid main pipe when the one way piping length is less than 40m.
- Always use φ 25.4mm or φ 28.58mm gas pipes when the length of the main "L" exceeds 35m.
  If the φ 22.22mm pipes are used in an installation having over 35m piping, they can cause performance degradation and/or water leaks from an indoor unit.
- Triple type B is not allowed to use in case of 250V.

Note (1) Install the indoor units so that L + L1 becomes the longest one-way pipe.
Keep the pipe length difference between L1 and (La + L2) or (La + L3) within 10m.
Note (2) Connect the unit that is the maximum capacity with L1.

< Single type >

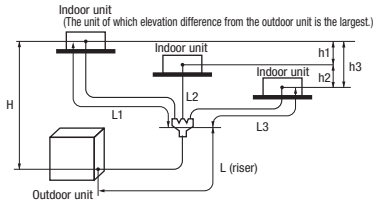


< Twin type >



< Triple type >

Type A



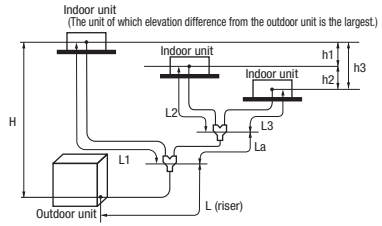
2) Determination of pipe size

● Determine refrigerant pipe size pursuant to the following guidelines based on the indoor unit specifications.

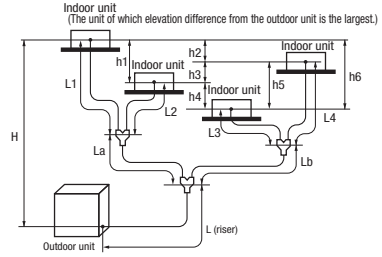
		Model 200V		Model 250V,A160V,A200V			
		Gas pipe	Liquid pipe	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
Outdoor unit connected		φ22.22	φ9.52	φ22.22	φ12.7	φ22.22	φ12.7
		Brazing	Flare	Brazing	Flare	Brazing	Flare
Refrigerant piping (branch pipeL)		φ22.22 or φ25.4 or φ28.58	φ9.52 or φ12.7	φ22.22 or φ25.4 or φ28.58	φ12.7	φ22.22 or φ25.4 or φ28.58	φ12.7
In the case of a single type	Indoor unit connected	φ25.4	φ9.52	φ25.4	φ12.7	–	
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 200V		Model 250V			
In the case of a twin type	Branching pipe set	DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G		–	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L1,L2)	φ15.88	φ9.52	φ15.88	φ9.52		
	Indoor unit connected	φ15.88	φ9.52	φ15.88	φ9.52		
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 100V× 2		Model 125V× 2			
In the case of a triple type A	Branching pipe set	DIS-TB1G		–		–	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L1,L2,L3)	φ15.88	φ9.52				
	Indoor unit connected	φ15.88	φ9.52				
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 71V× 3					
In the case of a triple type B	Branching pipe set	DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe La,L1)	φ15.88	φ9.52	φ15.88	φ9.52	φ15.88	φ9.52
	Branching pipe set	DIS-WA1G		DIS-WA1G		DIS-WA1G	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L2,L3)	φ15.88	φ9.52	φ12.7	φ9.52	φ15.88	φ9.52
	Indoor unit connected	φ15.88	φ9.52	φ12.7	φ6.35	φ15.88	φ9.52
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 71V× 3		Model 60V× 2+ Model 125V		Model 71V× 2+ Model 100V	
In the case of a W-twin type	Branching pipe set	DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G			
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe La,Lb)	φ15.88	φ9.52	φ15.88	φ9.52		
	Branching pipe set	DIS-WA1G× 2		DIS-WA1G× 2		–	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L1,L2,L3,L4)	φ12.7	φ9.52	φ12.7	φ9.52		
	Indoor unit connected	φ12.7	φ6.35	φ12.7	φ6.35		
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 50V× 4		Model 60V× 4			

< Triple type >

Type B



< W-twin type >

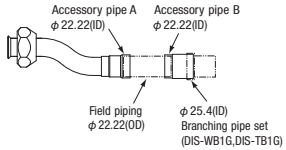


⚠CAUTION

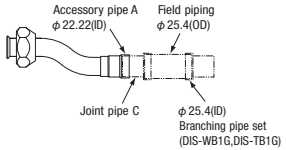
- When the model 50V or model 60V model is connected as an indoor unit, always use a φ9.52 liquid pipe for the branch (branching pipe – indoor unit) and a different diameter joint supplied with the branching pipe set for connection with the indoor unit φ6.35 on the liquid pipe side).
  If a φ6.35 pipe is used for connection with a branching pipe, a refrigerant distribution disorder may occur, causing one of the indoor units to fall short of the rated capacity.
- A riser pipe must be a part of the main. A branching pipe set should be installed horizontally at a point as close to an indoor unit as possible.
  A branching part must be dressed with a heat-insulation material supplied as an accessory.
- For the details of installation work required at and near a branching area, see the installation manual supplied with your branching pipe set.

3) How to use pipe reducer.

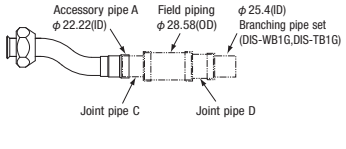
- φ22.22(OD) size of the refrigerant gas pipe can be used by using accessory pipe A,B.



- φ25.4(OD) size of the refrigerant gas pipe can be used by using accessory pipe A and joint pipe C.
  Ready joint C yourself. Need not accessory pipe B.



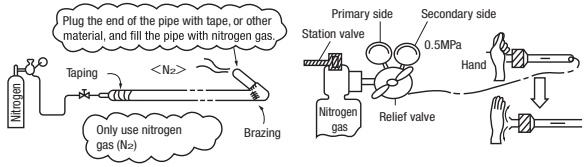
- φ28.58(OD) size of the refrigerant gas pipe can be used by using accessory pipe A and joint pipe C,D.
  Ready joint C and D yourself.



About brazing

Brazing must be performed under a nitrogen gas flow.

Without nitrogen gas, a large quantity of foreign matters (oxidized film) are created, causing a critical failure from capillary tube or expansion valve clogging.



4) Refrigerant pipe wall thickness and material

- Select refrigerant pipes of the table shown on the right wall thickness and material as specified for each pipe size.
- This unit uses R410A. Always use 1/2H pipes having a 1.0mm or thicker wall for φ19.05 or larger pipes, because O-type pipes do not meet the pressure resistance requirement.

Pipe diameter [mm]	6.35	9.52	12.7	15.88	22.22	25.4	28.58
Minimum pipe wall thickness [mm]	0.8	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Pipe material*	O-type pipe	O-type pipe	O-type pipe	O-type pipe	1/2H-type pipe	1/2H-type pipe	1/2H-type pipe

*Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe C1220T, JIS H3300

NOTE

- Select pipes having a wall thickness larger than the specified minimum pipe thickness.

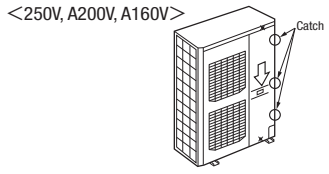
5) On-site piping work

⚠IMPORTANT

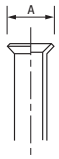
- Take care so that installed pipes may not touch components within a unit. If touching with an internal component, it will generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

How to remove the service panel

First remove screws (× mark) of the service panel and push it down into the direction of the arrow mark and then remove it by pulling it toward you.

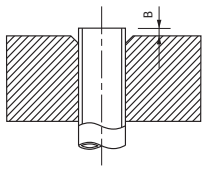


- The pipe can be laid in any of the following directions: side right, front, rear and downward.
- Remove a knock-out plate provided on the pipe penetration to open a minimum necessary area and attach an edging material supplied as an accessory by cutting it to an appropriate length before laying a pipe.
- Carry out the on site piping work with the service valve fully closed.
- Give sufficient protection to a pipe end (compressed and blazed, or with an adhesive tape) so that water or foreign matters may not enter the piping.
- Bend a pipe to a radius as large as practical.(R100～R150) Do not bend a pipe repeatedly to correct its form.
- Flare connection is used between the unit and refrigerant pipe. Flare a pipe after engaging a flare nut onto it. Flare dimensions for R410A are different from those for conventional R407C. Although we recommend the use of flaring tools designed specifically for R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the measurement of protrusion B with a protrusion control gauge.
- The pipe should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- Tighten a flare joint securely with a double spanner.



Flared pipe end: A (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	A 0 −0.4
φ6.35	9.1
φ9.52	13.2
φ12.7	16.6
φ15.88	19.7



Copper pipe protrusion for flaring: B (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	In the case of a rigid (clutch) type	
	With an R410A tool	With a conventional tool
φ6.35	0～0.5	0.7～1.3
φ9.52		
φ12.7		
φ15.88		

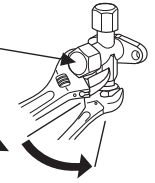
⚠ CAUTION **Do not apply force beyond proper fastening torque in tightening the flare nut.**

Fix both liquid and gas service valves at the valve main bodies as illustrated on the right, and then fasten them, applying appropriate fastening torque.

Service valve size (mm)	Tightening torque (N-m)	Tightening angle (°)	Recommended length of a tool handle (mm)
φ6.35 (1/4")	14～18	45～60	150
φ9.52 (3/8")	34～42	30～45	200
φ12.7 (1/2")	49～61	30～45	250
φ15.88 (5/8")	68～82	15～20	300
φ19.05 (3/4")	100～120	15～20	450

Do not hold the valve cap area with a spanner.

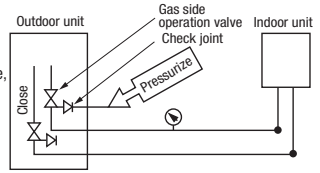
Use a torque wrench. If a torque wrench is not available, fasten the flare nut manually first and then tighten it further, using the left table as a guide.



6) Air tightness test

① Although outdoor and indoor units themselves have been tested for air tightness at the factory, check the connecting pipes after the installation work for air tightness from the service valve's check joint equipped on the outdoor unit side. While conducting a test, keep the service valve shut all the time.
a) Raise the pressure to 0.5 MPa, and then stop. Leave it for five minutes to see if the pressure drops.
b) Then raise the pressure to 1.5 MPa, and stop. Leave it for five more minutes to see if the pressure drops.
c) Then raise the pressure to the specified level (4.15 MPa), and record the ambient temperature and the pressure.
d) If no pressure drop is observed with an installation pressurized to the specified level and left for about one day, it is acceptable. When the ambient Temperature fall 1℃, the pressure also fall approximately 0.01 MPa. The pressure, if changed, should be compensated for.
e) If a pressure drop is observed in checking a) – d), a leak exists somewhere. Find a leak by applying bubble test liquid to welded parts and flare joints and repair it. After repair, conduct an air-tightness test again.

② In conducting an air-tightness test, use nitrogen gas and pressurize the system with nitrogen gas from the gas side. Do not use a medium other than nitrogen gas under any circumstances.



7) Evacuation

<Work flow> When the system has remaining moisture inside or a leaky point, the vacuum gauge indicator will rise.
Check the system for a leaky point and then draw air to create a vacuum again.

Airtighteness test completed
↓
Vacuuming begins
Run the vacuum pump for at least one hour after the vacuum gauge shows -101kPa or lower. (-755mmHg or lower)
↓
Vacuuming completed
Confirm that the vacuum gauge indicator does not rise even if the system is left for one hour or more.
↓
Vacuum gauge check
↓
Fill refrigerant

Pay attention to the following points in addition to the above for the R410A and compatible machines.

○To prevent a different oil from entering, assign dedicated tools, etc. to each refrigerant type. Under no circumstances must a gauge manifold and a charge hose in particular be shared with other refrigerant types (R22, R407C, etc.).
○Use a counterflow prevention adapter to prevent vacuum pump oil from entering the refrigerant system.

8) Additional refrigerant charge

(1) Calculate a required refrigerant charge volume from the following table.

<Single type>

Item / Capacity	Standard refrigerant charge volume (kg)	Pipe length for standard refrigerant charge volume (m)	Additional charge volume (kg) per meter of refrigerant piping (liquid pipe)	Refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory (kg)	Installation's pipe length (m) covered without additional refrigerant charge
200V	3.8	0	0.06 (Liquid piping ϕ9.52)	5.6	30
			0.145 (Liquid piping ϕ12.7)		
250V A160V, A200V	3.6		0.12	7.2	

<Twin, triple type>

Item / Capacity	Standard refrigerant charge volume (kg)	Pipe length for standard refrigerant charge volume (m)	Additional charge volume (kg) per meter of refrigerant piping (liquid pipe)		Refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory (kg)	Installation's pipe length (m) covered without additional refrigerant charge
			Main pipe	Branch pipe		
200V	3.8	0	0.06 (Liquid piping ϕ9.52)	0.06	5.6	30
			0.145 (Liquid piping ϕ12.7)			
250V A160V, A200V	3.6		0.12	0.06	7.2	

- A standard refrigerant charge volume means a refrigerant charge volume for an installation with 0m long refrigerant piping.
- This unit contains factory charged refrigerant covering 30m of refrigerant piping and additional refrigerant charge on the installation site is not required for an installation with up to 30m refrigerant piping. When refrigerant piping exceeds 30m, additionally charge an amount calculated from the pipe length and the above table for the portion in excess of 30m.
- When refrigerant piping is shorter than 3m, reduce refrigerant by 1kg from the factory charged volume and adjust to 4.6kg or 6.2kg.
- If an existing pipe system is used, a required refrigerant charge volume will vary depending on the liquid pipe size. For further information, see "6. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING."

Formula to calculate the volume of additional refrigerant required

Model 200V	In the case of ϕ9.52mm main liquid piping	Additional charge volume (kg) = { Main pipe length (m) – 30 (m) } x 0.06 (kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) x 0.06 (kg/m)
	In the case of ϕ12.7mm main liquid piping	Additional charge volume (kg) = { Main pipe length (m) – 30 (m) } x 0.145 (kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) x 0.06 (kg/m)
Model 250V, A160V, A200V		Additional charge volume (kg) = { Main pipe length (m) – 30 (m) } x 0.12 (kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) x 0.06 (kg/m)

*When an additional charge volume calculation result is negative, it is not necessary to charge refrigerant additionally.

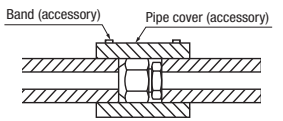
- **To charge refrigerant again, recover refrigerant from the system first and then charge the volume calculated from the above table (Standard refrigerant charge volume + additional charge volume for total pipe length.)**

In case of 200V and using ϕ12.7 at main liquid piping, calculate the amount as follows
Total charge volume(kg) = Refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory + (Main piping length(m)-30(m))x0.145(kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) x 0.06 (kg/m)

(2) Charging refrigerant

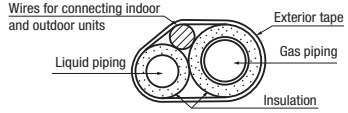
- Since R410A refrigerant must be charged in the liquid phase, you should charge it, keeping the container cylinder upside down or using a refrigerant cylinder equipped with a siphon tube.
- Charge refrigerant always from the liquid side service port with the service valve shut. When you find it difficult to charge a required amount, fully open the outdoor unit valves on both liquid and gas sides and charge refrigerant from the gas (suction) side service port, while running the unit in the cooling mode. In doing so, care must be taken so that refrigerant may be discharged from the cylinder in the liquid phase all the time. When the cylinder valve is throttled down or a dedicated conversion tool to change liquid-phase refrigerant into mist is used to protect the compressor, however, adjust charge conditions so that refrigerant will gasify upon entering the unit.
- In charging refrigerant, always charge a calculated volume by using a scale to measure the charge volume.
- When refrigerant is charged with the unit being run, complete a charge operation within 30 minutes. Running the unit with an insufficient quantity of refrigerant for a long time can cause a compressor failure.

NOTE Put down the refrigerant volume calculated from the pipe length onto the label attached on the back side of the service panel.



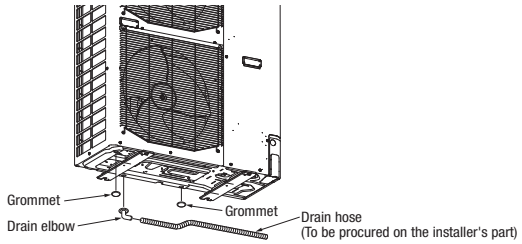
9) Heating and condensation prevention

(1) Dress refrigerant pipes (both gas and liquid pipes) for heat insulation and prevention of dew condensation.
(2) Use a heat insulating material that can withstand 120℃ or a higher temperature. Poor heat insulating capacity can cause heat insulation problems or cable deterioration.
- Improper heat insulation/anti-dew dressing can result in a water leak or dripping causing damage to household effects, etc.
- All gas pipes must be securely heat insulated in order to prevent damage from dripping water that comes from the condensation formed on them during a cooling operation or personal injury from burns because their surface can reach quite a high temperature due to discharged gas flowing inside during a heating operation.
- Wrap indoor units' flare joints with heat insulating parts (pipe cover) for heat insulation (both gas and liquid pipes).
- Give heat insulation to both gas and liquid side pipes. Bundle a heat insulating material and a pipe tightly together so that no gaps may be left between them and wrap them together with a connecting cable by a dressing tape.
- **Both gas and liquid pipes need to be dressed with 20 mm or thicker heat insulation materials above the ceiling where relative humidity exceeds 70%.**

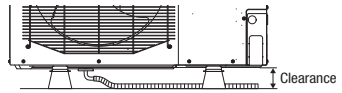


3. DRAIN PIPING WORK

- Execute drain piping by using a drain elbow and drain grommets supplied separately as optional parts, where water drained from the outdoor unit is a problem.
- Water may drip where there is a larger amount of drain water. Seal around the drain elbow and drain grommets with putty or adequate caulking material.
- Condensed water may flow out from vicinity of service valve or connected pipes.
- Where you are likely to have several days of sub-zero temperatures in a row, do not use a drain elbow and drain grommets. (There is a risk of drain water freezing inside and blocking the drain.)
- Do not use drain elbow and grommet made of plastic for drain piping when base heater for outdoor unit is used. Plastic grommet and elbow will be damaged and burnt in worst case.
- Prepare another drain tray made of metallic material for collecting drain when base heater is used.



- When condensed water needs to be led to a drain, etc., install the unit on a flat base (supplied separately as an optional part) or concrete blocks.
  Then, please secure space for the drain elbow and the drain hose.

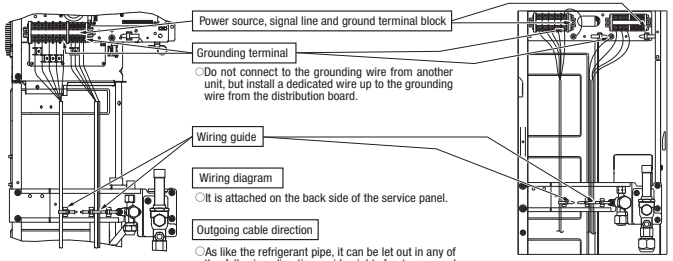


4. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK For details of electrical cabling, refer to the indoor unit installation manual.

Electrical installation work must be performed by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country.
Electrical installation work must be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installations in the country.

- Do not use any supply cord lighter than one specified in parentheses for each type below.
  - braided cord (code designation 60245 IEC 51),
  - ordinary tough rubber sheathed cord (code designation 60245 IEC 53)
  - flat twin tinsel cord (code designation 60227 IEC 41);

  Do not use anything lighter than polychloroprene sheathed flexible cord (code designation 60245 IEC57) for supply cords of parts of appliances for outdoor use.
- Ground the unit. Do not connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or telephone grounding wire.
  If impropery grounded, an electric shock or malfunction may result.
- A grounding wire must be connected before connecting the power cable. Provide a grounding wire longer than the power cable.
- The installation of an impulse withstanding type earth leakage breaker is necessary. A failure to install an earth leakage breaker can result in an acccident such as an electric shock or a fire.



Model 200V

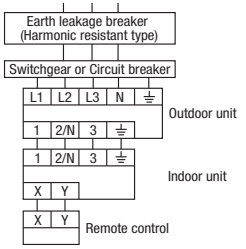
Model 250V
A160V, A200V

- Do not turn on the power until the electrical work is completeted .
- Do not use a condensive capacitor for power factor improvement under any circumstances. (It dose not improve power factor, while it can cause an abnormal overheat accident)
- For power source cables, use conduits.
- Do not lay electronic control cables (remote control and signaling wires) and other cables together outside the unit. Laying them together can result in the malfunctioning or a failure of the unit due to electric noises.
- Fasten cables so that may not touch the piping, etc.
- When cables are connected, make sure that all electrical components within the electrical component box are free of loose connector coupling or terminal connection and then attach the cover securely. (Improper cover attachment can result in malfunctioning or a failure of the unit, if water penetrates into the box.)
- Always use a three-core cable for an indoor-outdoor connecting cable. Never use a shield cable. Separate grounding wire from indoor - outdoor connecting wire.
- Connect a pair bearing a common terminal number with an indoor-outdoor connecting wire.
- In cabling, fasten cables securely with cable clamps so that no external force may work on terminal connections.
- Grounding terminals are provided in the control box.

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

- Always perform grounding system installation work with the power cord unplugged.

⚠ CAUTION Always use an earth leakage circuit breaker designed for inverter circuits to prevent a faulty operation.



Model 200V, 250V
A160V, A200V

Model	Power source	Power cable thickness (mm²)	MAX. over current (A)	Cable length (m)	Grounding wire thickness	Indoor-outdoor wire thickness × number
200V	3 phase 4 wire 380-415V 50Hz 380V 60Hz	5.5	20	54	ϕ1.6mm	ϕ1.6mm x 3
250V, A160V, A200V			21	51		

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear or Circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

※At the connection with FDU indoor unit.

Model	Power source	Power cable thickness (mm²)	MAX. over current (A)	Cable length (m)	Grounding wire thickness	Indoor-outdoor wire thickness × number
200V	3 phase 4 wire 380-415V 50Hz 380V 60Hz	5.5	25	43	ϕ1.6mm	ϕ1.6mm x 3
250V, A160V, A200V			27	40		

※At the connection with FDUM indoor unit.

Model	Power source	Power cable thickness (mm²)	MAX. over current (A)	Cable length (m)	Grounding wire thickness	Indoor-outdoor wire thickness × number
200V	3 phase 4 wire 380-415V 50Hz 380V 60Hz	5.5	22	49	ϕ1.6mm	ϕ1.6mm x 3
250V, A160V, A200V			24	45		

5. TEST RUN

⚠ WARNING

- Before conduct a test run, make sure that the service valves are opened.
- Turn on power 6 hours prior to a test run to energize the crank case heater.
- In case of the first operation after turning on power, even if the unit does not move for 30 minutes, it is not a breakdown.
- Always give a 3-minute or longer interval before you start the unit again whenever it is stopped.
- Removing the service panel will expose high-voltage live parts and high-temperature parts, which are quite dangerous. Take utmost care not to incur an electric shock or burns. Do not leave the unit with the service panel open.

} A failure to observe these instructions can result in a compressor breakdown.

⚠ CAUTION

- When you operate switches (SW3, SW5) for on-site setting, be careful not to touch a live part.
- You cannot check discharge pressure from the liquid service valve charge port.
- The 4-way valve (20S) is energized during a heating operation.
- When power source is cut off to reset the unit, give 3 or more minutes before you turn on power again after power is cut off. If this procedure is not observed in turning on power again, "Communication error between outdoor and indoor unit" may occur.

1) Test run method

(1) A test run can be initiated from an outdoor unit by using SW3-3 and SW3-4 for on-site setting.
(2) Switching SW3-3 to ON will start the compressor.
(3) The unit will start a cooling operation, when SW3-4 is OFF, or a heating operation, when SW3-4 is ON.
(4) **Do not fail to switch SW3-3 to OFF when a test run is completed.**

SW-3-3	SW-3-4	
ON	OFF	Cooling during a test run
	ON	Heating during a test run
OFF	—	Normal or After the test operation

2) Checking the state of the unit in operation

Use check joints provided on the piping before and after the four-way valve installed inside the outdoor unit for checking discharge pressure and suction pressure.
As indicated in the table shown on the right, pressure detected at each point will vary depending on whether a cooling or heating operation has been selected.

	Check joint of the pipe	Charge port of the gas service valve
Cooling operation	Discharge pressure (High pressure)	Suction pressure (Low pressure)
Heating operation	Suction pressure (Low pressure)	Discharge pressure (High pressure)

3) Setting SW3-1, SW3-2, on-site

(1) Defrost control switching (SW3-1)
- ·When this switch is turned ON, the unit will run in the defrost mode more frequently.
- ·Set this switch to ON, when installed in a region where outdoor temperature falls below zero during the season the unit is run for a heating operation.

(2) Snow guard fan control (SW3-2)
- ·When this switch is turned on, the outdoor unit fan will run for 10 seconds in every 10 minutes, when outdoor temperature falls to 3℃ or lower and the compressor is not running.
- ·When the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.

4) Failure diagnosis in a test run

Error indicated on the remote control unit	Printed circuit board LED(The cycles of 5 seconds)		Failure event	Action
	Red LED	Green LED		
E40	Blinking once	Blinking continuously	63H1 actuation or operation with service valves shut (occurs mainly during a heating operation)	1. Check whether the service valves are open. 2. If an error has been canceled when 3 minutes have elapsed since a compressor stop, you can restart the unit by effecting Check Reset from the remote control unit.
E49	Blinking once	Blinking continuously	Low pressure error or operation with service valves shut (occurs mainly during a cooling operation)	

- If an error code other than those listed above is indicated, refer to the wiring diagram of the outdoor unit and the indoor unit.

5) The state of the electronic expansion valve.

The following table illustrates the steady states of the electronic expansion valve.

	When power is turned on	When the unit comes to a normal stop		When the unit comes to an abnormal stop	
		During a cooling operation	During a heating operation	During a cooling operation	During a heating operation
Valve for a cooling operation	Complete shut position	Complete shut position	Full open position	Full open position	Full open position
Valve for a heating operation	Full open position	Full open position	Complete shut position	Full open position	Full open position

6) Heed the following on the first operation after turning on the circuit breaker.

- ·This outdoor unit may start in the standby mode (waiting for a compressor startup), which can continue up to 30 minutes, to prevent the oil level in the compressor from lowering on the first operation after turning on the circuit breaker. If that is the case, do not suspect a unit failure.
- ·At the first operation of heating mode after turning on the circuit breaker, the outdoor unit may start in cooling mode a while to prevent from liquid refrigerant back to compressor. If that is the case, do not suspect a unit failure.

Items to check before a test run

- When you leave the outdoor unit with power supplied to it, be sure to close the panel.

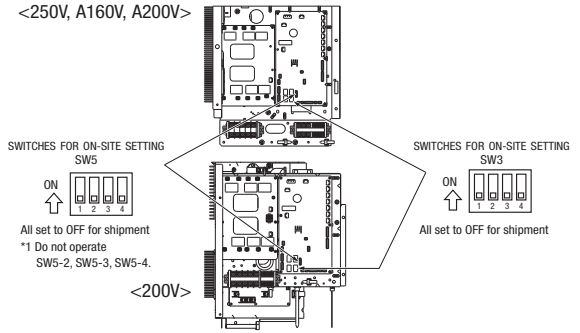
Item No.used in the installation manual	Item	Check item	Check
2	Refrigerant plumbing	If brazed, was it brazed under a nitrogen gas flow?	
		Were air-tightness test and vacuum extraction surely performed?	
		Are heat insulation materials installed on both liquid and gas pipes?	
		Are service valves surely opened for both liquid and gas systems?	
		Have you recorded the additional refrigerant charge volume and refrigerant pipe length on the panel's label?	
4	Electric wiring	Is the unit free of cabling errors such as uncompleted connection, an absent or reversed phase?	
		Are properly rated electrical equipments used for circuit breakers and cables?	
		Doesn't cabling cross-connect between units, where more than one unit are installed?	
		Aren't indoor-outdoor signal wires connected to remote control wires?	
		Do indoor-outdoor connecting cables connect between the same terminal numbers?	
		Are either VCT cabtyre cables or WF flat cables used for indoor-outdoor connecting cables?	
		Does grounding satisfy the D type grounding (type III grounding) requirements?	
		Is the unit grounded with a dedicated grounding wire not connected to another unit's grounding wire?	
		Are cables free of loose screws at their connection points?	
		Are cables held down with cable clamps so that no external force works onto terminal connections?	
—	Indoor unit	Is indoor unit installation work completed?	
		Where a face cover should be attached onto an indoor unit, is the face cover attached to the indoor unit?	

Test run procedure

- Always carry out a test run and check the following in order as listed.

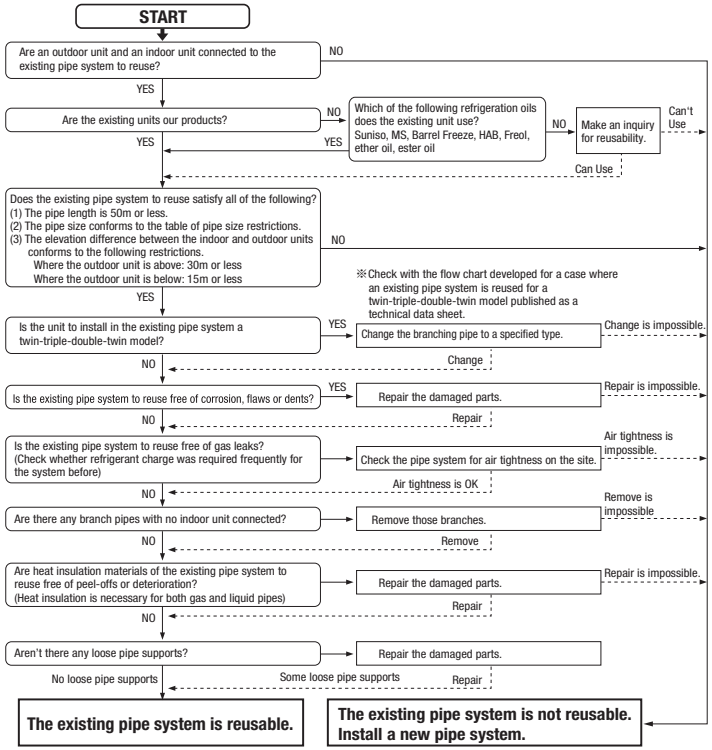
Turn	The contents of operation	Check
①	Open the gas side service valve fully.	
②	Open the liquid side service valve fully.	
③	Close the panel.	
④	Where a remote control unit is used for unit setup on the installation site, follow instructions for unit setup on the installation site with a remote control unit.	
⑤	SW3-3 ON / SW3-4 OFF: the unit will start a cooling operation.	
	SW3-3 ON / SW3-4 ON: the unit will start a heating operation.	
⑥	When the unit starts operation, press the wind direction button provided on the remote control unit to check its operation.	
⑦	Place your hand before the indoor unit's diffuser to check whether cold (warm) winds come out in a cooling (heating) operation.	
⑧	Make sure that a red LED is not blinking.	
⑨	When you complete the test run, do not forget to turn SW3-3 to the OFF position.	
⑩	Where options are used, check their operation according to the respective instruction manuals.	

<250V, A160V, A200V>



6. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING.

Check whether an existing pipe system is reusable or not by using the following flow chart.



⚠ WARNING <Where the existing unit can be run for a cooling operation.>

Carry out the following steps with the excising unit (in the order of (1), (2), (3) and (4))

(1) Run the unit for 30 minutes for a cooling operation.
(2) Stop the indoor fan and run the unit for 3 minutes for a cooling operation (returning liquid)
(3) Close the liquid side service valve of the outdoor unit and pump down (refrigerant recovery)
(4) Blow with nitrogen gas. ※ If discolored refrigeration oil or any foreign matters is discharged by the blow, wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- For the flare nut, do not use the old one, but use the one supplied with the outdoor unit. Process a flare to the dimensions specified for R410A.
- **Turn on-site setting switch SW5-1** to the ON position. (Where the gas pipe size is ϕ19.05)

<Where the existing unit cannot be run for a cooling operation.>

Wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- If you choose to wash the pipe system, contact our distributor in the area.

<Table of pipe size restrictions>

◎:Standard pipe size ○:Usable
△:Restricted to shorter pipe length limits ×:Not usable

Additional charging amount of refrigerant per 1m		0.06kg/m			0.12kg/m ※5			0.2kg/m		
Pipe size	Liquid pipe	ϕ9.52	ϕ9.52	ϕ9.52	ϕ12.7	ϕ12.7	ϕ12.7	ϕ15.88	ϕ15.88	ϕ15.88
	Gas pipe	ϕ22.22	ϕ25.4	ϕ28.58	ϕ22.22	ϕ25.4	ϕ28.58	ϕ22.22	ϕ25.4	ϕ28.58
200V	Usability	◎	○※2	○※2	△	◎	◎	△	△	×
	Maximum one-way pipe length	35	70	70	35	70	70	30m	30m	×
	Length covered without additional charge	30	30	30	16.5	16.5	16.5	9	9	×
250V A160V A200V	Usability	×	×	×	◎	◎	◎	△	△	△
	Maximum one-way pipe length	×	×	×	35	70	70	35	40	40
	Length covered without additional charge	×	×	×	30	30	25	18	18	18

<Pipe system after the branching pipe>

			After 1st branch ※3			After 2nd branch		
Additional charging amount of refrigerant per 1m			0.06kg/m			0.06kg/m		
Pipe size	Liquid pipe		ϕ9.52			ϕ9.52		
	Gas pipe		ϕ12.7	ϕ15.88	ϕ19.05※1	ϕ12.7	ϕ15.88	ϕ19.05※1
Model	Combination type	Combination of capacity						
200V	Twin	100+100	×	◎	○	—	—	—
	Triple A	71+71+71	×	◎	○	—	—	—
	Triple B	71+71+71	×	◎	○※4	×	◎	○
	Double twin	50+50+50+50	×	◎	○	◎	○	×
250V A160V A200V	Twin	125+125	×	◎	○	—	—	—
	Triple A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Triple B	60+60+125	×	◎	○※4	◎	×	×
	Triple B	71+71+100	×	◎	○※4	×	◎	×
	Double twin	60+60+60+60	×	◎	○	◎	○	×

※1 Because of its insufficient pressure resistance, **turn the dip switch SW5-1** provided on the outdoor unit board to the ON position for ϕ19.05 × t1.0. (In the case of a twin-triple-double-twin model, this also applies to the case where ϕ19.05 × t1.0 is used in a pipe system after the first branching point.) However, you need not turn the dip switch SW5-1 to the ON position, if 1/2H pipes or pipes having 1.2 or thicker walls are used.
※2 When the main pipe length exceeds 40m, a significant capacity drop may be experienced due to pressure loss in the liquid pipe system. Use ϕ12.7 for the liquid main.
※3 Piping size after branch should be equal or smaller than main pipe size.
※4 Piping size from first branch to indoor unit should be ϕ9.52 (Liquid) / ϕ15.88 (Gas).
※5 In case of 200V, change 0.145 kg/m.
- When refrigerant piping is shoter than 3m, reduce refrigerant by 1kg from factory charged volume.
- Any combinations of pipe sizes not listed in the table or marked with × in the table are not usable.

<The model types of existing units of which branching pipes are reusable.>

Models later than Type 8.

●FDC＊＊＊8□□□　●FDCP＊＊＊8□□□

The branching pipes used with models other than those listed above are not reusable because of their insufficient pressure resistance. Please use our genuine branching pipes for R410A.

●＊＊＊ are numbers representing horsepower. □□□ is an alphanumeric letter.

Formula to calculate additional charge volume

Additional charge volume (kg) = {Main pipe length (m) − Length covered without additional charge shown in the table (m)} × Additional charge volume per meter of pipe shown in the table (kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) × Additional charge volume per meter of pipe shown in the table (kg/m)

※ If you obtain a negative figure as a result of calculation, no additional refrigerant needs to be charged.

Example) When an 250V (twin installation) is installed in a 40m long existing pipe system (main pipe length 30m, liquid ϕ15.88, gas ϕ25.4; pipe length after branching pipe 5m x 2, liquid ϕ9.52, gas ϕ15.88), the quantity of refrigerant to charge additionally should be (30m-18m) x 0.2kg/m + 5m x 2 x 0.06kg/m = 3.0 kg.

5.5 Method for connecting the accessory pipe

Model FDC200VSA

PSC012D028A

- Be sure to use the accessory pipe to connect the service valve on the gas side with the field pipe.
- Be sure to use the straight pipe（Procured at the field） shown in the table 1 applicable.
- When tightening the flare, connect the pipe securely by pressing the flared face of pipe against the service valve.
- When brazing between the pipe in place and the attached pipe, confirm that no excessive force is applied to the flare joint. Otherwise gas could leak from the flare joint.
- Connect the attached pipe according to the following steps ①～⑤.

① Referring to Table 2 and Table 3, prepare the straight pipe and the elbow in the field, which are used in the construction examples Ⓐ～Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.

② Firstly, use the accessory pipe to assemble the connecting pipe assembly outside the outdoor unit.
（As shown in the figure of connecting examples Ⓐ～Ⓓ.）

③ After assembling the connecting pipe, connect it to the service valve on the gas side inside the outdoor unit. Tighten the flare nut with appropriate torque.

Proper torque	
φ19.05	100～120N・m

④ After connection of the connecting pipe assembly to the service valve on the gas side, braze the connecting pipe assembly and the field pipe.

⑤ When connecting pipe contacts wiring, attach heat insulating material to the pipe in order to prevent from contacting of the pipe and wiring.（ If the wiring is rubbed with the pipe and the cover of wiring is teared, there is a risk of a short circuit or an electric shock.）

About brazing

- Be sure to braze while supplying nitrogen gas.
  If no nitrogen gas is supplied, a large amount of impurity （oxidized film） will be generated, which may clog the capillary tube and the expansion valve, resulting in fatal malfunction.

Table 1 Pipe specification

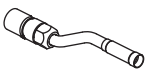
Refrigerant line（one way） length（m）	
≦35（m）	φ22.22 x T1.0
≦70（m）	φ25.4 x T1.0 or φ28.58 x T1.0

- Be sure to use pipes of 1／2H material, and wall thickness above 1mm.（Pressure resistance of O-type pipe is not enough）

Table 2 Parts used for the connecting pipe assembly

No.	Name	Quantity	Remark
1	Accessory pipe A	1	Accessory
2	Straight pipe ①	1	Procured at the field
3	Straight pipe ②	1 or 0	Procured at the field（Not required for downward direction）
4	Elbow	1 or 0	Procured at the field（Not required for downward direction）

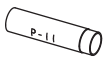
A



Accessory pipe A x 1 pc

Heat insulating material is attached to the accessory pipe with band. When installing the heat insulating material, cut the band and retrieve it.

B

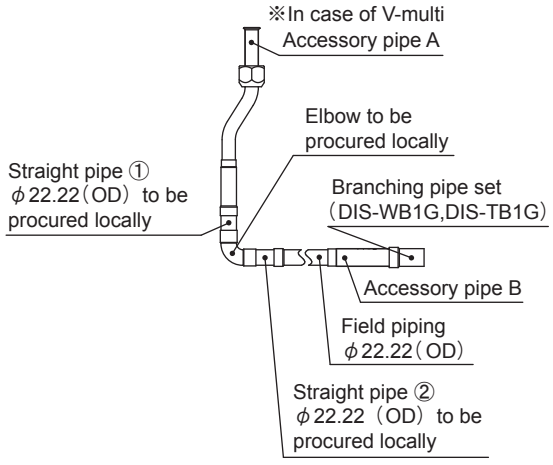


Accessory pipe B x 1 pc

- Branching pipe set can be used by using the accessory pipe B. When φ22.22（OD） size of the indoor unit gas pipe is used, the accessory pipe B is unnecessary.

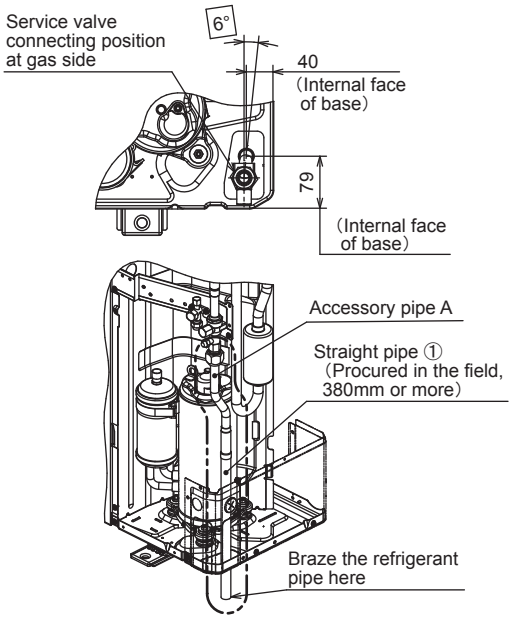
Table 3 Length and specification of straight pipe（Procured in the field）

	ⒶDownward	ⒷForward	ⒸRightward	ⒹBackward
Straight pipe ①	380mm or more	200mm	155mm	215mm
Straight pipe ②	—	160mm or more	160mm or more	370mm or more

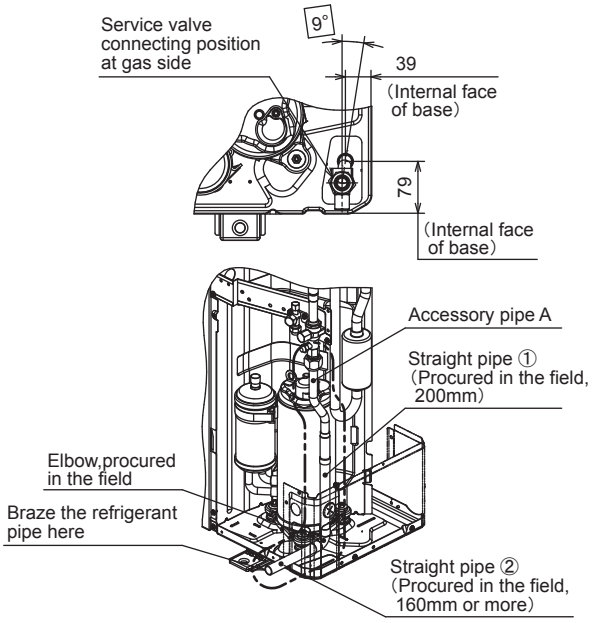


【Connection example Ⓐ ～Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.】

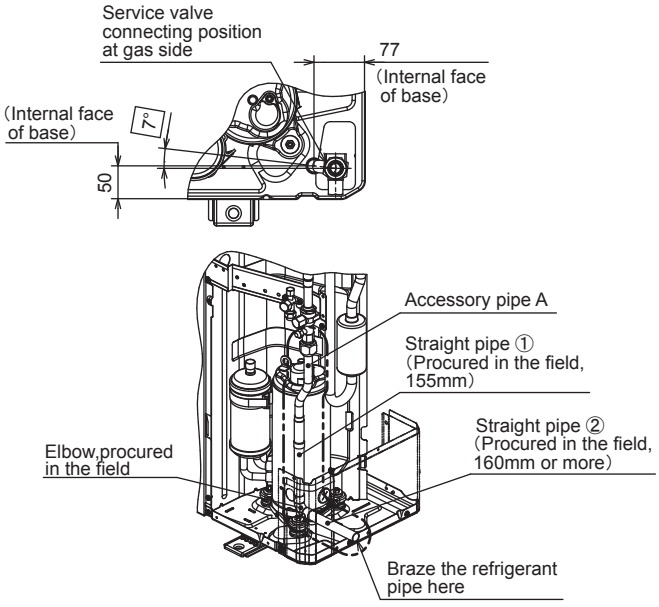
- The piping angle shown below is an example in case of 15mm of heat insulating material.
  Adjust an angle, according to the thickness of heat insulating material.
  Pass the connecting pipe in a hole after angle adjustment.



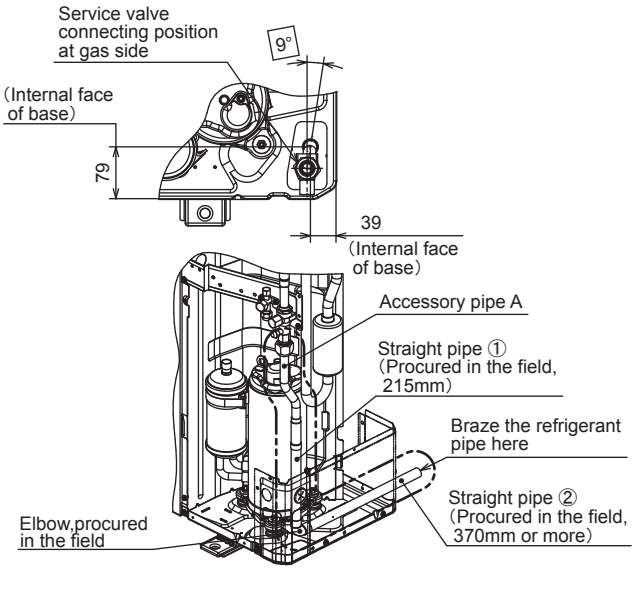
Connection example
of refrigerant pipe-Ⓐ
(Downward connection)



Connection example
of refrigerant pipe-Ⓑ
(Forward connection)



Connection example
of refrigerant pipe-Ⓒ
(Rightward connection)



Connection example
of refrigerant pipe-Ⓓ
(Backward connection)

Model FDC250VSA

PSC012D028C

- Be sure to use the accessory pipe to connect the service valve on the gas side with the field pipe.
- Be sure to use the straight pipe （Procured at the field） shown in the table 1 applicable to the model of outdoor unit.
- When tightening the flare, connect the pipe securely by pressing the flared face of pipe against the service valve.
- When brazing between the pipe in place and the attached pipe, confirm that no excessive force is applied to the flare joint. Otherwise gas could leak from the flare joint.
- Connect the attached pipe according to the following steps ①～⑤.

① Referring to Table 2 and Table 3, prepare the straight pipe and the elbow in the field, which are used in the construction examples Ⓐ～Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.

② Firstly, use the accessory pipe to assemble the connecting pipe assembly outside the outdoor unit. （As shown in the figure of connecting examples Ⓐ～Ⓓ.）

③ After assembling the connecting pipe, connect it to the service valve on the gas side inside the outdoor unit. Tighten the flare nut with appropriate torque.

Proper torque	
φ19.05	100～120N・m

④ After connection of the connecting pipe assembly to the service valve on the gas side, braze the connecting pipe assembly and the field pipe.

⑤ When connecting pipe contacts wiring, attach heat insulating material to the pipe in order to prevent from contacting of the pipe and wiring. （If the wiring is rubbed with the pipe and the cover of wiring is teared, there is a risk of a short circuit or an electric shock.）

About brazing

- Be sure to braze while supplying nitrogen gas.
  If no nitrogen gas is supplied, a large amount of impurity （oxidized film） will be generated, which may clog the capillary tube and the expansion valve, resulting in fatal malfunction.

※In case of V-multi （In case of 250V）

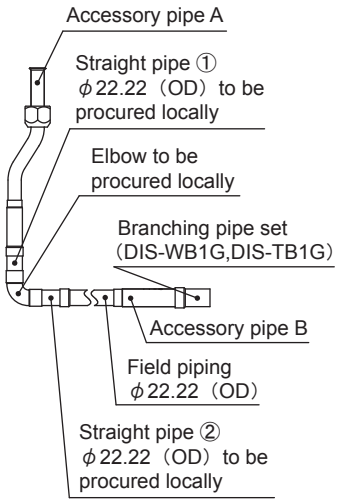


Table 1 Pipe specification

		Refrigerant line （one way） length（m）	
Single type	250V	≦35（m）	φ22.22 x T1.0
		≦70（m）	φ25.4 x T1.0 or φ28.58 x T1.0
Multi type	224KXZPE1	≦90（m）	φ19.05 x T1.0
		≦120（m）	φ22.22 x T1.0
	280KXZPE1	≦90（m）	φ22.22 x T1.0
		≦120（m）	φ25.4 x T1.0 or φ28.58 x T1.0

- Be sure to use pipes of 1／2H material, and wall thickness above 1mm. （Pressure resistance of O-type pipe is not enough）

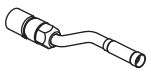
Table 2 Parts used for the connecting pipe assembly

No.	Name	Quantity	Remark
1	Accessory pipe A	1	Accessory
2	Straight pipe ①	1	Procured at the field
3	Straight pipe ②	1 or 0	Procured at the field（Not required for downward direction）
4	Elbow	1 or 0	Procured at the field（Not required for downward direction）

Table 3 Length and specification of straight pipe （Procured in the field）

	ⒶDownward	ⒷForward	ⒸRightward	ⒹBackward
Straight pipe ①	400mm or more	192.5～202.5mm	192.5～202.5mm	210mm
Straight pipe ②	—	105mm or more	155mm or more	370mm or more

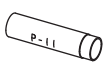
A



Accessory pipe A x 1 pc （Except 224KXZPE1）

Heat insulating material is attached to the accessory pipe with band. When installing the heat insulating material, cut the band and retrieve it.

B

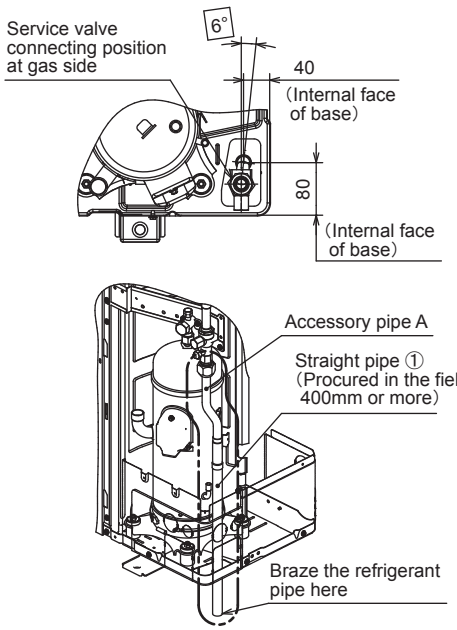


Accessory pipe B x 1 pc （Only use for 250V）

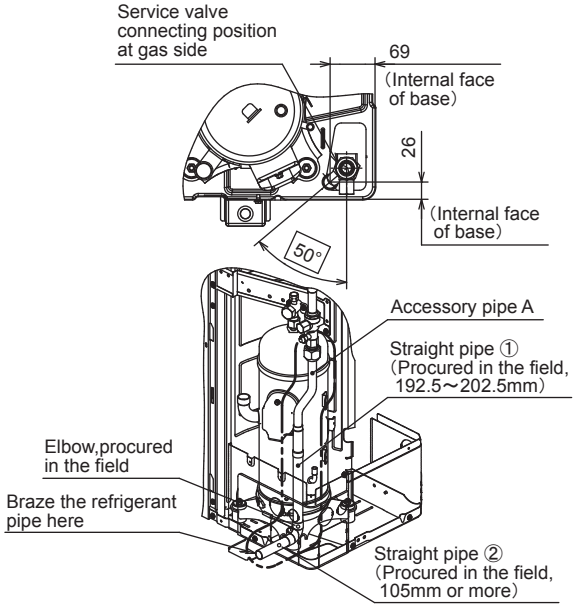
- Branching pipe set can be used by using the accessory pipe B. When φ22.22（OD）size of the indoor unit gas pipe is used, the accessory pipe B is unnecessary.

【Connection example Ⓐ～Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.】

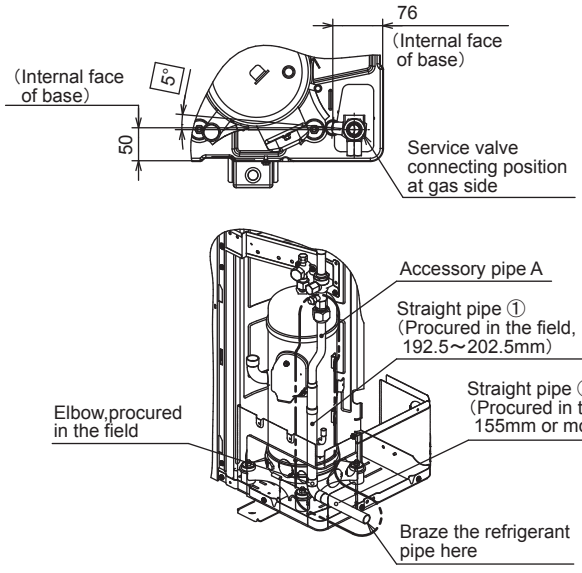
- The piping angle shown below is an example in case of 15mm of heat insulating material.
  Adjust an angle, according to the thickness of heat insulating material.
  Pass the connecting pipe in a hole after angle adjustment.



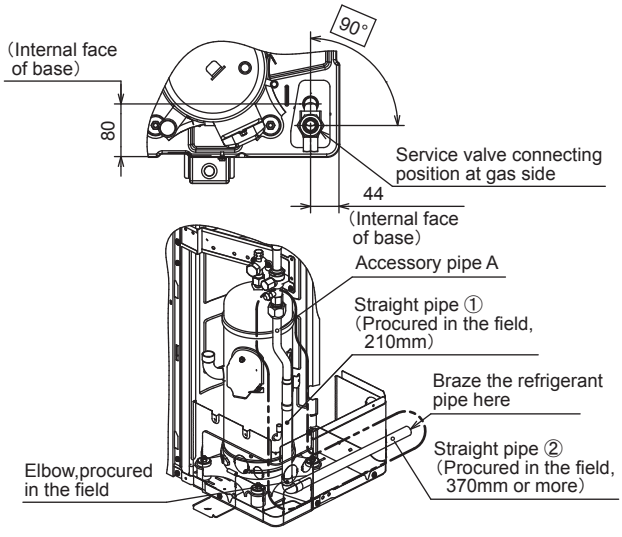
Connection example of refrigerant pipe-Ⓐ
(Downward connection)



Connection example of refrigerant pipe-Ⓑ
(Forward connection)



Connection example of refrigerant pipe-Ⓒ
(Rightward connection)



Connection example of refrigerant pipe-Ⓓ
(Backward connection)

5.6 Instructions for branching pipe set (DIS-WA1, WB1, TA1, TB1)

For R410A

PSB012D865 g

⚠ WARNING / CAUTION

- This set is for R410A refrigerant.
- Select a branching pipe set correctly rated for the combined total capacity of connected indoor units and install it according to this manual.
  An improperly installed branching pipe set can cause degraded performance or an abnormal unit stop.
- Provide good heat insulation to the pipes by following instructions contained in this manual.
  Improper heat insulation can result in degraded performance or a water leak accident from condensation.
- Please make sure that only parts supplied as accessories or the manufacturer's approved parts are used in installing the unit, because a leak of refrigerant can result in a lack-of-oxygen accident, if it reaches a concentration beyond the tolerable limit.

This manual explains how to use a branching pipe set that is indispensable in connecting pipes for a twin/triple/W-twin configuration installation (system). For the details of piping work, unit installation work and electrical installation work, please refer to the installation manuals and installation guides supplied with your outdoor and indoor units.

1. Branching pipe set specifications

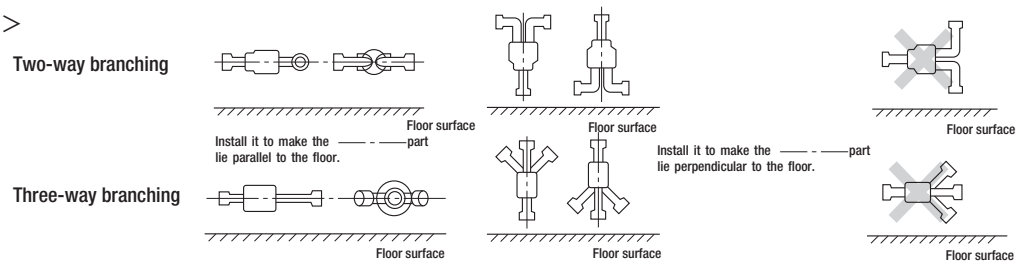
(1) Please make sure that you have chosen the right branching pipe set and the specifications of the parts contained in it by checking with the table below.
(2) Connect pipes as illustrated in the table below. The pipe from an outdoor unit must be brazed to the pipe connection port "①" and the pipes from indoor units to "②," "③" and "④."

Branching pipe set type	Supported outdoor/indoor unit combinations		Part lists			
	Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model	Branching pipe set for a liquid pipe	Branching pipe set for a gas pipe	Different diameter pipe joint	Heat insulation material
DIS-WA1 (Two-way branching set)	3HP	1.5HP＋1.5HP	ID9.52 ① ② ③ ID9.52 ID9.52 1 piece	ID15.88 ① ② ③ ID15.88 ID15.88 1 piece	Joint A ID9.52 2 pieces Flare joint (for indoor unit side connection) Joint B OD15.88 2 pieces ID12.7	One each for liquid and gas
	4HP	2HP＋2HP				
		1.5HP＋2.5HP				
	5HP	2.5HP＋2.5HP				
		2HP＋3HP				
	6HP	3HP＋3HP				
		2HP＋4HP				
DIS-WB1 (Two-way branching set)	8HP	4HP＋4HP	ID9.52 ① ② ③ ID12.7 ID9.52 1 piece	ID15.88 ① ② ③ ID25.4 ID15.88 1 piece	Joint C 1 piece OD12.7 ID9.52	One each for liquid and gas
		3HP＋5HP				
	10HP	5HP＋5HP				
DIS-TA1 (Three-way branching set)	6HP	2HP＋2HP＋2HP	ID9.52 ① ② ③ ④ ID9.52 1 piece	ID12.7 ① ② ③ ④ ID15.88 1 piece	Joint A ID9.52 3 pieces Flare joint (for indoor unit side connection)	One each for liquid and gas
DIS-TB1 (Three-way branching set)	8HP	3HP＋3HP＋3HP	ID9.52 ① ② ③ ④ ID9.52 1 piece	ID15.88 ① ② ③ ④ ID25.4 1 piece	Joint A ID9.52 2 pieces Flare joint (for indoor unit side connection) Joint B OD15.88 1 piece ID12.7 Joint D ID12.7 1 piece OD9.52	One each for liquid and gas

(3) To connect pipes for a Double Twin installation (involving 4 indoor units), please see 2-7. "Double Twin configuration."
(4) A branching pipe set must always be installed into the posture as illustrated in the drawing below.

ID stands for inner diameter and OD, outer diameter.

＜Posture to install into＞

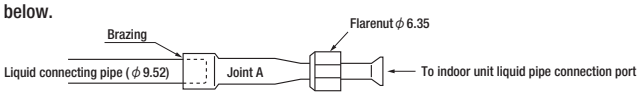


2. Pipe connecting procedure

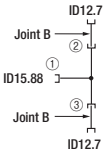
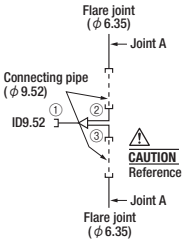
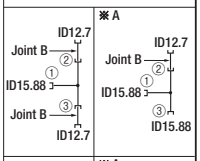
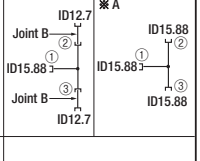
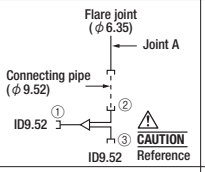
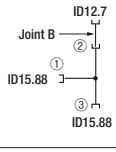
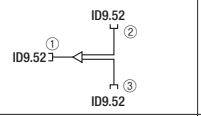
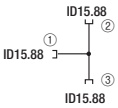
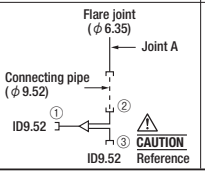
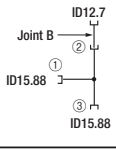
Braze the different diameter pipe joint found in the set matching the connected outdoor and indoor unit capacities according to the instructions set out below.

⚠ CAUTION

In connecting an indoor unit of which capacity is 1.5HP, 2HP or 2.5HP, always use a ϕ9.52 liquid pipe to connect to the branching pipe (branching pipe – indoor unit).
In connecting to an indoor unit (liquid pipe side: ϕ6.35), use the different diameter pipe joint A supplied with the set and follow the procedure set out below.

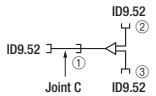
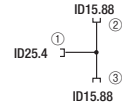
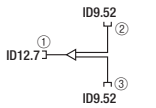
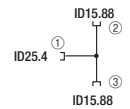


2-1 DIS-WA1

Supported combinations		Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model		
3HP	1.5HP＋1.5HP		
4HP	2HP＋2HP		
	1.5HP＋2.5HP		※A 
5HP	2.5HP＋2.5HP		※A 
	2HP＋3HP		
6HP	3HP＋3HP		
	2HP＋4HP		

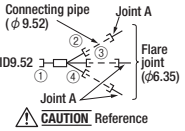
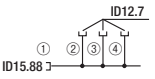
Note When connect the indoor unit of an old model that is shown in the model list, use the joint supplied with the branch piping set like ※A

2-2 DIS-WB1

Supported combinations		Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model		
8HP	3HP＋5HP 4HP＋4HP		
10HP	5HP＋5HP		

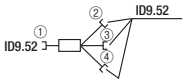
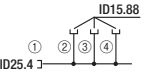
2-3 DIS-TA1

Applicable to the difference in length of pipes after the branch being less than 3 m
* Connection is not allowed when the difference in length of pipes is larger than 3 m.

Supported combinations		Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model		
6HP	2HP＋2HP＋2HP		

2-4 DIS-TB1

Applicable to the difference in length of pipes after the branch being less than 3 m
* Connection is not allowed when the difference in length of pipes is larger than 3 m.

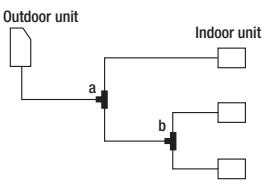
Supported combinations		Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model		
8HP	3HP＋3HP＋3HP		

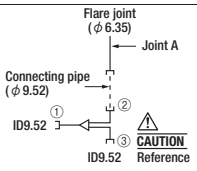
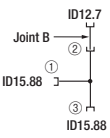
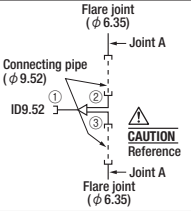
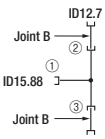
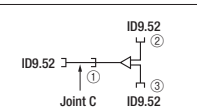
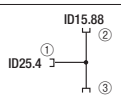
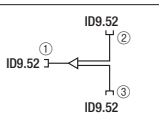
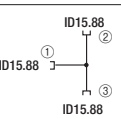
▷OLD Model list

model name
FDTA251R
FDENA251R
FDKNA251R
FDURA251R
FDUMA252R

2-5. Triple type for same model/same capacity or different model/same capacity

When the difference in length of pipes after the branch is longer than 3 m and shorter than 10 m

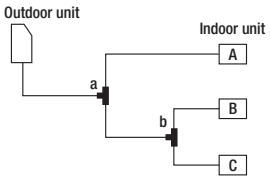


Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model	Branching pipe	Branching pipe set type	Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
6HP	2HP＋2HP＋2HP	a	DIS-WA1		
		b			
8HP	3HP＋3HP＋3HP	a	DIS-WB1		
		b	DIS-WA1		

2-6. Triple type for same model/different capacity or different model/different capacity

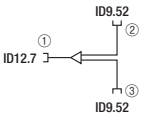
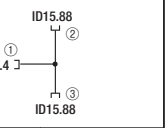
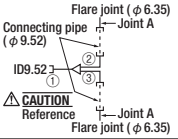
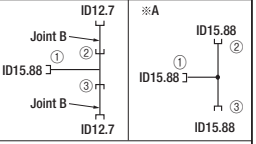
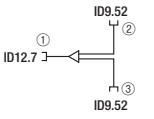
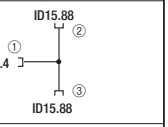
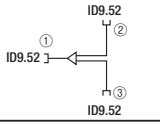
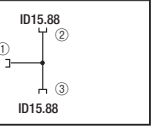
Applicable to the difference in length of pipes after the branch being less than 3 m

* Connection is not allowed when the difference in length of pipes is larger than 3 m.



Connecting position

Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model	A	B	C
10HP	2.5HP+2.5HP+5HP	5HP	2.5HP	2.5HP
	3HP+3HP+4HP	4HP	3HP	3HP

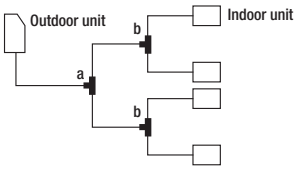
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model	Branching pipe	Branching pipe set type	Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
10HP	2.5HP+2.5HP+5HP	a	DIS-WB1		
		b	DIS-WA1		
10HP	3HP+3HP+4HP	a	DIS-WB1		
		b	DIS-WA1		

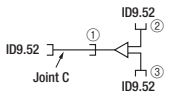
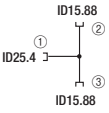
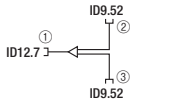
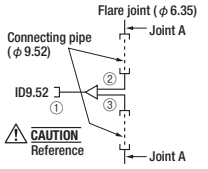
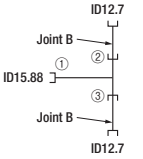
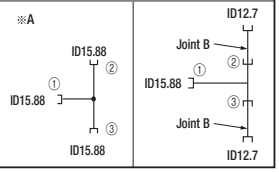
Note When connect the indoor unit of an old model that is shown in the model list, use the joint supplied with the branch piping set like※ A.

2-7. Double twin type

Pipes should be connected as follows for a Double twin installation (4 connected indoor units. The capacity of an outdoor unit available for this configuration is either 8HP or 10HP only):

Outdoor unit capacity	Indoor unit capacity
8HP	2HP×4 units
10HP	2.5HP×4 units



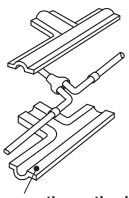
Branching pipe	Branching pipe set type	Outdoor unit model	Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
a	DIS-WB1	8HP		
		10HP		
b	DIS-WA1	8HP		
		10HP		

Note When connect the indoor unit of an old model that is shown in the model list, use the joint supplied with the branch piping set like※ A.

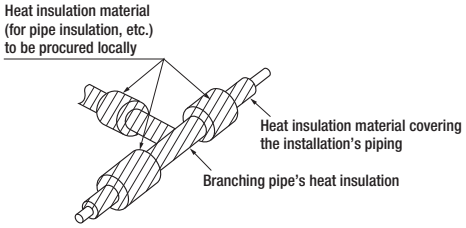
3. Heat insulation work

(1) Condensation can also occur on liquid pipes with this model. Please provide good heat insulation to both liquid and gas pipes.

(2) For the heat insulation of a branching pipe, always use the heat insulation material supplied with the set and provide heat insulation according to the instructions set out below.



1. It has an adhesive layer on the entire inner face. Remove a separator and wrap it around the branching pipe.



2. Apply a heat insulation material (to be procured locally) to the joint between the branching pipe's heat insulation and the heat insulation material covering the installation's piping as described above and wrap a tape over the gap shown as a hatched (///) area to complete dressing of the piping.

MICRO INVERTER PACKAGED AIR-CONDITIONERS

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.

Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Division
16-5, Konan 2-chome, Minato-ku, Tokyo, 108-8215 Japan
http://www.mhi.co.jp